MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 8

Charlemagne and His Heirs

Einhard · Nithard · Notker

Vita Karoli Magni
Historiarum Libri IIII
De Gestis Karoli Imperatoris

Charlemagne and His Heirs

Einhard's Life of Charlemagne, Nithard's Histories, and Notker's Deeds of Charlemagne

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

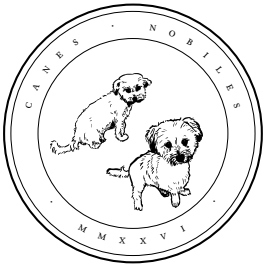


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 8 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Oswald Holder-Egger's edition
of Einhard (Hanover, 1911), Ernst Müller's of Nithard (Hanover, 1907),
and Philipp Jaffé's of Notker, the Monk of St Gall (Berlin, 1867)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

EINHARD

Walahfrid's Prologue 13
Einhard's Preface 17
I · The Last Merovingians 21
II · Charles Martel, Pippin, and Carloman 23
III · Charles Becomes King 25
IV · The Plan of the Work 27
V · The Aquitanian War 28
VI · The Lombard War 29
VII · The Saxon War 32
VIII · The Two Battles 35
IX · Roncesvalles 37
X · The Bretons and Benevento 39
XI · Tassilo of Bavaria 41
XII · The Wilzi 42
XIII · The Avar War 44
XIV · The Danes 46
XV · The Extent of the Kingdom 48
XVI · Friendships with Kings 50

EINHARD

(continued)

XVII · His Buildings 53
XVIII · His Family 55
XIX · His Children 58
XX · The Conspiracies 61
XXI · Foreigners 62
XXII · His Appearance 63
XXIII · His Dress 65
XXIV · Food, Sleep, and Business 67
XXV · His Learning 69
XXVI · His Religion 70
XXVII · Alms and Rome 72
XXVIII · Emperor 73
XXIX · Laws, Songs, and Names 75
XXX · Louis Crowned, and the Death of Charles 77
XXXI · His Burial 79
XXXII · Portents 80
XXXIII · The Will 83

NITHARD

BOOK I

Preface 93
I · Charles the Great 94
II · Louis the Pious 96
III · Lothar's First Rebellion 98
IV · Lothar's Second Rebellion 102

NITHARD

(continued)

BOOK I

(continued)

V · Chalon and the Peace with Lothar 106
VI · Charles's Kingdom 109
VII · The Partition at Worms 113
VIII · The Death of Louis the Pious 116

BOOK II

Preface 119
I · Lothar Claims the Empire 120
II · Charles's Embassy 122
III · Defections 125
IV · The Truce at Orléans 127
V · Bernard, the Bretons, and the Council 130
VI · The Crossing of the Seine 134
VII · Louis Driven into Bavaria 137
VIII · The Crown Arrives at Easter 139
IX · Louis and Charles Join Forces 143
X · The Battle of Fontenoy 147

BOOK III

Preface 155
I · After Fontenoy 156
II · The Victory Squandered 159
III · The Seine Rises 163
IV · Laon 168
V · The Oaths of Strasbourg 172

NITHARD

(continued)

BOOK III

(continued)

VI · The Two Kings 177
VII · Lothar Flees to the Rhône 179

BOOK IV

Preface 183
I · The Bishops Give the Kingdom 184
II · The Stellinga 187
III · Lothar Sues for Peace 190
IV · Mâcon and Metz 195
V · Koblenz and Nithard's Family 199
VI · Charles's Marriage 203
VII · The Elements Against Us 206

NOTKER

BOOK I

I · The Two Irish Scholars 211
II · Albinus 214
III · The Poor Boys and the Noble 215
IV · The Boy and the Bishopric 217
V · The New Cantor 220
VI · The Agile Bishop 224
VII · The Readings 225
VIII · The Wandering Cleric 227

NOTKER

(continued)

BOOK I

(continued)

IX · Albinus's Disciples 228
X · The Roman Chant 230
XI · The Lenten Dinner 235
XII · The Blessing 237
XIII · Counties and Abbeys 237
XIV · The Swept Bishopric 239
XV · The Cheese 240
XVI · The Spiced Mouse 243
XVII · The Golden Scepter 246
XVIII · The Bishop Who Preached 248
XIX · The Alleluia 253
XX · The Fox 254
XXI · The Bishop and the Devil 257
XXII · The Fallen Bishop 261
XXIII · The Larva 264
XXIV · The Devil as a Mule 266
XXV · The Priest and the Cold Spring 268
XXVI · Pope Leo and the Imperial Title 270
XXVII · The Way to Greece 276
XXVIII · The Abbot and the Basilica 277
XXIX · The Bellfounder 279
XXX · Public Works 281
XXXI · Liutfrid's Treasure 283
XXXII · The Spider 287

NOTKER

(continued)

BOOK I

(continued)

XXXIII · The Vanished Cleric 289
XXXIV · Frankish Dress 291

BOOK II

I · The Ring of the Huns 295
II · The Two Soldiers 298
III · The Drunken Guards 299
IV · The Two Bastards 300
V · The Emperor at Constantinople 301
VI · The Embassies to Constantinople 303
VII · Greek Antiphons and the Organ 310
VIII · The Persian Envoys 311
IX · Harun and the Dogs 318
X · The Prophecy of Louis 322
XI · Louis the German 326
XII · Measured by the Sword 329
XIII · Godfred 338
XIV · Charles Weeps at Narbonne 340
XV · Pippin the Short 343
XVI · Digressions 346
XVII · The Iron Charles 347
XVIII · The Northmen's Swords 358
XIX · The Northmen's Baptisms 360
XX · Louis the Pious and Anselm 363
XXI · Louis's Alms 364

EINHARD

Vita Karoli Magni

The Life of Charlemagne

Walahfrid Strabo introduces the Life. Einhard, born in the Maingau and schooled at Fulda, Saint Boniface's monastery, is sent by Abbot Baugulf to the palace of Charles, of all kings the most eager to seek out wise men. Small in stature, he rises so high in the king's confidence that few know more of his secrets, and he keeps his place through the troubles of Louis's reign. Walahfrid has added the chapter titles.

Gloriosissimi imperatoris Karoli vitam et gesta, quae
of-the-most-glorious of-the-emperor of-Charles the-life and the-deeds which
subiecta sunt, Einhartus, vir inter omnes huius temporis
set-below are Einhard a-man among all of-this of-time
palatinos non solum pro scientia, verum et pro universa
palace-officials not only for knowledge but also for the-whole
morum honestate laudis egregiae, descripsisse cognoscitur
of-character uprightness of-praise distinguished to-have-described is-known
et purissimae veritatis, utpote qui his paene omnibus
and of-the-purest of-truth inasmuch-as who these almost all
interfuerit, testimonio roborasse. Natus enim in Orientali
was-present-at by-testimony to-have-confirmed born for in Eastern
Francia, in pago qui dicitur Moingeuui, in Fuldensi
Francia in the-district which is-called Maingau in the-Fulda
coenobio sub pedagogio sancti Bonifacii martiris prima
monastery under the-tutelage of-saint Boniface martyr the-first
puerilis nutriturae rudimenta suscepit. Indeque potius
of-boyish nurture rudiments he-received and-from-there rather
propter singularitatem capacitatis et intelligentiae, quae
on-account-of the-singularity of-capacity and of-intelligence which
iam tum in illo magnum, quod postea claruit, specimen
already then in him a-great which afterward shone-forth sign
sapientiae promittebat, quam ob nobilitatis, quod in eo munus
of-wisdom promised than for of-nobility which in him gift

erat insigne, a Baugolfo abbate monasterii supradicti in
was distinguished by Baugulf the-abbot of-the-monastery above-mentioned into
palatium Karoli translatus est; quippe qui omnium regum
the-palace of-Charles transferred was since who of-all kings
avidissimus erat sapientes diligenter inquirere et, ut cum
the-most-eager was the-wise diligently to-seek-out and that with
omni delectatione philosopharentur, excolere. Ideo regni
all delight they-might-philosophize to-cultivate therefore of-the-kingdom
a Deo sibi commissi nebulosam et, ut ita dicam, paene
by God to-himself entrusted the-cloudy and as so I-may-say almost
caecam latitudinem totius scientiae nova irradiatione et
blind breadth of-all knowledge by-a-new illumination and
huic barbariei ante partim incognita luminosam reddidit
to-this barbarism before partly unknown luminous he-rendered
Deo illustrante atque videntem. Nunc vero relabentibus in
God illuminating and seeing now but sliding-back into
contraria studiis lumen sapientiae, quod minus diligitur,
the-contrary the-studies the-light of-wisdom which less is-loved
rarescit in plurimis. Predictus itaque homuncio — nam statura
grows-rare in very-many the-aforesaid and-so little-man for in-stature
despicabilis videbatur — in aula Karoli, amatoris sapientiae,
contemptible he-seemed in the-court of-Charles lover of-wisdom
tantum gloriae incrementi merito prudentiae et probitatis est
so-much of-glory of-increase by-merit of-prudence and of-probity has
assecutus, ut inter omnes maiestatis regiae ministros paene
attained that among all of-majesty royal ministers almost
nullus haberetur, cui rex id temporis potentissimus et
none was-held to-whom the-king at-that time most-powerful and
sapientissimus plura familiaritatis suae secreta committeret.
most-wise more of-intimacy his-own secrets would-entrust
Et re vera non immerito, cum non modo ipsius Karoli
and in-reality true not undeservedly since not only of-the-very of-Charles

temporibus, sed et — quod maioris est miraculi — sub
in-the-times but also what of-greater is of-a-marvel under
Ludowico imperatore, cum diversis et multis perturbationibus
Louis the-emperor when by-diverse and many disturbances
Francorum res publica fluctuaret et in multis decideret,
of-the-Franks the-state public wavered and in many-things gave-way
mira quadam et divinitus provisa libratione se ipsum
by-wonderful a-certain and divinely provided balance himself self
Deo protegente custodierit, ut sublimitatis nomen, quod
God protecting he-guarded that of-eminence the-name which
multis invidiam comparavit et casum, ipsum nec immature
for-many envy procured and the-fall him neither untimely
deseruerit nec periculis irremediabilibus manciparit. Haec
it-abandoned nor to-dangers irremediable it-enslaved these-things
dicimus, ut in dictis eius minus quisque habeat dubitationis,
we-say that in the-sayings of-him less each-one may-have of-doubt
dum non ignoret eum et dilectioni provectoris sui
while not he-is-unaware him both to-the-love of-promoter his-own
laudem precipuam et curiositati lectoris veritatem debere
praise special and to-the-curiosity of-the-reader truth to-owe
perspicuam. Huic opusculo ego Strabus titulos et incisiones,
clear to-this little-work I Strabo titles and divisions
prout visum est congruum, inserui, ut ad singula
as seemed it-has fitting inserted that to the-several-things
facilior quaerenti quod placuerit elucescat accessus.
easier to-one-seeking what may-please may-shine-forth access

Einhard explains why he writes. No one can tell Charles's life more truly than he, who saw it, and he owes the king his upbringing and lifelong friendship. He knows he is a barbarian little practiced in Latin, and that Cicero condemned writing without skill, but he would rather risk men's judgment than let so great a man's memory pass.

Vitam et conversationem et ex parte non modica res
the-life and the-manner-of-life and in part not small the-things
gestas domini et nutritoris mei Karoli, excellentissimi et
done of-lord and of-foster-father my of-Charles most-excellent and
merito famosissimi regis, postquam scribere animus tulit,
deservedly most-famous king after to-write the-mind brought
quanta potui brevitate conplexus sum, operam inpendens,
with-as-much I-could brevity embraced I-have effort spending
ut de his quae ad meam notitiam pervenire potuerunt
that of these which to my notice to-come have-been-able
nihil omitterem neque prolixitate narrandi nova quaeque
nothing I-might-omit nor by-prolixity of-narrating new every-thing
fastidientium animos offenderem; si tamen hoc ullo modo
of-those-who-disdain the-minds I-might-offend if yet this by-any way
vitari potest, ut nova scriptione non offendantur qui
to-be-avoided can that by-a-new writing not are-offended who
vetera et a viris doctissimis atque disertissimis confecta
old-things even by men most-learned and most-eloquent composed
monumenta fastidiunt. Et quamquam plures esse non
monuments disdain and although many to-be not
ambigam, qui otio ac litteris dediti statum aevi
I-doubt who to-leisure and to-letters devoted the-state of-the-age
praesentis non arbitrentur ita neglegendum, ut omnia penitus
present not think so to-be-neglected that all utterly

quae nunc fiunt velut nulla memoria digna silentio atque
which now happen as-if of-no memory worthy to-silence and
oblivioni tradantur, potiusque velint amore diuturnitatis
to-oblivion be-handed-over and-rather would-wish by-love of-lastingness
inlecti aliorum praeclara facta qualibuscumque scriptis inserere
enticed of-others the-splendid deeds into-whatever writings to-insert
quam sui nominis famam posteritatis memoriae nihil
than of-their-own of-name the-fame of-posterity from-the-memory nothing
scribendo subtrahere, tamen ab huiuscemodi scriptione non
by-writing to-withdraw yet from of-this-kind writing not
existimavi temperandum, quando mihi conscius eram nullum
I-thought to-be-refrained since to-me conscious I-was no-one
ea veracius quam me scribere posse, quibus ipse
these-things more-truly than me to-write to-be-able in-which myself
interfui, quaeque praesens oculata, ut dicunt, fide cognovi
I-took-part and-which present eye as they-say by-witness I-learned
et, utrum ab alio scriberentur necne, liquido scire
and whether by another they-were-being-written or-not clearly to-know
non potui. Satiusque iudicavi eadem cum aliis velut
not I-could and-better I-judged the-same-things with others as-if
communiter litteris mandata memoriae posterorum tradere
in-common to-letters entrusted to-the-memory of-posterity to-hand-down
quam regis excellentissimi et omnium sua aetate maximi
than of-the-king most-excellent and of-all in-his age the-greatest
clarissimam vitam et egregios atque moderni temporis
the-most-famous life and the-outstanding and of-modern time
hominibus vix imitabiles actus pati oblivionis tenebris
by-men scarcely imitable acts to-allow of-oblivion by-the-darkness
aboleri. Suberat et alia non inrationabilis, ut opinor,
to-be-blotted-out there-was-beneath also another not irrational as I-think
causa, quae vel sola sufficere posset, ut me ad haec
cause which even alone to-suffice could that me to these-things

scribenda conpelleret, nutrimentum videlicet in me inpensum
to-be-written might-compel the-nurture namely on me spent
et perpetua, postquam in aula eius conversari coepi, cum
and the-lasting after in the-court of-him to-live I-began with
ipso ac liberis eius amicitia; qua me ita sibi devinxit
himself and the-children of-him friendship by-which me so to-himself he-bound
debitoremque tam vivo quam mortuo constituit, ut merito
and-a-debtor as-much living as dead made that deservedly
ingratus videri et iudicari possem, si tot beneficiorum in
ungrateful to-seem and to-be-judged I-could if so-many of-benefits on
me conlatorum inmemor clarissima et inlustrissima hominis
me conferred unmindful the-most-famous and most-illustrious of-a-man
optime de me meriti gesta silentio praeterirem patererque
best of me having-deserved deeds in-silence I-should-pass-over and-should-allow
vitam eius, quasi qui numquam vixerit, sine litteris ac debita
the-life of-him as-if who never lived without letters and due
laude manere; cui scribendae atque explicandae non meum
praise to-remain to-which to-be-written and to-be-unfolded not my
ingeniolum, quod exile et parvum, immo poene nullum est,
little-talent which slight and small nay almost nothing is
sed Tullianam par erat desudare facundiam. En tibi librum
but Tullian fitting it-was to-sweat-over eloquence behold to-you a-book
praeclarissimi et maximi viri memoriam continentem; in quo
of-a-most-illustrious and greatest man the-memory containing in which
praeter illius facta non est quod admireris, nisi forte, quod
besides of-his deeds not is what you-may-wonder-at unless perhaps that
homo barbarus et in Romana locutione perparum exercitatus
a-man barbarian and in Roman speech very-little practiced
aliquid me decenter aut commode Latine scribere posse
anything me becomingly or suitably in-Latin to-write to-be-able
putaverim atque in tantam inpudentiam proruperim,
I-should-have-thought and into such impudence should-have-burst-forth

ut illud Ciceronis putarem contemnendum, quod in primo
that that-saying of-Cicero I-should-think to-be-despised which in the-first
Tusculanarum libro, cum de Latinis scriptoribus loqueretur,
of-the-Tusculans book when of Latin writers he-was-speaking
ita dixisse legitur: Mandare quemquam, inquit, litteris
so to-have-said is-read to-entrust anyone he-says to-letters
cogitationes suas, qui eas nec disponere nec inlustrare
thoughts his-own who them neither to-arrange nor to-illuminate
possit nec delectatione aliqua adlicere lectorem, hominis est
can nor by-delight any to-allure the-reader of-a-man it-is
intemperanter abutentis et otio et litteris. Poterat quidem
immoderately abusing both leisure and letters could indeed
haec oratoris egregii sententia me a scribendo deterrere,
this of-the-orator outstanding opinion me from writing to-deter
nisi animo praemeditatum haberem hominum iudicia potius
unless in-mind premeditated I-had of-men the-judgments rather
experiri et haec scribendo ingenioli mei periculum facere
to-test and this by-writing of-little-talent my the-risk to-make
quam tanti viri memoriam mihi parcendo praeterire.
than of-so-great a-man the-memory myself by-sparing to-pass-over

The Merovingian line ends with Childeric, deposed, shorn, and sent to a monastery at Pope Stephen's order, but it has long been powerless. The wealth and power of the kingdom lie with the mayors of the palace; the king has only his title, his long hair and beard, a throne from which he receives envoys and gives the answers he is taught, a small estate, and an ox cart driven by a herdsman to take him to the yearly assembly.

Gens Meroingorum, de qua Franci reges sibi creare
the-family of-the-Merovingians from which the-Franks kings for-themselves to-create
soliti erant, usque in Hildricum regem, qui iussu
accustomed had-been up-to into Childeric the-king who by-the-order
Stephani Romani pontificis depositus ac detonsus atque in
of-Stephen the-Roman pontiff deposed and shorn and into
monasterium trusus est, durasse putatur. Quae licet in illo
a-monastery thrust was to-have-lasted is-thought which although in him
finita possit videri, tamen iam dudum nullius vigoris erat,
ended may to-seem yet already long-since of-no vigor was
nec quicquam in se clarum praeter inane regis vocabulum
nor anything in itself illustrious except the-empty of-king title
praeferebat. Nam et opes et potentia regni penes
displayed for both the-wealth and the-power of-the-kingdom in-the-hands-of
palatii praefectos, qui maiores domus dicebantur, et ad
of-the-palace the-prefects who mayors of-the-house were-called and to
quos summa imperii pertinebat, tenebantur. Neque regi
whom the-supremacy of-rule belonged were-held nor to-the-king
aliud relinquebatur, quam ut regio tantum nomine
anything-else was-left than that with-the-royal only name
contentus crine profuso, barba summissa, solio resideret
content with-hair spread-out with-beard let-down on-the-throne he-should-sit
ac speciem dominantis effingeret, legatos undecumque
and the-appearance of-one-ruling should-feign envoys from-wherever

venientes audiret eisque abeuntibus responsa, quae erat
coming should-hear and-to-them departing answers which he-had-been
edoctus vel etiam iussus, ex sua velut potestate redderet;
taught or even ordered from his-own as-if power should-give
cum praeter inutile regis nomen et precarium vitae
since besides the-useless of-king name and a-precarious of-life
stipendium, quod ei praefectus aulae prout videbatur
stipend which to-him the-prefect of-the-court as it-seemed-good
exhibebat, nihil aliud proprii possideret quam unam et eam
provided nothing else of-his-own he-possessed than one and that
praeparvi reditus villam, in qua domum et ex qua famulos
of-very-small income estate on which a-house and from which servants
sibi necessaria ministrantes atque obsequium exhibentes
to-himself necessaries ministering and service rendering
paucae numerositatis habebat. Quocumque eundum erat,
of-few number he-had wherever to-be-gone was
carpento ibat, quod bubus iunctis et bubulco rustico more
in-a-carriage he-went which by-oxen yoked and a-herdsman in-rustic fashion
agente trahebatur. Sic ad palatium, sic ad publicum populi
driving was-drawn so to the-palace so to the-public of-people
sui conventum, qui annuatim ob regni utilitatem
his-own assembly which yearly for of-the-kingdom the-benefit
celebrabatur, ire, sic domum redire solebat. At regni
was-celebrated to-go so home to-return he-was-accustomed but of-the-kingdom
administrationem et omnia quae vel domi vel foris agenda
the-administration and all-things which either at-home or abroad to-be-done
ac disponenda erant praefectus aulae procurabat.
and to-be-arranged were the-prefect of-the-court managed

Pippin holds the mayoralty as if by inheritance from his father Charles, who crushed the tyrants of Francia and twice defeated the Saracens, at Poitiers and on the Berre near Narbonne. Pippin and his brother Carloman share the office until Carloman, drawn to the contemplative life, goes to Rome, becomes a monk, and builds a monastery on Mount Soracte; pestered there by visiting Frankish nobles, he withdraws to Saint Benedict's monastery at Monte Cassino, where he ends his life.

Quo officio tum, cum Hildricus deponebatur, Pippinus
which office then when Childeric was-being-deposed Pippin
pater Karoli regis iam velut hereditario fungebatur. Nam
the-father of-Charles the-king already as-if hereditary was-discharging for
pater eius Karolus, qui tyrannos per totam Franciam
the-father of-him Charles who the-tyrants through all Francia
dominatum sibi vindicantes oppressit et Sarracenos
dominion for-themselves claiming crushed and the-Saracens
Galliam occupare temptantes duobus magnis proeliis, uno in
Gaul to-occupy attempting in-two great battles one in
Aquitania apud Pictavium civitatem, altero iuxta Narbonam
Aquitaine near Poitiers the-city the-other near Narbonne
apud Birram fluvium, ita devicit, ut in Hispaniam eos
by the-Berre river so conquered that into Spain them
redire conpelleret, eundem magistratum a patre Pippino
to-return he-compelled the-same magistracy by father Pippin
sibi dimissum egregie administravit. Qui honor non
to-himself handed-down outstandingly administered which honor not
aliis a populo dari consueverat quam his qui et
to-others by the-people to-be-given had-been-customary than to-those who both
claritate generis et opum amplitudine ceteris eminebant.
by-distinction of-family and of-wealth by-the-amplitude the-rest surpassed

Hunc cum Pippinus pater Karoli regis ab avo
this when Pippin the-father of-Charles the-king from grandfather
et patre sibi et fratri Karlomanno relictum, summa
and father to-himself and to-brother Carloman left highest
cum eo concordia divisum, aliquot annis velut sub rege
with him concord divided for-some years as-if under the-king
memorato tenuisset, frater eius Karlomannus — incertum
mentioned had-held the-brother of-him Carloman uncertain
quibus de causis, tamen videtur, quod amore conversationis
what for reasons yet it-seems that by-love of-the-manner-of-life
contemplativae succensus—, operosa temporalis regni
contemplative inflamed the-laborious of-temporal of-the-kingdom
administratione relicta, Romam se in otium contulit,
administration left-behind to-Rome himself into leisure betook
ibique habitu permutato monachus factus in monte Soracte
and-there with-habit changed a-monk made on the-mount Soracte
apud ecclesiam beati Silvestri constructo monasterio cum
near the-church of-blessed Sylvester built a-monastery with
fratribus secum ad hoc venientibus per aliquot annos
the-brothers with-himself to this coming for some years
optata quiete perfruitur. Sed cum ex Francia multi
the-wished-for quiet enjoys but when from Francia many
nobilium ob vota solvenda Romam sollemniter commearent
of-the-nobles for vows to-be-fulfilled to-Rome solemnly traveled
et eum velut dominum quondam suum praeterire nollent,
and him as-if lord formerly their-own to-pass-by were-unwilling
otium, quo maxime delectabatur, crebra salutatione
the-leisure in-which chiefly he-was-delighted by-frequent greeting
interrumpentes locum mutare conpellunt. Nam huiuscemodi
interrupting the-place to-change they-compel for of-this-kind
frequentiam cum suo proposito officere vidisset, relicto
the-crowding when his-own purpose to-hinder he-had-seen left-behind

monte in Samnium provinciam ad monasterium sancti
the-mount into Samnium the-province to the-monastery of-saint
Benedicti situm in castro Casino secessit et ibi quod
Benedict situated in the-fort Casino he-withdrew and there what
reliquum erat temporalis vitae religiose conversando conplevit.
remaining was of-temporal life religiously living completed

III · CHARLES BECOMES KING

Pippin, made king by the pope's authority, rules alone for fifteen years and more, and dies of dropsy at Paris after nine years of war in Aquitaine against Duke Waifar. The Franks make his sons Charles and Carloman joint kings and divide the kingdom between them. The peace between the brothers holds with difficulty. When Carloman dies after two years, his widow flees with her sons to the Lombard king Desiderius, and the Franks make Charles king of all.

Pippinus autem per auctoritatem Romani pontificis ex
Pippin moreover through the-authority of-the-Roman pontiff from
praefecto palatii rex constitutus, cum per annos XV aut
prefect of-the-palace king established when through years fifteen or
eo amplius Francis solus imperaret, finito Aquitanico
than-that more over-the-Franks alone he-ruled finished the-Aquitanian
bello, quod contra Waifarium ducem Aquitaniae ab eo
war which against Waifar the-duke of-Aquitaine by him
susceptum per continuos novem annos gerebatur, apud
undertaken through continuous nine years was-waged at
Parisios morbo aquae intercutis diem obiit, superstitibus
Paris by-the-disease of-water under-the-skin his-day met surviving
liberis Karlo et Karlomanno, ad quos successio regni
the-children Charles and Carloman to whom the-succession of-the-kingdom
divino nutu pervenerat. Franci siquidem facto sollemniter
by-divine will had-come the-Franks indeed held solemnly

generali conventu ambos sibi reges constituunt, ea
a-general assembly both for-themselves kings establish that
conditione praemissa, ut totum regni corpus ex aequo
condition laid-down-first that the-whole of-the-kingdom body on equal-terms
partirentur, et Karolus eam partem, quam pater eorum
they-should-divide and Charles that part which the-father of-them
Pippinus tenuerat, Karlomannus vero eam, cui patruus
Pippin had-held Carloman but that over-which the-uncle
eorum Karlomannus praeerat, regendi gratia susciperet.
of-them Carloman ruled of-ruling for-the-sake should-take-up
Susceptae sunt utrimque conditiones, et pars regni divisi
accepted were on-both-sides the-conditions and the-part of-the-kingdom divided
iuxta modum sibi propositum ab utroque recepta est.
according-to the-manner to-himself proposed by each received was
Mansitque ista, quamvis cum summa difficultate, concordia,
and-remained that although with the-greatest difficulty concord
multis ex parte Karlomanni societatem separare molientibus,
many from the-side of-Carloman the-partnership to-sever striving
adeo ut quidam eos etiam bello committere sint meditati.
so that some them even in-war to-engage have planned
Sed in hoc plus suspecti quam periculi fuisse ipse rerum
but in this more of-suspicion than of-danger to-have-been itself of-things
exitus adprobavit, cum defuncto Karlomanno uxor eius
the-outcome proved when having-died Carloman the-wife of-him
et filii cum quibusdam, qui ex optimatum eius numero
and the-sons with certain-men who from of-the-nobles of-him the-number
primores erant, Italiam fuga petiit et nullis existentibus
the-chief-men were Italy in-flight sought and no existing
causis, spreto mariti fratre, sub Desiderii regis
reasons scorned of-the-husband the-brother under of-Desiderius king
Langobardorum patrocinium se cum liberis suis contulit.
of-the-Lombards protection herself with children her-own betook

Et Karlomannus quidem post administratum communiter
and Carloman indeed after administered in-common
biennio regnum morbo decessit; Karolus autem fratre
for-two-years the-kingdom by-disease died Charles moreover the-brother
defuncto consensu omnium Francorum rex constituitur.
having-died by-the-consent of-all of-the-Franks king is-established

IV · THE PLAN OF THE WORK

Since nothing is written of Charles's birth, infancy, or boyhood, and no one living remembers them, Einhard passes over what is unknown. He will tell first Charles's deeds at home and abroad, then his character and pursuits, and then his government and his death, omitting nothing worth knowing.

De cuius nativitate atque infantia vel etiam pueritia quia neque
of whose birth and infancy or even boyhood because neither
scriptis usquam aliquid declaratum est, neque quisquam modo
in-writings anywhere anything declared has-been nor anyone now
superesse invenitur, qui horum se dicat habere notitiam,
to-survive is-found who of-these-things himself may-say to-have knowledge
scribere ineptum iudicans ad actus et mores ceterasque
to-write unfitting judging to the-acts and the-character and-the-other
vitae illius partes explicandas ac demonstrandas, omissis
of-life of-his parts to-be-unfolded and to-be-shown omitted
incognitis, transire disposui; ita tamen, ut primo res
the-unknown-things to-pass-over I-have-arranged so yet that first the-things
gestas et domi et foris, deinde mores et studia eius, tum
done both at-home and abroad then the-character and pursuits of-him then
de regni administratione et fine narrando, nihil de
about of-the-kingdom the-administration and the-end by-narrating nothing of
his quae cognitu vel digna vel necessaria sunt praetermittam.
these which to-be-known either worthy or necessary are I-may-pass-over

V · THE AQUITANIAN WAR

Charles's first war finishes his father's in Aquitaine. Carloman promises help and fails him, but Charles presses on and will not stop until the work is done. He drives Hunold, who has tried to revive the war, out of Aquitaine into Gascony, then crosses the Garonne and demands him of Lupus, duke of the Gascons, on threat of war. Lupus surrenders Hunold and submits himself and his province to Charles.

Omnium bellorum, quae gessit, primo Aquitanicum, a patre
of-all the-wars which he-waged first the-Aquitanian by the-father
inchoatum, sed nondum finitum, quia cito peragi
begun but not-yet finished because quickly to-be-accomplished
posse videbatur, fratre adhuc vivo, etiam et auxilium
to-be-able it-seemed with-the-brother still living even also help
ferre rogato, suscepit. Et licet eum frater promisso
to-bring asked he-undertook and although him the-brother with-promised
frustrasset auxilio, susceptam expeditionem strenuissime
had-cheated help the-undertaken expedition most-vigorously
exsecutus non prius incepto desistere aut semel
having-pursued not sooner from-the-thing-begun to-desist or once
suscepto labori cedere voluit, quam hoc, quod efficere
to-the-undertaken labor to-yield he-wished than this which to-effect
moliebatur, perseverantia quadam ac iugitate perfecto fine
he-was-striving by-perseverance a-certain and continuity with-completed end
concluderet. Nam et Hunoldum, qui post Waifarii mortem
he-should-conclude for both Hunold who after of-Waifar the-death
Aquitaniam occupare bellumque iam poene peractum reparare
Aquitaine to-occupy and-the-war already almost finished to-renew
temptaverat, Aquitaniam relinquere et Wasconiam petere
had-attempted Aquitaine to-leave and Gascony to-seek
coegit. Quem tamen ibi consistere non sustinens, transmisso
he-forced whom yet there to-stay not bearing crossed

amne Garonna, Lupo Wasconum duci per legatos
the-river Garonne to-Lupus of-the-Gascons the-duke through envoys
mandat, ut perfugam reddat; quod ni festinato faciat,
he-commands that the-fugitive he-should-return which unless in-haste he-does
bello se eum expostulaturum. Sed Lupus saniori usus
by-war himself him about-to-demand but Lupus sounder having-used
consilio non solum Hunoldum reddidit, sed etiam se
counsel not only Hunold returned but even himself
ipsum cum provincia cui praeerat eius potestati permisit.
self with the-province which he-ruled of-him to-the-power entrusted

VI · THE LOMBARD WAR

At Pope Hadrian's request Charles makes war on the Lombards. His father ended his war on Aistulf quickly at Pavia, but Charles does not stop until he has taken Desiderius and exiled him for life, driven his son Adalgis from Italy, put down Hrodgaud of Friuli, made his own son Pippin king of all Italy, and restored to Hadrian the lands the Lombards had taken.

Conpositis in Aquitania rebus eoque bello finito, regni
settled in Aquitaine the-affairs and-that war finished of-the-kingdom
quoque socio iam rebus humanis exempto, rogatu et
also the-partner already from-affairs human removed by-the-request and
precibus Hadriani Romanae urbis episcopi exoratus bellum
prayers of-Hadrian of-the-Roman city bishop prevailed-upon a-war
contra Langobardos suscepit. Quod prius quidem et a patre
against the-Lombards he-undertook which earlier indeed also by the-father
eius, Stephano papa supplicante, cum magna difficultate
of-him Stephen the-pope entreating with great difficulty
susceptum est; quia quidam e primoribus Francorum, cum
undertaken was because certain-men from the-chief-men of-the-Franks with

quibus consultare solebat, adeo voluntati eius renisi
whom to-consult he-was-accustomed so the-will of-him resisted
sunt, ut se regem deserturos domumque redituros
have that themselves the-king about-to-desert and-home about-to-return
libera voce proclamarent. Susceptum tamen est tunc contra
with-free voice they-proclaimed undertaken yet it-was then against
Haistulfum regem et celerrime conpletum. Sed licet sibi
Aistulf the-king and most-swiftly completed but although to-himself
et patri belli suscipiendi similis ac potius eadem causa
and to-the-father of-the-war to-be-undertaken similar and rather the-same cause
subesse videretur, haud simili tamen et labore certatum
to-underlie seemed by-no-means similar yet both with-labor it-was-fought
et fine constat esse conpletum. Pippinus siquidem
and with-end it-is-agreed to-have-been completed Pippin indeed
Haistulfum regem paucorum dierum obsidione apud Ticenum
Aistulf the-king of-few days by-a-siege at Pavia
conpulit et obsides dare et erepta Romanis oppida atque
compelled both hostages to-give and taken-from the-Romans towns and
castella restituere atque, ut reddita non repeterentur,
fortresses to-restore and that returned not they-should-be-sought-again
sacramento fidem facere; Karolus vero post inchoatum a se
by-oath assurance to-make Charles but after begun by himself
bellum non prius destitit, quam et Desiderium regem, quem
the-war not sooner desisted than both Desiderius the-king whom
longa obsidione fatigaverat, in deditionem susciperet, filium
by-long siege he-had-wearied into surrender he-received the-son
eius Adalgisum, in quem spes omnium inclinatae videbantur,
of-him Adalgis on whom the-hopes of-all inclined seemed
non solum regno, sed etiam Italia excedere conpelleret,
not only from-the-kingdom but even from-Italy to-depart he-compelled
omnia Romanis erepta restitueret, Hruodgausum Foroiuliani
all-things from-the-Romans taken he-restored Hrodgaud of-the-Friulian

ducatus praefectum res novas molientem opprimeret totamque
duchy the-prefect affairs new plotting he-crushed and-all
Italiam suae ditioni subiugaret subactaeque filium suum
Italy to-his-own dominion subjected and-on-the-subdued the-son his-own
Pippinum regem inponeret. Italiam intranti quam difficilis
Pippin king set-over Italy to-the-one-entering how difficult
Alpium transitus fuerit, quantoque Francorum labore
of-the-Alps the-crossing was and-with-how-great of-the-Franks labor
invia montium iuga et eminentes in caelum scopuli
the-trackless of-the-mountains ridges and towering into the-sky the-crags
atque asperae cautes superatae sint, hoc loco describerem,
and rough rocks overcome were in-this place I-would-describe
nisi vitae illius modum potius quam bellorum, quae gessit,
unless of-the-life of-him the-manner rather than of-the-wars which he-waged
eventus memoriae mandare praesenti opere animo esset
the-outcomes to-memory to-entrust in-the-present work to-mind it-were
propositum. Finis tamen huius belli fuit subacta Italia et
proposed the-end yet of-this war was subdued Italy and
rex Desiderius perpetuo exilio deportatus et filius eius
the-king Desiderius in-perpetual exile deported and the-son of-him
Adalgisus Italia pulsus et res a Langobardorum regibus
Adalgis from-Italy driven and the-things by of-the-Lombards the-kings
ereptae Hadriano Romanae ecclesiae rectori restitutae.
taken to-Hadrian of-the-Roman church ruler restored

VII · THE SAXON WAR

The Saxon war is the longest and fiercest the Franks fight: thirty-three years against a pagan people whose border runs mostly over open plain, where killings and burnings never stop. The Saxons often surrender and promise to become Christians, and as often rebel. At last Charles carries off ten thousand of them from the Elbe and scatters them through Gaul and Germany, and the war ends with their conversion.

Post cuius finem Saxonicum, quod quasi intermissum
after whose end the-Saxon which as-if interrupted
videbatur, repetitum est. Quo nullum neque prolixius
seemed renewed was than-which none neither more-prolonged
neque atrocius Francorumque populo laboriosius susceptum
nor more-savage and-of-the-Franks for-the-people more-laborious undertaken
est; quia Saxones, sicut omnes fere Germaniam incolentes
was because the-Saxons as all almost Germany inhabiting
nationes, et natura feroces et cultui daemonum dediti
nations both by-nature fierce and to-the-worship of-demons devoted
nostraeque religioni contrarii neque divina neque humana
and-to-our religion hostile neither divine nor human
iura vel polluere vel transgredi inhonestum arbitrabantur.
laws either to-pollute or to-transgress dishonorable thought
Suberant et causae, quae cotidie pacem conturbare
there-were-beneath also causes which daily the-peace to-disturb
poterant, termini videlicet nostri et illorum poene ubique
could the-borders namely ours and theirs almost everywhere
in plano contigui, praeter pauca loca, in quibus vel
in the-plain adjoining except few places in which either
silvae maiores vel montium iuga interiecta utrorumque
forests greater or of-mountains ridges set-between of-both
agros certo limite disterminant, in quibus caedes
the-fields with-a-certain boundary divide in which slaughters

et rapinae et incendia vicissim fieri non cessabant.
and plunderings and burnings in-turn to-happen not ceased
Quibus adeo Franci sunt irritati, ut non iam vicissitudinem
by-which so the-Franks were irritated that not now retaliation
reddere, sed apertum contra eos bellum suscipere dignum
to-return but open against them war to-undertake worthy
iudicarent. Susceptum est igitur adversus eos bellum, quod
they-judged undertaken was therefore against them a-war which
magna utrimque animositate, tamen maiore Saxonum
with-great on-both-sides animosity yet with-greater of-the-Saxons
quam Francorum damno, per continuos triginta tres annos
than of-the-Franks loss through continuous thirty three years
gerebatur. Poterat siquidem citius finiri, si Saxonum hoc
was-waged it-could indeed sooner to-be-ended if of-the-Saxons this
perfidia pateretur. Difficile dictu est, quoties superati
the-faithlessness allowed difficult to-say it-is how-often overcome
ac supplices regi se dediderunt, imperata facturos
and suppliant to-the-king themselves they-surrendered things-ordered about-to-do
polliciti sunt, obsides qui imperabantur absque dilatione
promised they-have hostages who were-demanded without delay
dederunt, legatos qui mittebantur susceperunt, aliquoties ita
they-gave envoys who were-sent they-received sometimes so
domiti et emolliti, ut etiam cultum daemonum dimittere
tamed and softened that even the-worship of-demons to-abandon
et Christianae religioni se subdere velle promitterent.
and to-the-Christian religion themselves to-submit to-wish they-promised
Sed sicut ad haec facienda aliquoties proni, sic ad
but as to these-things to-be-done sometimes inclined so to
eadem pervertenda semper fuere praecipites, non sit ut
the-same-things to-be-overturned always they-were headlong not it-is that
satis aestimare, ad utrum horum faciliores verius dici
enough to-judge to which of-these readier more-truly to-be-said

possint; quippe cum post inchoatum cum eis bellum vix
they-could since when after begun with them the-war scarcely
ullus annus exactus sit, quo non ab eis huiuscemodi facta
any year completed was in-which not by them of-this-kind made
sit permutatio. Sed magnanimitas regis ac perpetua tam
was a-change but the-magnanimity of-the-king and the-perpetual as-much
in adversis quam in prosperis mentis constantia nulla eorum
in adversities as in prosperities of-mind constancy by-no of-them
mutabilitate vel vinci poterat vel ab his quae agere
changeableness either to-be-conquered could or from these-things which to-do
coeperat defatigari. Nam numquam eos huiuscemodi aliquid
he-had-begun to-be-wearied for never them of-this-kind anything
perpetrantes inpune ferre passus est, quin aut ipse per
perpetrating unpunished to-carry suffered he-has but-that either himself by
se ducto aut per comites suos misso exercitu perfidiam
himself led or through counts his-own sent an-army the-faithlessness
ulcisceretur et dignam ab eis poenam exigeret, usque dum,
he-should-avenge and a-worthy from them penalty should-exact up-to until
omnibus qui resistere solebant profligatis et in suam
all who to-resist were-accustomed routed and into his-own
potestatem redactis, decem milia hominum ex his qui
power reduced ten thousand of-men from those who
utrasque ripas Albis fluminis incolebant cum uxoribus et
both banks of-the-Elbe river inhabited with wives and
parvulis sublatos transtulit et huc atque illuc per Galliam
little-children removed he-transferred and hither and thither through Gaul
et Germaniam multimoda divisione distribuit. Eaque
and Germany by-manifold division distributed and-on-that
conditione a rege proposita et ab illis suscepta tractum
condition by the-king proposed and by them accepted dragged-out
per tot annos bellum constat esse finitum, ut,
through so-many years the-war it-is-agreed to-have-been ended that

abiecto daemonum cultu et relictis patriis caerimoniis,
cast-off of-demons the-worship and abandoned the-ancestral ceremonies
Christianae fidei atque religionis sacramenta susciperent et
of-the-Christian faith and religion the-sacraments they-should-receive and
Francis adunati unus cum eis populus efficerentur.
with-the-Franks united one with them people should-be-made

VIII · THE TWO BATTLES

Charles himself meets the Saxons in battle only twice, at Osning by Detmold and on the Hase, within one month; after that they dare not face him except behind fortifications. Many noblemen of both peoples die before the war ends in its thirty-third year. Meanwhile Charles fights many other wars at once, so that one may wonder whether to admire his endurance or his good fortune more; he neither refuses toil nor shrinks from danger.

Hoc bello, licet per multum temporis spatium traheretur,
in-this war although through much of-time a-space it-was-dragged-out
ipse non amplius cum hoste quam bis acie conflixit,
he-himself not more with the-enemy than twice in-battle clashed
semel iuxta montem qui Osneggi dicitur in loco Theotmelli
once near the-mount which Osning is-called in the-place Detmold
nominato et iterum apud Hasa fluvium, et hoc uno mense,
named and again at the-Hase river and this in-one month
paucis quoque interpositis diebus. His duobus proeliis hostes
few also intervening days in-these two battles the-enemies
adeo profligati ac devicti sunt, ut ulterius regem neque
so routed and conquered were that further the-king neither
provocare neque venienti resistere, nisi aliqua loci munitione
to-provoke nor to-him-coming to-resist unless by-some of-place fortification
defensi, auderent. Plures tamen eo bello tam ex nobilitate
defended they-dared more yet in-that war as-much from the-nobility

Francorum quam Saxonum et functi summis honoribus
of-the-Franks as of-the-Saxons and having-discharged the-highest offices
viri consumpti sunt. Tandemque anno tricesimo tertio
men consumed were and-at-last in-the-year thirtieth third
finitum est, cum interim tot ac tanta in diversis terrarum
ended it-was when meanwhile so-many and so-great in diverse of-the-lands
partibus bella contra Francos et exorta sint et sollertia regis
parts wars against the-Franks both arisen were and by-the-skill of-the-king
administrata, ut merito intuentibus in dubium venire possit,
administered that deservedly to-those-looking into doubt to-come can
utrum in eo aut laborum patientiam aut felicitatem potius
whether in him either of-labors the-endurance or the-good-fortune rather
mirari conveniat. Nam biennio ante Italicum hoc bellum
to-wonder-at it-is-fitting for two-years before the-Italian this war
sumpsit exordium, et cum sine intermissione gereretur,
took beginning and when without intermission it-was-waged
nihil tamen ex his quae aliubi erant gerenda dimissum
nothing yet of these-things which elsewhere were to-be-waged let-go
aut ulla in parte ab aeque operoso certamine cessatum
or any in part from equally laborious struggle ceased
est. Nam rex, omnium qui sua aetate gentibus
was for the-king of-all who in-their-own age over-the-peoples
dominabantur et prudentia maximus et animi magnitudine
ruled both in-prudence greatest and of-mind in-greatness
praestantissimus, nihil in his quae vel suscipienda erant
most-outstanding nothing in these-things which either to-be-undertaken were
vel exsequenda aut propter laborem detractavit aut propter
or to-be-carried-out either on-account-of labor refused or on-account-of
periculum exhorruit, verum unumquodque secundum suam
danger shrank-from but each-thing according-to its-own

qualitatem et subire et ferre doctus nec in adversis cedere
quality both to-undergo and to-bear taught neither in adversities to-yield
nec in prosperis falso blandienti fortunae adsentiri solebat.
nor in prosperities falsely to-flattering fortune to-assent was-accustomed

IX · RONCESVALLES

During the Saxon war Charles invades Spain, takes the towns he comes to, and returns safe, except in the Pyrenees. As the army passes in a long column through the narrows, the Gascons ambush the rearguard from the wooded heights, kill them to the last man, and scatter by night. Eggihard the steward, Anselm the count of the palace, and Roland of the Breton march fall there.

Cum enim assiduo ac poene continuo cum Saxonibus
when for with-unremitting and almost continuous with the-Saxons
bello certaretur, dispositis per congrua confiniorum loca
war it-was-fought placed through suitable of-the-frontiers places
praesidiis, Hispaniam quam maximo poterat belli apparatu
garrisons Spain as with-the-greatest he-could of-war preparation
adgreditur; saltuque Pyrinei superato, omnibus, quae
he-attacks and-the-pass of-the-Pyrenees crossed all which
adierat, oppidis atque castellis in deditionem acceptis,
he-had-approached towns and fortresses into surrender received
salvo et incolomi exercitu revertitur; praeter quod in ipso
with-safe and unharmed army he-returns except that in the-very
Pyrinei iugo Wasconicam perfidiam parumper in redeundo
of-the-Pyrenees ridge the-Gascon faithlessness for-a-little-while in returning
contigit experiri. Nam cum agmine longo, ut loci et
it-happened to-experience for when in-a-column long as of-the-place and
angustiarum situs permittebat, porrectus iret exercitus,
of-the-narrows the-position allowed stretched-out was-going the-army

Wascones in summi montis vertice positis insidiis — est
the-Gascons on of-the-highest mountain the-top placed an-ambush is
enim locus ex opacitate silvarum, quarum ibi maxima
for the-place from the-darkness of-the-woods of-which there very-great
est copia, insidiis ponendis oportunus — extremam
is abundance for-ambushes to-be-laid suitable the-last
impedimentorum partem et eos qui novissimi agminis
of-the-baggage part and those who of-the-rearmost column
incedentes subsidio praecedentes tuebantur desuper incursantes
marching as-a-support the-ones-going-before protected from-above attacking
in subiectam vallem deiciunt, consertoque cum eis proelio
into lying-below the-valley they-hurl-down and-joined with them battle
usque ad unum omnes interficiunt, ac direptis impedimentis,
all-the-way to one all they-kill and plundered the-baggage
noctis beneficio, quae iam instabat, protecti summa cum
of-night by-the-favor which already was-pressing protected the-greatest with
celeritate in diversa disperguntur. Adiuvabat in hoc facto
speed in different-directions are-scattered was-helping in this deed
Wascones et levitas armorum et loci, in quo res
the-Gascons both the-lightness of-arms and of-the-place in which the-affair
gerebatur, situs, econtra Francos et armorum gravitas
was-carried-on the-position on-the-other-hand the-Franks both of-arms the-weight
et loci iniquitas per omnia Wasconibus reddidit impares.
and of-the-place the-unevenness in all-things to-the-Gascons rendered unequal
In quo proelio Eggihardus regiae mensae praepositus,
in which battle Eggihard of-the-royal table the-steward
Anshelmus comes palatii [et Hruodlandus Brittannici limitis
Anselm count of-the-palace and Roland of-the-Breton march
praefectus] cum aliis conpluribus interficiuntur. Neque hoc
the-prefect with others very-many are-killed nor this
factum ad praesens vindicari poterat, quia hostis re
deed for the-present to-be-avenged could because the-enemy the-thing

perpetrata ita dispersus est, ut ne fama quidem remaneret,
perpetrated so dispersed was that not a-report even remained
ubinam gentium quaeri potuisset.
where-in-the-world of-the-nations to-be-sought it-could-have

X · THE BRETONS AND BENEVENTO

Charles subdues the Bretons. Then he marches through Rome to Capua and threatens Benevento. Duke Arichis sends his sons with treasure and offers to obey in everything but appearing in person. Charles, considering the people's good, accepts, keeps the younger son as a hostage, sends envoys to take the Beneventans' oaths, and returns to Gaul after some days at the holy places of Rome.

Domuit et Brittones, qui ad occidentem in extrema quadam
he-subdued also the-Bretons who to the-west in the-farthest a-certain
parte Galliae super litus oceani residentes dicto audientes
part of-Gaul upon the-shore of-the-ocean dwelling to-the-word obedient
non erant, missa in eos expeditione, qua et obsides
not were sent against them an-expedition by-which both hostages
dare et quae imperarentur se facturos polliceri coacti
to-give and what-things might-be-ordered themselves about-to-do to-promise compelled
sunt. Ipse postea cum exercitu Italiam ingressus ac
they-were he-himself afterward with an-army Italy having-entered and
per Romam iter agens Capuam Campaniae urbem accessit
through Rome journey making Capua of-Campania the-city approached
atque ibi positis castris bellum Beneventanis, ni dederentur,
and there pitched the-camp war on-the-Beneventans unless they-surrendered
comminatus est. Praevenit hoc dux gentis Aragisus: filios
threatened he-has forestalled this the-duke of-the-people Arichis the-sons
suos Rumoldum et Grimoldum cum magna pecunia obviam
his-own Romuald and Grimoald with great money to-meet

regi mittens rogat, ut filios obsides suscipiat, seque
the-king sending he-asks that the-sons as-hostages he-may-receive and-himself
cum gente imperata facturum pollicetur, praeter hoc solum,
with the-people things-ordered about-to-do he-promises except this alone
si ipse ad conspectum venire cogeretur. Rex, utilitate
if he-himself to the-sight to-come should-be-compelled the-king the-benefit
gentis magis quam animi eius obstinatione considerata,
of-the-people more than of-the-mind of-him the-obstinacy considered
et oblatos sibi obsides suscepit eique, ut ad conspectum
both the-offered to-himself hostages received and-to-him that to the-sight
venire non cogeretur, pro magno munere concessit;
to-come not he-should-be-compelled for a-great gift granted
unoque, ex filiis, qui minor erat, obsidatus gratia retento,
and-one of the-sons who younger was of-hostageship for-the-sake kept
maiorem patri remisit; legatisque ob sacramenta fidelitatis
the-elder to-the-father sent-back and-envoys for the-oaths of-fidelity
a Beneventanis exigenda atque suscipienda cum Aragiso
from the-Beneventans to-be-exacted and to-be-received with Arichis
dimissis Romam redit, consumptisque ibi in sanctorum
sent-off to-Rome he-returns and-spent there in of-the-holy
veneratione locorum aliquot diebus in Galliam revertitur.
veneration places some days into Gaul he-returns

The Bavarian war begins suddenly and ends quickly. Duke Tassilo, urged by his wife, Desiderius's daughter, allies with the Huns and defies Charles. Charles comes with a great army to the Lech, the boundary between the Bavarians and the Alamanni. Tassilo submits without a fight and gives hostages, among them his son Theodo. Later he is summoned to the king and not allowed to return, and Bavaria is entrusted no longer to a duke but to counts.

Baioaricum deinde bellum et repente ortum et celeri fine
the-Bavarian then war both suddenly arisen and with-a-swift end
conpletum est. Quod superbia simul ac socordia Tassilonis
completed was which the-pride together and the-sloth of-Tassilo
ducis excitavit; qui hortatu uxoris, quae filia Desiderii
the-duke stirred-up who at-the-urging of-his-wife who the-daughter of-Desiderius
regis erat ac patris exilium per maritum ulcisci posse
the-king was and of-the-father the-exile through the-husband to-avenge to-be-able
putabat, iuncto foedere cum Hunis, qui Baioariis sunt ab
thought joined a-treaty with the-Huns who to-the-Bavarians are on-the
oriente contermini, non solum imperata non facere, sed bello
east bordering not only things-ordered not to-do but in-war
regem provocare temptabat. Cuius contumaciam, quia nimia
the-king to-provoke attempted whose defiance because excessive
videbatur, animositas regis ferre nequiverat, ac proinde
it-seemed the-spirit of-the-king to-bear had-been-unable and accordingly
copiis undique contractis Baioariam petiturus ipse ad
with-forces from-all-sides drawn-together Bavaria about-to-seek he-himself to
Lechum amnem cum magno venit exercitu. Is fluvius Baioarios
the-Lech river with a-great came army this river the-Bavarians
ab Alamannis dividit. Cuius in ripa castris conlocatis,
from the-Alamanni divides whose on bank the-camp placed
priusquam provinciam intraret, animum ducis per legatos
before the-province he-should-enter the-mind of-the-duke through envoys

statuit experiri. Sed nec ille pertinaciter agere vel sibi vel
he-decided to-test but neither he obstinately to-act either for-himself or
genti utile ratus supplex se regi permisit, obsides
for-the-people useful having-judged suppliant himself to-the-king entrusted hostages
qui imperabantur dedit, inter quos et filium suum Theodonem,
who were-demanded he-gave among whom also the-son his-own Theodo
data insuper fide cum iuramento, quod ab illius potestate ad
given moreover a-pledge with an-oath that from his power to
defectionem nemini suadenti adsentire deberet. Sicque bello,
revolt to-no-one persuading to-assent he-ought and-so on-the-war
quod quasi maximum futurum videbatur, celerrimus est finis
which as-if the-greatest about-to-be seemed most-swift was an-end
inpositus. Tassilo tamen postmodum ad regem evocatus
imposed Tassilo yet afterward to the-king summoned
neque redire permissus, neque provincia, quam tenebat,
neither to-return permitted nor the-province which he-held
ulterius duci, sed comitibus ad regendum commissa est.
further to-a-duke but to-counts for ruling entrusted was

XII · THE WILZI

Charles next makes war on the Slavs called Wilzi, or Welatabi in their own tongue, who harass the Obodrites, allies of the Franks. Einhard describes the Baltic, a gulf of unknown length and no more than a hundred miles wide, with the Danes and Swedes on its northern shore and the Slavs and Aisti on its southern. Charles crushes the Welatabi in a single campaign, so that they never again refuse his orders.

His motibus ita conpositis, Sclavis, qui nostra consuetudine
these disturbances so settled on-the-Slavs who in-our custom
Wilzi, proprie vero, id est sua locutione, Welatabi
Wilzi properly but that is in-their-own speech Welatabi

dicuntur, bellum inlatum est. In quo et Saxones velut
are-called war brought was in which also the-Saxons as-if
auxiliares inter ceteras nationes, quae regis signa
auxiliaries among the-other nations which of-the-king the-standards
iussae sequebantur, quamquam ficta et minus devota
ordered followed although with-feigned and less devoted
oboedientia, militabant. Causa belli erat, quod Abodritos,
obedience served the-cause of-the-war was that the-Obodrites
qui cum Francis olim foederati erant, adsidua incursione
who with the-Franks once allied were with-constant raiding
lacessebant nec iussionibus coerceri poterant. Sinus quidam
they-harassed nor by-commands to-be-restrained could a-gulf a-certain
ab occidentali oceano orientem versus porrigitur, longitudinis
from the-western ocean the-east toward stretches of-length
quidem inconpertae, latitudinis vero quae nusquam centum
indeed unascertained of-breadth but which nowhere a-hundred
milia passuum excedat, cum in multis locis contractior
thousand of-paces exceeds since in many places narrower
inveniatur. Hunc multae circumsedent nationes; Dani
it-is-found this many surround nations the-Danes
siquidem ac Sueones, quos Nordmannos vocamus, et
indeed and Swedes whom Northmen we-call both
septentrionale litus et omnes in eo insulas tenent. At litus
the-northern shore and all in it the-islands hold but the-shore
australe Sclavi et Aisti et aliae diversae incolunt nationes;
southern the-Slavs and the-Aisti and other diverse inhabit nations
inter quos vel praecipui sunt, quibus tunc a rege bellum
among whom even chief are on-whom then by the-king war
inferebatur, Welatabi. Quos ille una tantum et quam per
was-being-brought the-Welatabi whom he one only and which by

se gesserat expeditione ita contudit ac domuit, ut
himself he-had-waged expedition so crushed and subdued that
ulterius imperata facere minime rennuendum iudicarent.
further things-ordered to-do by-no-means to-be-refused they-judged

XIII · THE AVAR WAR

The greatest war after the Saxon is against the Avars, or Huns, and ends in its eighth year. Pannonia is emptied of people, the khagan's palace leaves no trace, and the Avars' long-hoarded treasure makes the Franks rich. Only two Frankish leaders die, Eric of Friuli in an ambush and Gerold of Bavaria drawing up his line. The Bohemian and Linonian wars end quickly.

Maximum omnium, quae ab illo gesta sunt, bellorum praeter
the-greatest of-all which by him waged were of-the-wars except
Saxonicum huic bello successit, illud videlicet, quod contra
the-Saxon to-this war succeeded that namely which against
Avares sive Hunos susceptum est. Quod ille et animosius
the-Avars or Huns undertaken was which he both more-spiritedly
quam cetera et longe maiori apparatu administravit. Unam
than the-others and far with-greater preparation administered one
tamen per se in Pannoniam — nam hanc provinciam ea
yet by himself into Pannonia for this province that
gens tum incolebat — expeditionem fecit, cetera filio suo
people then inhabited expedition he-made the-others to-the-son his-own
Pippino ac praefectis provinciarum, comitibus etiam atque
Pippin and to-the-prefects of-the-provinces to-the-counts even and
legatis perficienda commisit. Quod cum ab his strenuissime
to-envoys to-be-completed entrusted which when by these most-vigorously
fuisset administratum, octavo tandem anno conpletum est.
had-been administered in-the-eighth at-last year completed it-was

Quot proelia in eo gesta, quantum sanguinis effusum sit,
how-many battles in it waged how-much of-blood shed was
testatur vacua omni habitatore Pannonia et locus, in quo
bears-witness empty of-every inhabitant Pannonia and the-place in which
regia kagani erat, ita desertus, ut ne vestigium quidem in
the-palace of-the-khagan was so deserted that not a-trace even in
eo humanae habitationis appareat. Tota in hoc bello Hunorum
it of-human habitation appears all in this war of-the-Huns
nobilitas periit, tota gloria decidit. Omnis pecunia et congesti
the-nobility perished all the-glory fell all the-money and gathered
ex longo tempore thesauri direpti sunt. Neque ullum bellum
from long time the-treasures plundered were nor any war
contra Francos exortum humana potest memoria recordari,
against the-Franks arisen human can memory to-recall
quo illi magis ditati et opibus aucti sint. Quippe cum
in-which they more enriched and with-wealth increased were since when
usque in id temporis poene pauperes viderentur, tantum
up-to into that of-time almost poor they-seemed so-much
auri et argenti in regia repertum, tot spolia pretiosa
of-gold and of-silver in the-palace found so-many spoils precious
in proeliis sublata, ut merito credi possit hoc Francos
in battles carried-off that deservedly to-be-believed it-could this the-Franks
Hunis iuste eripuisse, quod Huni prius aliis gentibus
from-the-Huns justly to-have-taken which the-Huns before from-other peoples
iniuste eripuerunt. Duo tantum ex proceribus Francorum eo
unjustly took two only of the-nobles of-the-Franks in-that
bello perierunt: Ericus dux Foroiulanus in Liburnia iuxta
war perished Eric the-duke of-Friuli in Liburnia near
Tharsaticam maritimam civitatem insidiis oppidanorum
Tarsatica the-maritime city by-the-ambushes of-the-townsmen
interceptus, et Geroldus Baioariae praefectus in Pannonia, cum
caught and Gerold of-Bavaria the-prefect in Pannonia when

contra Hunos proeliaturus aciem strueret, incertum a
against the-Huns about-to-fight the-battle-line he-was-drawing-up uncertain by
quo, cum duobus tantum, qui eum obequitantem ac singulos
whom with two only who him riding-about and each-one
hortantem comitabantur, interfectus est. Ceterum incruentum
exhorting accompanied killed was for-the-rest bloodless
poene Francis hoc bellum fuit et prosperrimum exitum
almost for-the-Franks this war was and the-most-prosperous outcome
habuit, tametsi diutius sui magnitudine traheretur. Post
had although longer of-itself by-the-greatness it-was-dragged-out after
quod et Saxonicum suae prolixitati convenientem finem
which also the-Saxon for-its-own prolixity suitable an-end
accepit. Boemanicum quoque et Linonicum, quae postea
received the-Bohemian also and the-Linonian which afterward
exorta sunt, diu durare non potuerunt. Quorum utrumque
arisen were long to-last not could of-which each
ductu Karoli iunioris celeri fine conpletum est.
under-the-leadership of-Charles the-younger with-a-swift end completed was

XIV · THE DANES

Charles's last war is against the Northmen called Danes, first pirates, then raiders of the coasts of Gaul and Germany with larger fleets. Their king Godfred, puffed up with vain hope, claims Frisia and Saxony, has made the Obodrites his tributaries, and boasts that he will soon come to Aachen with a great army. He might have tried it, but one of his own retainers murders him, ending his life and his war together.

Ultimum contra Nordmannos, qui Dani vocantur, primo
the-last against the-Northmen who Danes are-called at-first
pyraticam exercentes, deinde maiori classe litora Galliae
piracy practicing then with-a-greater fleet the-shores of-Gaul

atque Germaniae vastantes, bellum susceptum est. Quorum
and of-Germany laying-waste war undertaken was of-whom
rex Godofridus adeo vana spe inflatus erat, ut sibi
the-king Godfred so with-vain hope puffed-up was that to-himself
totius Germaniae promitteret potestatem. Frisiam quoque
of-all Germany he-promised the-power Frisia also
atque Saxoniam haud aliter atque suas provincias
and Saxony by-no-means otherwise than his-own provinces
aestimabat. Iam Abodritos, vicinos suos, in suam ditionem
he-reckoned already the-Obodrites neighbors his-own into his-own dominion
redegerat, iam eos sibi vectigales fecerat. Iactabat etiam
he-had-reduced already them to-himself tributaries he-had-made he-boasted also
se brevi Aquasgrani, ubi regis comitatus erat, cum
himself shortly to-Aachen where of-the-king the-retinue was with
maximis copiis adventurum. Nec dictis eius, quamvis
the-greatest forces about-to-come nor to-the-sayings of-him although
vanissimis, omnino fides abnuebatur, quin potius putaretur
most-vain entirely belief was-refused nay rather it-was-thought
tale aliquid inchoaturus, nisi festinata fuisset morte
such something about-to-begin unless by-hastened he-had-been death
praeventus. Nam a proprio satellite interfectus et suae
forestalled for by his-own attendant killed both of-his-own
vitae et belli a se inchoati finem acceleravit.
life and of-the-war by himself begun the-end he-hastened

XV · THE EXTENT OF THE KINGDOM

In forty-seven years of war Charles nearly doubles the kingdom he inherited, which held only part of Gaul and part of Germany. He adds Aquitaine and Gascony, the Pyrenees to the Ebro, all Italy from Aosta to lower Calabria, Saxony, both Pannonias, Dacia, Istria, Liburnia, and Dalmatia (except the coastal cities he leaves to the emperor at Constantinople), and makes tributary the barbarous peoples between the Rhine and the Vistula, chief among them the Welatabi, Sorbs, Obodrites, and Bohemians.

Haec sunt bella, quae rex potentissimus per annos XLVII
these are the-wars which the-king most-powerful through years forty-seven
— tot enim annis regnaverat — in diversis terrarum
so-many for years he-had-reigned in diverse of-the-lands
partibus summa prudentia atque felicitate gessit. Quibus
parts with-the-highest prudence and good-fortune waged by-which
regnum Francorum, quod post patrem Pippinum magnum
the-kingdom of-the-Franks which after father Pippin great
quidem et forte susceperat, ita nobiliter ampliavit, ut poene
indeed and strong he-had-received so nobly he-enlarged that almost
duplum illi adiecerit. Nam cum prius non amplius quam ea
double to-it he-added for when before not more than that
pars Galliae, quae inter Rhenum et Ligerem oceanumque
part of-Gaul which between the-Rhine and the-Loire and-the-ocean
ac mare Balearicum iacet, et pars Germaniae, quae inter
and the-sea Balearic lies and the-part of-Germany which between
Saxoniam et Danubium Rhenumque ac Salam fluvium, qui
Saxony and the-Danube and-the-Rhine and the-Saale river which
Thuringos et Sorabos dividit, posita a Francis qui Orientales
the-Thuringians and the-Sorbs divides situated by the-Franks who Eastern
dicuntur incolitur, et praeter haec Alamanni atque Baioarii
are-called is-inhabited and besides these the-Alamanni and the-Bavarians

ad regni Francorum potestatem pertinerent: ipse per
to of-the-kingdom of-the-Franks the-power belonged he-himself through
bella memorata primo Aquitaniam et Wasconiam totumque
the-wars mentioned first Aquitaine and Gascony and-the-whole
Pyrinei montis iugum et usque ad Hiberum amnem, qui
of-the-Pyrenees mountain ridge and all-the-way to the-Ebro river which
apud Navarros ortus et fertilissimos Hispaniae agros secans
among the-Navarrese having-arisen and the-most-fertile of-Spain fields cutting
sub Dertosae civitatis moenia Balearico mari miscetur; deinde
under of-Tortosa city the-walls with-the-Balearic sea is-mingled then
Italiam totam, quae ab Augusta Praetoria usque in Calabriam
Italy whole which from Augusta Praetoria up-to into Calabria
inferiorem, in qua Graecorum ac Beneventanorum constat esse
lower in which of-the-Greeks and of-the-Beneventans it-is-agreed to-be
confinia, decies centum et eo amplius passuum milibus
the-borders ten-times a-hundred and than-that more of-paces by-thousands
longitudine porrigitur; tum Saxoniam, quae quidem Germaniae
in-length stretches then Saxony which indeed of-Germany
pars non modica est et eius quae a Francis incolitur duplum
a-part not small is and of-that which by the-Franks is-inhabited double
in lato habere putatur, cum ei longitudine possit esse
in breadth to-have is-thought though to-it in-length it-may to-be
consimilis; post quam utramque Pannoniam et adpositam in
very-similar after which both Pannonias and lying-beside on
altera Danubii ripa Daciam, Histriam quoque et Liburniam
the-other of-the-Danube bank Dacia Istria also and Liburnia
atque Dalmaciam, exceptis maritimis civitatibus, quas ob
and Dalmatia excepted the-maritime cities which for
amicitiam et iunctum cum eo foedus Constantinopolitanum
friendship and joined with him treaty the-Constantinopolitan
imperatorem habere permisit; deinde omnes barbaras ac feras
emperor to-hold he-permitted then all the-barbarous and wild

nationes, quae inter Rhenum ac Visulam fluvios oceanumque
nations which between the-Rhine and the-Vistula rivers and-the-ocean
ac Danubium positae, lingua quidem poene similes, moribus
and the-Danube situated in-language indeed almost similar in-customs
vero atque habitu valde dissimiles, Germaniam incolunt, ita
but and in-dress very dissimilar Germany inhabit so
perdomuit, ut eas tributarias efficeret; inter quas fere
thoroughly-subdued that them tributary he-made among whom almost
praecipuae sunt Welatabi, Sorabi, Abodriti, Boemani —
chief are the-Welatabi the-Sorbs the-Obodrites the-Bohemians
cum his namque bello conflixit—; ceteras, quarum multo
with these for in-war he-clashed the-others of-which much
maior est numerus, in deditionem suscepit.
greater is the-number into surrender he-received

XVI · FRIENDSHIPS WITH KINGS

Charles wins other rulers' friendship. Alfonso of Galicia calls himself his man, and the Irish kings his subjects. Harun, the Persian king, who once sent his only elephant, places the Holy Sepulcher under his authority and sends rich gifts. The emperors at Constantinople seek his friendship, though suspicious of his title. Hence the Greek proverb: have the Frank for a friend, not for a neighbor.

Auxit etiam gloriam regni sui quibusdam regibus ac
he-increased also the-glory of-kingdom his-own certain kings and
gentibus per amicitiam sibi conciliatis. Adeo namque
peoples through friendship to-himself won-over so for
Hadefonsum Galleciae atque Asturicae regem sibi societate
Alfonso of-Galicia and of-Asturias the-king to-himself by-alliance
devinxit, ut is, cum ad eum vel litteras vel legatos
he-bound that he when to him either letters or envoys

mitteret, non aliter se apud illum quam proprium suum
he-sent not otherwise himself to him than own-man his
appellari iuberet. Scottorum quoque reges sic habuit ad
to-be-called ordered of-the-Irish also the-kings so he-had to
suam voluntatem per munificentiam inclinatos, ut eum
his-own will through munificence inclined that him
numquam aliter nisi dominum seque subditos et servos
never otherwise except lord and-themselves subjects and servants
eius pronuntiarent. Extant epistolae ab eis ad illum missae,
of-him they-declared there-exist letters by them to him sent
quibus huiusmodi affectus eorum erga illum indicatur. Cum
in-which of-this-kind the-affection of-them toward him is-shown with
Aaron rege Persarum, qui excepta India totum poene tenebat
Harun the-king of-the-Persians who excepted India the-whole almost held
orientem, talem habuit in amicitia concordiam, ut is gratiam
the-east such he-had in friendship concord that he the-favor
eius omnium, qui in toto orbe terrarum erant, regum ac
of-him of-all who in the-whole circle of-the-lands were of-kings and
principum amicitiae praeponeret solumque illum honore
of-princes to-the-friendship put-before and-alone him with-honor
ac munificentia sibi colendum iudicaret. Ac proinde, cum
and munificence by-himself to-be-courted judged and accordingly when
legati eius, quos cum donariis ad sacratissimum Domini
the-envoys of-him whom with offerings to the-most-sacred of-the-Lord
ac salvatoris nostri sepulchrum locumque resurrectionis
and savior our sepulcher and-the-place of-the-resurrection
miserat, ad eum venissent et ei domini sui voluntatem
he-had-sent to him had-come and to-him of-the-lord their-own the-will
indicassent, non solum quae petebantur fieri permisit,
had-indicated not only what-things were-asked to-be-done he-permitted
sed etiam sacrum illum et salutarem locum, ut illius
but even holy that and saving place that of-him

potestati adscriberetur, concessit; et revertentibus legatis suos
to-the-power it-should-be-assigned he-granted and to-the-returning envoys his-own
adiungens inter vestes et aromata et ceteras orientalium
joining among robes and spices and the-other of-the-eastern
terrarum opes ingentia illi dona direxit, cum ei ante
lands riches huge to-him gifts he-dispatched since to-him before
paucos annos eum, quem tunc solum habebat, roganti
few years him whom then alone he-had asking
mitteret elefantum. Imperatores etiam Constantinopolitani,
he-sent the-elephant the-emperors also Constantinopolitan
Niciforus, Michahel et Leo, ultro amicitiam et
Nicephorus Michael and Leo of-their-own-accord the-friendship and
societatem eius expetentes conplures ad eum misere legatos.
alliance of-him seeking very-many to him sent envoys
Cum quibus tamen propter susceptum a se imperatoris
with whom yet on-account-of assumed by himself of-emperor
nomen et ob hoc [eis], quasi qui imperium eis
the-name and for this to-them as-if one-who the-empire from-them
eripere vellet, valde suspectum foedus firmissimum statuit,
to-snatch wished very suspected a-treaty most-firm he-established
ut nulla inter partes cuiuslibet scandali remaneret occasio.
that no between the-parties of-any-sort of-offense might-remain occasion
Erat enim semper Romanis et Grecis Francorum suspecta
it-was for always to-the-Romans and Greeks of-the-Franks suspected
potentia. Unde et illud Grecum extat proverbium: TON
the-power whence also that Greek exists proverb the
ΦΡΑΝΚΟΝ ΦΙΛΟΝ ΕΧΙΣ, ΓΙΤΟΝΑ ΟΥΚ ΕΧΙΣ.
Frank as-friend you-have as-neighbor not you-have

XVII · HIS BUILDINGS

Amid his wars Charles begins many works: the basilica of the Mother of God at Aachen, a wooden bridge over the Rhine at Mainz, which burns the year before his death, and palaces at Ingelheim and Nijmegen. He has decayed churches restored, builds fleets against the Northmen, and guards the ports and river mouths against them and the southern coasts against the Moors.

Qui cum tantus in ampliando regno et subigendis exteris
who although so-great in enlarging the-kingdom and in-subduing foreign
nationibus existeret et in eiusmodi occupationibus assidue
nations he-stood-out and in of-this-kind occupations constantly
versaretur, opera tamen plurima ad regni decorem et
was-engaged works yet very-many to of-the-kingdom the-adornment and
commoditatem pertinentia diversis in locis inchoavit, quaedam
convenience pertaining diverse in places he-began certain-ones
etiam consummavit. Inter quae praecipua [fere] non inmerito
even he-finished among which chief almost not undeservedly
videri possunt basilica sanctae Dei genitricis Aquisgrani
to-seem can the-basilica of-the-holy of-God mother at-Aachen
opere mirabili constructa et pons apud Mogontiacum in
with-work wonderful constructed and the-bridge at Mainz on
Rheno quingentorum passuum longitudinis — nam tanta est
the-Rhine of-five-hundred paces of-length for so-great is
ibi fluminis latitudo—; qui tamen uno, antequam decederet,
there of-the-river the-breadth which yet one before he-died
anno incendio conflagravit, nec refici potuit propter
year by-fire burned-down nor to-be-rebuilt could on-account-of
festinatum illius decessum, quamquam in ea meditatione esset,
the-hastened his death although in that intention he-was
ut pro ligneo lapideum restitueret. Inchoavit et palatia
that instead-of the-wooden a-stone-one he-might-restore he-began also palaces

operis egregii, unum haud longe a Mogontiaco civitate,
of-work outstanding one not far from Mainz the-city
iuxta villam cui vocabulum est Ingilenheim, alterum
near the-estate to-which the-name is Ingelheim the-other
Noviomagi super Vahalem fluvium, qui Batavorum insulam a
at-Nijmegen on the-Waal river which of-the-Batavians the-island on
parte meridiana praeterfluit. Praecipue tamen aedes sacras
the-side southern flows-past chiefly yet the-buildings sacred
ubicumque in toto regno suo vetustate conlapsas conperit,
wherever in the-whole kingdom his-own by-age collapsed he-found
pontificibus et patribus, ad quorum curam pertinebant, ut
to-the-bishops and fathers to whose care they-belonged that
restaurarentur, imperavit, adhibens curam per legatos, ut
they-should-be-restored he-ordered applying care through envoys that
imperata perficerent. Molitus est et classem contra
the-things-ordered they-should-complete built has also a-fleet against
bellum Nordmannicum, aedificatis ad hoc navibus iuxta
the-war Northman built for this ships near
flumina, quae et de Gallia et de Germania septentrionalem
the-rivers which both from Gaul and from Germany into-the-northern
influunt oceanum. Et quia Nordmanni Gallicum litus atque
flow ocean and because the-Northmen the-Gallic shore and
Germanicum assidua infestatione vastabant, per omnes
German with-constant harassment were-laying-waste through all
portus et ostia fluminum, qua naves recipi posse
the-ports and mouths of-rivers where ships to-be-received to-be-able
videbantur, stationibus et excubiis dispositis, ne qua
seemed with-stations and watches placed lest anywhere
hostis exire potuisset, tali munitione prohibuit. Fecit
the-enemy to-go-out could by-such fortification he-prevented he-did
idem a parte meridiana in litore provinciae Narbonensis
the-same on the-side southern on the-shore of-the-province of-Narbonne

ac Septimaniae, toto etiam Italiae litore usque Romam
and of-Septimania on-the-whole also of-Italy shore up-to Rome
contra Mauros nuper pyraticam exercere adgressos; ac per
against the-Moors lately piracy to-practice having-begun and through
hoc nullo gravi damno vel a Mauris Italia vel Gallia atque
this by-no serious loss either by the-Moors Italy or Gaul and
Germania a Nordmannis diebus suis adfecta est, praeter
Germany by the-Northmen in-days his-own afflicted was except
quod Centumcellae civitas Etruriae per proditionem a
that Centumcellae a-city of-Etruria through betrayal by
Mauris capta atque vastata est, et in Frisia quaedam insulae
the-Moors taken and laid-waste was and in Frisia certain islands
Germanico litori contiguae a Nordmannis depraedatae sunt.
to-the-German shore adjoining by the-Northmen plundered were

XVIII · HIS FAMILY

Charles bears his brother's jealousy patiently. At his mother's urging he marries a daughter of Desiderius, repudiates her after a year, and marries Hildegard, by whom he has three sons and three daughters. Fastrada bears him two daughters; after her he marries Liutgard, then has concubines, by whom he has further children. His mother Bertrada lives with him in honor, quarreling only over the divorce, and he honors his sister Gisela, a nun.

Talem eum in tuendo et ampliando simulque ornando
such him in defending and enlarging and-at-the-same-time adorning
regno fuisse constat. Cuius animi dotes et
the-kingdom to-have-been it-is-agreed of-whose mind the-endowments and
summam in qualicumque et prospero et adverso eventu
the-highest in whatever both prosperous and adverse event

constantiam ceteraque ad interiorem atque domesticam
constancy and-the-other-things to the-inner and domestic
vitam pertinentia iam abhinc dicere exordiar.
life pertaining now from-here to-tell I-shall-begin
Post mortem patris cum fratre regnum partitus tanta
after the-death of-the-father with the-brother the-kingdom having-divided with-such
patientia simultates et invidiam eius tulit, ut omnibus
patience the-quarrels and envy of-him he-bore that to-all
mirum videretur, quod ne ad iracundiam quidem ab eo
wonderful it-seemed that not to anger even by him
provocari potuisset. Deinde cum matris hortatu filiam
to-be-provoked he-could-have then when of-the-mother at-the-urging the-daughter
Desiderii regis Langobardorum duxisset uxorem, incertum
of-Desiderius king of-the-Lombards he-had-married as-wife uncertain
qua de causa, post annum eam repudiavit et Hildigardam
what for cause after a-year her he-repudiated and Hildegard
de gente Suaborum praecipuae nobilitatis feminam in
from the-people of-the-Swabians of-outstanding nobility a-woman in
matrimonium accepit; de qua tres filios, Karolum videlicet,
marriage received of whom three sons Charles namely
Pippinum et Hludowicum, totidemque filias, Hruodtrudem
Pippin and Louis and-as-many daughters Hrotrud
et Berhtam et Gislam, genuit. Habuit et alias tres filias,
and Bertha and Gisela he-begot he-had also other three daughters
Theoderadam et Hiltrudem et Hruodhaidem, duas de
Theoderada and Hiltrud and Rothaid two of
Fastrada uxore, quae de Orientalium Francorum, Germanorum
Fastrada the-wife who from of-the-Eastern Franks of-the-Germans
videlicet, gente erat, tertiam de concubina quadam, cuius
namely the-people was the-third of a-concubine a-certain whose
nomen modo memoriae non occurrit. Defuncta Fastrada
name now to-memory not occurs having-died Fastrada

Liutgardam Alamannam duxit, de qua nihil liberorum
Liutgard the-Alamannian he-married of whom nothing of-children
tulit. Post cuius mortem tres habuit concubinas, Gersuindam
he-had after whose death three he-had concubines Gersuinda
Saxonici generis, de qua ei filia nomine Adaltrud nata
of-Saxon stock of whom to-him a-daughter by-name Adaltrud born
est, et Reginam, quae ei Drogonem et Hugum genuit,
was and Regina who to-him Drogo and Hugh bore
et Adallindem, ex qua Theodericum procreavit. Mater
and Adallinda from whom Theoderic he-begot the-mother
quoque eius Berhtrada in magno apud eum honore consenuit.
also of-him Bertrada in great with him honor grew-old
Colebat enim eam cum summa reverentia, ita ut nulla
he-honored for her with the-highest reverence so that no
umquam invicem sit exorta discordia, praeter in divortio
ever between-them has arisen discord except in the-divorce
filiae Desiderii regis, quam illa suadente acceperat.
of-the-daughter of-Desiderius the-king whom she persuading he-had-taken
Decessit tandem post mortem Hildigardae, cum iam tres
she-died at-last after the-death of-Hildegard when already three
nepotes suos totidemque neptes in filii domo vidisset.
grandsons her-own and-as-many granddaughters in of-the-son the-house she-had-seen
Quam ille in eadem basilica, qua pater situs est, apud
whom he in the-same basilica in-which the-father laid is at
Sanctum Dionisium, magno cum honore fecit humari.
Saint Denis great with honor caused to-be-buried
Erat ei unica soror nomine Gisla, a puellaribus annis
there-was to-him an-only sister by-name Gisela from girlish years
religiosae conversationi mancipata, quam similiter ut matrem
to-the-religious manner-of-life given-over whom similarly as the-mother

magna coluit pietate. Quae etiam paucis ante obitum illius
with-great he-honored devotion who also few before the-death of-him
annis in eo, quo conversata est, monasterio decessit.
years in that in-which lived has monastery died

XIX · HIS CHILDREN

Charles has his children taught the liberal arts, his sons riding and hunting, his daughters wool-work. He weeps for the two sons and the daughter he loses, and for Pope Hadrian. He never dines or travels without his children. He will give none of his daughters in marriage, saying he cannot bear to be without them, and so suffers misfortune, though he behaves as if no rumor had arisen.

Liberos suos ita censuit instituendos, ut tam filii quam
children his-own so he-judged to-be-instructed that as-much sons as
filiae primo liberalibus studiis, quibus et ipse operam
daughters first in-the-liberal studies to-which also he-himself effort
dabat, erudirentur. Tum filios, cum primum aetas patiebatur,
gave should-be-educated then the-sons when first age allowed
more Francorum equitare, armis ac venatibus exerceri
in-the-manner of-the-Franks to-ride with-arms and in-hunting to-be-exercised
fecit, filias vero lanificio adsuescere coloque ac
he-caused the-daughters but to-wool-working to-grow-used and-to-distaff and
fuso, ne per otium torperent, operam impendere atque
spindle lest through idleness they-grow-sluggish effort to-apply and
ad omnem honestatem erudiri iussit.
to all honorable-conduct to-be-educated he-ordered
Ex his omnibus duos tantum filios et unam filiam, priusquam
from these all two only sons and one daughter before
moreretur, amisit, Karolum, qui natu maior erat, et
he-died he-lost Charles who by-birth elder was and

Pippinum, quem regem Italiae praefecerat, et Hruodtrudem,
Pippin whom as-king over-Italy he-had-set and Hrotrud
quae filiarum eius primogenita et a Constantino Grecorum
who of-the-daughters of-him the-first-born and by Constantine of-the-Greeks
imperatore desponsata erat. Quorum Pippinus unum filium
emperor betrothed was of-whom Pippin one son
suum Bernhardum, filias autem quinque, Adalhaidem, Atulam,
his-own Bernard daughters moreover five Adelaide Atula
Gundradam, Berhthaidem ac Theoderadam, superstites reliquit.
Gundrada Berthaid and Theoderada surviving left
In quibus rex pietatis suae praecipuum documentum
in whom the-king of-devotion his-own a-special proof
ostendit, cum filio defuncto nepotem patri succedere
showed when the-son having-died the-grandson to-the-father to-succeed
et neptes inter filias suas educari fecisset.
and the-granddaughters among daughters his-own to-be-brought-up he-had-caused
Mortes filiorum ac filiae pro magnanimitate, qua
the-deaths of-the-sons and of-the-daughter for the-magnanimity in-which
excellebat, minus patienter tulit, pietate videlicet, qua non
he-excelled less patiently he-bore by-devotion namely in-which not
minus insignis erat, conpulsus ad lacrimas. Nuntiato etiam
less distinguished he-was compelled to tears announced also
sibi Hadriani Romani pontificis obitu, quem in amicis
to-himself of-Hadrian the-Roman pontiff the-death whom among friends
praecipuum habebat, sic flevit, acsi fratrem aut carissimum
chief he-held so he-wept as-if a-brother or a-most-dear
filium amisisset. Erat enim in amicitiis optime temperatus,
son he-had-lost he-was for in friendships best tempered
ut eas et facile admitteret et constantissime retineret,
so-that them both easily he-admitted and most-constantly retained
colebatque sanctissime quoscumque hac adfinitate sibi
and-he-cherished most-devoutly whomever by-this tie to-himself

coniunxerat. Filiorum ac filiarum tantam in educando
he-had-joined of-the-sons and of-the-daughters such in educating
curam habuit, ut numquam domi positus sine ipsis caenaret,
care he-had that never at-home placed without them he-dined
numquam iter sine illis faceret. Adequitabant ei filii,
never a-journey without them he-made rode-beside him the-sons
filiae vero pone sequebantur, quarum agmen extremum
the-daughters but behind followed of-whom the-column the-rearmost
ex satellitum numero ad hoc ordinati tuebantur. Quae
from of-the-guards the-number for this appointed protected who
cum pulcherrimae essent et ab eo plurimum diligerentur,
though most-beautiful they-were and by him very-much were-loved
mirum dictu, quod nullam earum cuiquam aut suorum aut
wonderful to-say that none of-them to-anyone either of-his-own or
exterorum nuptum dare voluit, sed omnes secum usque
of-foreigners in-marriage to-give he-wished but all with-himself all-the-way
ad obitum suum in domo sua retinuit, dicens se earum
to the-death his-own in house his-own he-kept saying himself of-them
contubernio carere non posse. Ac propter hoc, licet
company to-be-without not to-be-able and on-account-of this although
alias felix, adversae fortunae malignitatem expertus est.
otherwise fortunate of-adverse fortune the-malignity experienced has
Quod tamen ita dissimulavit, acsi de eis nulla umquam
which yet so he-dissembled as-if about them no ever
alicuius probri suspicio exorta vel fama dispersa fuisset.
of-any disgrace suspicion arisen or report spread had-been

XX · THE CONSPIRACIES

Pippin, Charles's son by a concubine, handsome but hunchbacked, conspires with some Frankish nobles while his father is wintering in Bavaria; when the plot is detected he is shorn and allowed the monastic life at Prüm. An earlier conspiracy in Germany ended with its leaders blinded or exiled, and only three killed, who resisted arrest. Queen Fastrada's cruelty is believed to have caused both. Otherwise Charles lives so beloved that no one ever charges him with unjust cruelty.

Erat ei filius nomine Pippinus ex concubina editus,
there-was to-him a-son by-name Pippin from a-concubine born
cuius inter ceteros mentionem facere distuli, facie quidem
of-whom among the-others mention to-make I-have-postponed in-face indeed
pulcher, sed gibbo deformis. Is, cum pater bello contra
handsome but by-a-hump deformed he when the-father the-war against
Hunos suscepto in Baioaria hiemaret, aegritudine simulata,
the-Huns undertaken in Bavaria was-wintering with-sickness feigned
cum quibusdam e primoribus Francorum, qui eum vana
with certain-men from the-chief-men of-the-Franks who him with-the-vain
regni promissione inlexerant, adversus patrem coniuravit.
of-the-kingdom promise had-enticed against the-father conspired
Quem post fraudem detectam et damnationem coniuratorum
whom after the-fraud detected and the-condemnation of-the-conspirators
detonsum in coenobio Prumia religiosae vitae iamque volentem
shorn in the-monastery of-Prüm to-the-religious life and-now wishing
vacare permisit. Facta est et alia prius contra eum in
to-devote-himself he-permitted made was also another earlier against him in
Germania valida coniuratio. Cuius auctores partim luminibus
Germany powerful conspiracy whose authors partly of-their-eyes
orbati, partim membris incolomes, omnes tamen exilio deportati
deprived partly in-limbs unharmed all yet in-exile deported
sunt; neque ullus ex eis est interfectus nisi tres tantum; qui
were nor any of them was killed except three only who

cum se, ne conprehenderentur, strictis gladiis defenderent,
when themselves lest they-should-be-seized with-drawn swords they-were-defending
aliquos etiam occidissent, quia aliter coerceri non poterant,
some even had-killed because otherwise to-be-restrained not they-could
interempti sunt. Harum tamen coniurationum Fastradae reginae
slain were of-these yet conspiracies of-Fastrada the-queen
crudelitas causa et origo extitisse creditur. Et idcirco in
the-cruelty the-cause and origin to-have-been is-believed and for-that-reason in
ambabus contra regem conspiratum est, quia uxoris crudelitati
both against the-king conspired it-was because of-the-wife to-the-cruelty
consentiens a suae naturae benignitate ac solita
consenting from of-his-own nature the-kindness and accustomed
mansuetudine inmaniter exorbitasse videbatur. Ceterum per
gentleness monstrously to-have-swerved he-seemed for-the-rest through
omne vitae suae tempus ita cum summo omnium amore atque
all of-life his-own the-time so with the-highest of-all love and
favore et domi et foris conversatus est, ut numquam ei
favor both at-home and abroad lived he-has that never to-him
vel minima iniustae crudelitatis nota a quoquam fuisset obiecta.
even the-least of-unjust cruelty mark by anyone had-been charged

XXI · FOREIGNERS

Charles loves foreigners and takes great care to receive them, so that their numbers burden both the palace and the kingdom. He does not mind the weight, for the praise of his liberality and his good name repay the cost.

Amabat peregrinos et in eis suscipiendis magnam habebat
he-loved foreigners and in them receiving great he-had
curam, adeo ut eorum multitudo non solum palatio,
care so that their multitude not only to-the-palace

verum etiam regno non inmerito videretur onerosa.
but also to-the-kingdom not undeservedly seemed burdensome
Ipse tamen prae magnitudine animi huiuscemodi
he-himself yet because-of the-greatness of-mind of-this-kind
pondere minime gravabatur, cum etiam ingentia incommoda
by-the-weight by-no-means was-burdened since even huge inconveniences
laude liberalitatis ac bonae famae mercede conpensaret.
with-the-praise of-liberality and of-good repute by-the-reward he-compensated

XXII · HIS APPEARANCE

Charles is big and tall, seven of his own feet, with a round head, big lively eyes, a long nose, white hair, and a glad face; his thick neck and belly are hidden by his proportions. His voice is clear but unsuited to his body. In his last years he has fevers, limps, and spurns doctors. He loves riding, hunting, and swimming in the hot springs at Aachen.

Corpore fuit amplo atque robusto, statura eminenti, quae
in-body he-was large and robust in-stature towering which
tamen iustam non excederet — nam septem suorum
yet the-just-measure not exceeded for seven of-his-own
pedum proceritatem eius constat habuisse mensuram—,
feet the-height of-him it-is-agreed to-have-had the-measure
apice capitis rotundo, oculis praegrandibus ac vegetis,
with-the-top of-the-head round with-eyes very-large and lively
naso paululum mediocritatem excedenti, canitie pulchra,
with-nose a-little the-middle-size exceeding with-gray-hair handsome
facie laeta et hilari. Unde formae auctoritas ac dignitas
with-face glad and cheerful whence of-form authority and dignity
tam stanti quam sedenti plurima adquirebatur;
as-much to-him-standing as to-him-sitting very-much was-acquired

quamquam cervix obesa et brevior venterque proiectior
although the-neck fat and rather-short and-the-belly rather-protruding
videretur, tamen haec ceterorum membrorum celabat aequalitas.
seemed yet these of-the-other limbs concealed the-proportion
Incessu firmo totaque corporis habitudine virili; voce
in-gait firm and-in-the-whole of-the-body bearing manly in-voice
clara quidem, sed quae minus corporis formae conveniret.
clear indeed but which less of-the-body to-the-form was-suited
Valitudine prospera, praeter quod, antequam decederet, per
in-health prosperous except that before he-died through
quatuor annos crebro febribus corripiebatur, ad extremum
four years frequently by-fevers he-was-seized at the-last
etiam uno pede claudicaret. Et tunc quidem plura suo
even in-one foot he-limped and then indeed more-things by-his-own
arbitratu quam medicorum consilio faciebat, quos poene
judgment than of-the-physicians by-the-counsel he-did whom almost
exosos habebat, quod ei in cibis assa, quibus assuetus
hated he-held because to-him in foods the-roasts to-which accustomed
erat, dimittere et elixis adsuescere suadebant.
he-was to-give-up and to-boiled-things to-grow-used they-urged
Exercebatur assidue equitando ac venando; quod illi
he-was-exercised constantly in-riding and hunting which to-him
gentilicium erat, quia vix ulla in terris natio invenitur,
native was because scarcely any on earth nation is-found
quae in hac arte Francis possit aequari. Delectabatur
which in this art to-the-Franks can to-be-equaled he-was-delighted
etiam vaporibus aquarum naturaliter calentium, frequenti
also by-the-steam of-waters naturally hot with-frequent
natatu corpus exercens; cuius adeo peritus fuit, ut nullus
swimming the-body exercising of-which so skilled he-was that no-one
ei iuste valeat anteferri. Ob hoc etiam Aquisgrani
to-him justly may to-be-preferred for this also at-Aachen

regiam exstruxit ibique extremis vitae annis usque ad
a-palace he-built and-there in-the-last of-life years all-the-way to
obitum perpetim habitavit. Et non solum filios ad balneum,
the-death continually lived and not only the-sons to the-bath
verum optimates et amicos, aliquando etiam satellitum et
but the-nobles and friends sometimes even of-the-guards and
custodum corporis turbam invitavit, ita ut nonnumquam
of-the-keepers of-the-body the-crowd he-invited so that sometimes
centum vel eo amplius homines una lavarentur.
a-hundred or than-that more men together bathed

XXIII · HIS DRESS

Charles wears Frankish dress: a linen shirt and drawers, a silk-edged tunic, leggings, an otter or marten jerkin in winter, a blue cloak, and always a sword. He refuses foreign clothes, except at Rome, when Hadrian and then Leo persuade him to wear the long tunic and Roman shoes. On festivals he wears cloth of gold and a diadem; on other days his dress is a commoner's.

Vestitu patrio, id est Francico, utebatur. Ad corpus camisam
dress ancestral that is Frankish he-used next-to the-body a-shirt
lineam, et feminalibus lineis induebatur, deinde tunicam, quae
linen and with-drawers linen he-was-clothed then a-tunic which
limbo serico ambiebatur, et tibialia; tum fasciolis crura et
with-a-border silk was-edged and leggings then with-bands the-shins and
pedes calciamentis constringebat et ex pellibus lutrinis vel
the-feet with-shoes he-bound and from skins of-otter or
murinis thorace confecto umeros ac pectus hieme muniebat,
of-marten with-a-jerkin made the-shoulders and chest in-winter he-protected
sago veneto amictus et gladio semper accinctus, cuius
with-a-cloak blue wrapped and with-a-sword always girded whose

capulus ac balteus aut aureus aut argenteus erat. Aliquoties
hilt and belt either gold or silver was sometimes
et gemmato ense utebatur, quod tamen nonnisi in praecipuis
also a-jeweled sword he-used which yet only on chief
festivitatibus vel si quando exterarum gentium legati venissent.
festivals or if ever of-foreign peoples envoys had-come
Peregrina vero indumenta, quamvis pulcherrima, respuebat
foreign but garments although most-beautiful he-rejected
nec umquam eis indui patiebatur, excepto quod Romae
nor ever in-them to-be-clothed allowed except that at-Rome
semel Hadriano pontifice petente et iterum Leone successore
once Hadrian the-pontiff asking and again Leo the-successor
eius supplicante longa tunica et clamide amictus, calceis
of-him entreating with-a-long tunic and cloak wrapped with-shoes
quoque Romano more formatis induebatur. In festivitatibus
also in-Roman fashion shaped he-was-clothed on festivals
veste auro texta et calciamentis gemmatis et fibula
in-a-garment with-gold woven and with-shoes jeweled and with-a-brooch
aurea sagum adstringente, diademate quoque ex auro et
golden the-cloak fastening with-a-diadem also from gold and
gemmis ornatus incedebat. Aliis autem diebus habitus eius
jewels adorned he-went-forth on-other but days the-dress of-him
parum a communi ac plebeio abhorrebat.
little from the-common and plebeian differed

Charles is temperate in food and still more in drink, though he complains that fasting harms him. His dinner has four courses besides the roast he loves, and he listens meanwhile to histories or to Augustine's City of God. He rarely drinks more than three times at a meal, rests after the midday meal in summer, and hears lawsuits while being dressed.

In cibo et potu temperans, sed in potu temperantior, quippe
in food and drink temperate but in drink more-temperate since
qui ebrietatem in qualicumque homine, nedum in se
who drunkenness in any man much-less in himself
ac suis, plurimum abhominabatur. Cibo enim non adeo
and his-own very-much abhorred from-food for not so
abstinere poterat, ut saepe quereretur noxia corpori suo
to-abstain he-could that often he-complained harmful to-body his-own
esse ieiunia. Convivabatur rarissime, et hoc praecipuis tantum
to-be fasts he-feasted very-rarely and this on-chief only
festivitatibus, tunc tamen cum magno hominum numero.
festivals then yet with great of-men number
Caena cotidiana quaternis tantum ferculis praebebatur, praeter
the-dinner daily with-four only courses was-served besides
assam, quam venatores veribus inferre solebant, qua ille
the-roast which the-hunters on-spits to-bring-in were-accustomed which he
libentius quam ullo alio cibo vescebatur. Inter caenandum
more-gladly than any other food ate during dining
aut aliquod acroama aut lectorem audiebat. Legebantur
either some entertainment or a-reader he-heard there-were-read
ei historiae et antiquorum res gestae. Delectabatur et
to-him histories and of-the-ancients the-things done he-was-delighted also
libris sancti Augustini, praecipueque his qui de civitate
by-the-books of-saint Augustine and-especially by-these which on the-city

Dei praetitulati sunt. Vini et omnis potus adeo parcus in
of-God titled are of-wine and of-all drink so sparing in
bibendo erat, ut super caenam raro plus quam ter biberet.
drinking he-was that over dinner rarely more than three-times he-drank
Aestate post cibum meridianum pomorum aliquid sumens ac
in-summer after the-food midday of-fruits something taking and
semel bibens, depositis vestibus et calciamentis, velut noctu
once drinking taken-off the-clothes and shoes as at-night
solitus erat, duabus aut tribus horis quiescebat. Noctibus
accustomed he-was for-two or three hours he-rested at-night
sic dormiebat, ut somnum quater aut quinquies non solum
so he-slept that the-sleep four-times or five-times not only
expergescendo, sed etiam desurgendo interrumperet. Cum
by-waking but even by-getting-up he-interrupted when
calciaretur et amiciretur, non tantum amicos admittebat,
he-was-being-shod and dressed not only friends he-admitted
verum etiam, si comes palatii litem aliquam esse diceret,
but also if the-count of-the-palace lawsuit some to-be said
quae sine eius iussu definiri non posset, statim litigantes
which without his order to-be-settled not could at-once the-litigants
introducere iussit et, velut pro tribunali sederet, lite
to-bring-in he-ordered and as-if before the-tribunal he-were-sitting the-suit
cognita sententiam dixit; nec hoc tantum eo tempore,
heard sentence he-pronounced nor this only at-that time
sed etiam quicquid ea die cuiuslibet officii agendum aut
but even whatever on-that day of-any office to-be-done or
cuiquam ministrorum iniungendum erat expediebat.
to-any of-the-ministers to-be-enjoined was he-dispatched

XXV · HIS LEARNING

Charles speaks fluently, even talkatively. He prays in Latin as readily as in his own language and understands Greek better than he speaks it. He learns grammar from Peter of Pisa and the other arts from Albinus, called Alcuin, a Saxon from Britain, spending most effort on astronomy and on computing the courses of the stars. He tries to write, keeping tablets under his pillow, but begins too late and makes little progress.

Erat eloquentia copiosus et exuberans poteratque quicquid
he-was in-eloquence copious and overflowing and-he-could whatever
vellet apertissime exprimere. Nec patrio tantum sermone
he-wished most-clearly to-express nor with-ancestral only speech
contentus, etiam peregrinis linguis ediscendis operam
content even to-foreign languages to-be-learned effort
impendit. In quibus Latinam ita didicit, ut aeque
he-applied among which Latin so he-learned that equally
illa ac patria lingua orare sit solitus, Grecam vero
in-it as-in ancestral language to-pray he-was accustomed Greek but
melius intellegere quam pronuntiare poterat. Adeo quidem
better to-understand than to-pronounce he-could so indeed
facundus erat, ut etiam dicaculus appareret. Artes liberales
fluent he-was that even rather-talkative he-appeared the-arts liberal
studiosissime coluit, earumque doctores plurimum veneratus
most-zealously he-cultivated and-of-them the-teachers very-much having-revered
magnis adficiebat honoribus. In discenda grammatica Petrum
with-great he-endowed honors in learning grammar Peter
Pisanum diaconem senem audivit, in ceteris disciplinis
of-Pisa the-deacon an-old-man he-heard in the-other disciplines
Albinum cognomento Alcoinum, item diaconem, de Brittania
Albinus by-surname Alcuin likewise a-deacon from Britain
Saxonici generis hominem, virum undecumque doctissimum,
of-Saxon stock a-man a-man in-every-respect most-learned

praeceptorem habuit, apud quem et rethoricae et dialecticae,
as-teacher he-had with whom both to-rhetoric and to-dialectic
praecipue tamen astronomiae ediscendae plurimum et
especially yet to-astronomy to-be-learned very-much both
temporis et laboris inpertivit. Discebat artem conputandi
of-time and of-labor he-imparted he-learned the-art of-computing
et intentione sagaci siderum cursum curiosissime rimabatur.
and with-attention shrewd of-the-stars the-course most-curiously he-searched-out
Temptabat et scribere tabulasque et codicellos ad hoc
he-attempted also to-write and-tablets and notebooks for this
in lecto sub cervicalibus circumferre solebat, ut, cum
in bed under the-pillows to-carry-about he-was-accustomed that when
vacuum tempus esset, manum litteris effigiendis adsuesceret,
free time there-was the-hand to-letters to-be-formed he-might-accustom
sed parum successit labor praeposterus ac sero inchoatus.
but little succeeded the-labor misplaced and late begun

XXVI · HIS RELIGION

Charles practices the Christian religion devoutly. He builds the basilica at Aachen with columns and marble brought from Rome and Ravenna and adorns it with gold, silver, and bronze. He attends church morning, evening, and at night, provides sacred vessels and vestments in abundance, and reforms the reading and chanting, in which he is learned, though he sings only softly.

Religionem Christianam, qua ab infantia fuerat inbutus,
the-religion Christian with-which from infancy he-had-been imbued
sanctissime et cum summa pietate coluit, ac propter hoc
most-devoutly and with the-highest piety he-cultivated and on-account-of this
plurimae pulchritudinis basilicam Aquisgrani exstruxit auroque
of-very-great beauty a-basilica at-Aachen he-built and-with-gold

et argento et luminaribus atque ex aere solido cancellis
and silver and with-lamps and from bronze solid with-railings
et ianuis adornavit. Ad cuius structuram cum columnas et
and doors he-adorned for whose construction when columns and
marmora aliunde habere non posset, Roma atque Ravenna
marbles from-elsewhere to-have not he-could from-Rome and Ravenna
devehenda curavit. Ecclesiam et mane et vespere, item
to-be-brought he-took-care the-church both morning and evening likewise
nocturnis horis et sacrificii tempore, quoad eum valitudo
in-the-night hours and of-the-sacrifice at-the-time as-far-as him health
permiserat, inpigre frequentabat, curabatque magnopere, ut
had-permitted untiringly he-frequented and-he-took-care greatly that
omnia quae in ea gerebantur cum qua maxima fierent
all-things which in it were-done with as greatest-possible might-be-done
honestate, aedituos creberrime commonens, ne quid indecens
honor the-sacristans very-often admonishing lest anything unseemly
aut sordidum aut inferri aut in ea remanere permitterent.
or filthy either to-be-brought-in or in it to-remain they-should-allow
Sacrorum vasorum ex auro et argento vestimentorumque
of-sacred vessels from gold and silver and-of-vestments
sacerdotalium tantam in ea copiam procuravit, ut in sacrificiis
priestly such in it abundance he-provided that in sacrifices
celebrandis ne ianitoribus quidem, qui ultimi ecclesiastici
to-be-celebrated not for-the-doorkeepers even who the-last of-the-ecclesiastical
ordinis sunt, privato habitu ministrare necesse fuisset.
order are in-private dress to-minister necessary would-have-been
Legendi atque psallendi disciplinam diligentissime emendavit.
of-reading and of-chanting the-discipline most-diligently he-amended
Erat enim utriusque admodum eruditus, quamquam ipse nec
he-was for in-both very learned although he-himself neither
publice legeret nec nisi submissim et in commune cantaret.
publicly read nor except in-a-low-voice and in common sang

Charles gives alms generously, not only in his own kingdom but to the Christians of Syria, Egypt, Africa, Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Carthage, and seeks the friendship of foreign kings chiefly to relieve the Christians under their rule. He loves above all the church of Saint Peter at Rome, which he enriches with gold, silver, and jewels, and wishes Rome restored to its old authority. Yet in forty-seven years he goes there only four times.

Circa pauperes sustentandos et gratuitam liberalitatem, quam
about the-poor to-be-supported and free liberality which
Greci eleimosinam vocant, devotissimus, ut qui non in
the-Greeks alms call most-devoted as one-who not in
patria solum et in suo regno id facere curaverit,
the-homeland only and in his-own kingdom this to-do took-care
verum trans maria in Syriam et Aegyptum atque Africam,
but across the-seas into Syria and Egypt and Africa
Hierosolimis, Alexandriae atque Cartagini, ubi Christianos in
at-Jerusalem at-Alexandria and at-Carthage where the-Christians in
paupertate vivere conpererat, penuriae illorum conpatiens
poverty to-live he-had-learned with-the-poverty of-them sympathizing
pecuniam mittere solebat; ob hoc maxime transmarinorum
money to-send he-was-accustomed for this chiefly of-overseas
regum amicitias expetens, ut Christianis sub eorum dominatu
kings the-friendships seeking that to-the-Christians under their dominion
degentibus refrigerium aliquod ac relevatio proveniret.
living refreshment some and relief might-come
Colebat prae ceteris sacris et venerabilibus locis apud Romam
he-honored before the-other sacred and venerable places at Rome
ecclesiam beati Petri apostoli; in cuius donaria magna
the-church of-blessed Peter the-apostle into whose treasury a-great
vis pecuniae tam in auro quam in argento necnon et
amount of-money as-much in gold as in silver and-also also

gemmis ab illo congesta est. Multa et innumera pontificibus
in-jewels by him gathered was many and countless to-the-pontiffs
munera missa. Neque ille toto regni sui tempore
gifts sent nor he in-the-whole of-reign his-own time
quicquam duxit antiquius, quam ut urbs Roma sua
anything held more-important than that the-city Rome by-his-own
opera suoque labore vetere polleret auctoritate, et
effort and-by-his-own labor with-ancient should-be-strong authority and
ecclesia sancti Petri per illum non solum tuta ac defensa,
the-church of-saint Peter through him not only safe and defended
sed etiam suis opibus prae omnibus ecclesiis esset ornata
but even by-his-own wealth before all churches should-be adorned
atque ditata. Quam cum tanti penderet, tamen intra XLVII
and enriched which though so-much he-valued yet within forty-seven
annorum, quibus regnaverat, spatium quater tantum illo
of-years in-which he-had-reigned the-space four-times only thither
votorum solvendorum ac supplicandi causa profectus est.
of-vows to-be-fulfilled and of-supplicating for-the-sake set-out he-has

XXVIII · EMPEROR

Charles's last visit to Rome comes after the Romans have attacked Pope Leo, putting out his eyes and cutting out his tongue. Charles spends the winter restoring order and receives the titles of emperor and augustus, which he dislikes so much that he says he would not have entered the church had he known the pope's plan. He bears the eastern emperors' resentment patiently.

Ultimi adventus sui non solum hae fuere causae, verum
of-the-last coming his-own not only these were the-causes but
etiam quod Romani Leonem pontificem multis affectum
also that the-Romans Leo the-pontiff with-many afflicted

iniuriis, erutis scilicet oculis linguaque amputata, fidem
injuries torn-out namely the-eyes and-the-tongue cut-off the-protection
regis implorare conpulerunt. Idcirco Romam veniens propter
of-the-king to-implore they-compelled therefore to-Rome coming for
reparandum, qui nimis conturbatus erat, ecclesiae statum
restoring which too-much disturbed was of-the-church the-state
ibi totum hiemis tempus extraxit. Quo tempore imperatoris
there the-whole of-winter the-time he-drew-out at-which time of-emperor
et augusti nomen accepit. Quod primo in tantum aversatus
and of-augustus the-name he-received which at-first to such-a-degree loathed
est, ut adfirmaret se eo die, quamvis praecipua festivitas
he-has that he-affirmed himself on-that day although a-chief festival
esset, ecclesiam non intraturum, si pontificis consilium
it-was the-church not about-to-enter if of-the-pontiff the-plan
praescire potuisset. Invidiam tamen suscepti nominis,
to-foreknow he-had-been-able the-odium yet of-the-assumed name
Romanis imperatoribus super hoc indignantibus, magna tulit
the-Roman emperors over this being-indignant with-great he-bore
patientia. Vicitque eorum contumaciam magnanimitate,
patience and-he-overcame their defiance by-the-magnanimity
qua eis procul dubio longe praestantior erat, mittendo
in-which to-them far from-doubt far more-outstanding he-was by-sending
ad eos crebras legationes et in epistolis fratres eos appellando.
to them frequent embassies and in letters brothers them calling

XXIX · LAWS, SONGS, AND NAMES

As emperor Charles plans to reconcile and correct the Franks' two codes of law, but only adds a few incomplete chapters; he has the unwritten laws of his peoples written down. He has the ancient songs of the old kings' wars written down and begins a grammar of his native tongue. He gives the months and the twelve winds Frankish names, which Einhard lists.

Post susceptum imperiale nomen, cum adverteret multa
after assumed the-imperial name when he-noticed many-things
legibus populi sui deesse — nam Franci duas habent
from-the-laws of-people his-own to-be-lacking for the-Franks two have
leges, in plurimis locis valde diversas — cogitavit quae
laws in very-many places very different he-planned what-things
deerant addere et discrepantia unire, prava quoque ac
were-lacking to-add and the-discrepant to-unite the-wrong also and
perperam prolata corrigere, sed de his nihil aliud ab eo factum
wrongly brought-forth to-correct but of these nothing else by him done
est, nisi quod pauca capitula, et ea inperfecta, legibus addidit.
was except that few chapters and those imperfect to-the-laws he-added
Omnium tamen nationum, quae sub eius dominatu erant,
of-all yet of-the-nations which under his dominion were
iura quae scripta non erant describere ac litteris mandari
the-laws which written not were to-write-down and to-letters to-be-entrusted
fecit. Item barbara et antiquissima carmina, quibus veterum
he-caused likewise the-barbarous and most-ancient songs in-which of-the-old
regum actus et bella canebantur, scripsit memoriaeque
kings the-acts and wars were-sung he-wrote-down and-to-memory
mandavit. Inchoavit et grammaticam patrii sermonis.
entrusted he-began also a-grammar of-the-ancestral speech

Mensibus etiam iuxta propriam linguam vocabula inposuit,
on-the-months also according-to their-own language names he-imposed
cum ante id temporis apud Francos partim Latinis,
since before that of-time among the-Franks partly by-Latin
partim barbaris nominibus pronuntiarentur. Item ventos
partly by-barbarous names they-were-called likewise the-winds
duodecim propriis appellationibus insignivit, cum prius
twelve with-their-own names he-marked since before
non amplius quam vix quattuor ventorum vocabula possent
not more than scarcely four of-winds names could
inveniri. Et de mensibus quidem Ianuarium Wintarmanoth,
to-be-found and of the-months indeed January Winter-month
Februarium Hornung, Martium Lentzinmanoth, Aprilem
February Hornung March Spring-month April
Ostarmanoth, Maium Winnemanoth, Iunium Brachmanoth,
Easter-month May Pasture-month June Fallow-month
Iulium Heuuimanoth, Augustum Aranmanoth, Septembrem
July Hay-month August Harvest-month September
Witumanoth, Octobrem Windumemanoth, Novembrem
Wood-month October Vintage-month November
Herbistmanoth, Decembrem Heilagmanoth appellavit. Ventis
Autumn-month December Holy-month he-called on-the-winds
vero hoc modo nomina inposuit, ut subsolanum vocaret
but in-this way names he-imposed that the-subsolanus he-should-call
ostroniwint, eurum ostsundroni, euroaustrum sundostroni,
east-wind the-eurus east-south-wind the-euroauster south-east-wind
austrum sundroni, austroafricum sundwestroni, africum
the-auster south-wind the-austroafricus south-west-wind the-africus
westsundroni, zefyrum westroni, chorum westnordroni, circium
west-south-wind the-zephyr west-wind the-corus west-north-wind the-circius

norđwestroni, septentrionem nordroni, aquilonem norđostroni,
north-west-wind *the-septentrio* *north-wind* *the-aquilo* *north-east-wind*
vulturnum ostnorđroni
the-vulturnus *east-north-wind*

XXX · LOUIS CROWNED, AND THE DEATH OF CHARLES

Old and ill, Charles summons his son Louis, king of Aquitaine, and before the nobles makes him partner in the kingdom and heir to the imperial title, setting the diadem on his head. Then he goes hunting near Aachen. In January he takes to his bed with a fever, and pleurisy follows. On the seventh day, having received communion, he dies, in his seventy-second year.

Extremo vitae tempore, cum iam et morbo et senectute
in-the-last *of-life* *time* *when* *already* *both* *by-disease* *and* *by-old-age*
premeretur, evocatum ad se Hludowicum filium, Aquitaniae
he-was-pressed *summoned* *to* *himself* *Louis* *the-son* *of-Aquitaine*
regem, qui solus filiorum Hildigardae supererat, congregatis
the-king *who* *alone* *of-the-sons* *of-Hildegard* *survived* *gathered*
sollemniter de toto regno Francorum primoribus, cunctorum
solemnly *from* *the-whole* *kingdom* *of-the-Franks* *the-chief-men* *of-all*
consilio consortem sibi totius regni et imperialis
by-the-counsel *partner* *to-himself* *of-the-whole* *kingdom* *and* *of-the-imperial*
nominis heredem constituit, inpositoque capiti eius diademate
name *heir* *he-established* *and-placed* *on-the-head* *of-him* *the-diadem*
imperatorem et augustum iussit appellari. Susceptum est
emperor *and* *augustus* *he-ordered* *to-be-called* *received* *was*
hoc eius consilium ab omnibus qui aderant magno cum
this *his* *plan* *by* *all* *who* *were-present* *great* *with*
favore; nam divinitus ei propter regni utilitatem
favor *for* *divinely* *to-him* *for* *of-the-kingdom* *the-benefit*

videbatur inspiratum. Auxitque maiestatem eius hoc factum
it-seemed inspired and-it-increased the-majesty of-him this deed
et exteris nationibus non minimum terroris incussit. Dimisso
and on-foreign nations not the-least of-terror struck sent-off
deinde in Aquitaniam filio, ipse more solito, quamvis
then into Aquitaine the-son he-himself in-the-manner accustomed although
senectute confectus, non longe a regia Aquensi venatum
by-old-age worn-out not far from the-palace at-Aachen to-hunt
proficiscitur, exactoque in huiuscemodi negotio quod reliquum
sets-out and-spent in of-this-kind business what remaining
erat autumni, circa Kalendas Novembris Aquasgrani revertitur.
was of-autumn about the-Kalends of-November to-Aachen he-returns
Cumque ibi hiemaret, mense Ianuario febre valida
and-when there he-was-wintering in-the-month of-January by-a-fever strong
correptus decubuit. Qui statim, ut in febribus solebat,
seized he-took-to-bed who at-once as in fevers he-was-accustomed
cibi sibi abstinentiam indixit, arbitratus hac continentia
of-food on-himself abstinence imposed having-judged by-this continence
morbum posse depelli vel certe mitigari. Sed accedente
the-disease to-be-able to-be-driven-off or at-least to-be-mitigated but coming-on
ad febrem lateris dolore, quem Greci pleuresin dicunt,
to the-fever of-the-side a-pain which the-Greeks pleurisy call
illoque adhuc inediam retinente neque corpus aliter quam
and-he still fasting keeping nor the-body otherwise than
rarissimo potu sustentante, septimo, postquam decubuit,
by-very-rare drink sustaining on-the-seventh after he-took-to-bed
die, sacra communione percepta, decessit, anno aetatis
day the-holy communion received he-died in-the-year of-age
suae septuagesimo secundo et ex quo regnare coeperat
his-own seventieth second and from when to-reign he-had-begun

quadragesimo septimo, V. Kal. Februarii, hora
fortieth seventh on-the-fifth Kalends of-February at-the-hour
diei tertia.
of-the-day third

XXXI · HIS BURIAL

Charles's body is washed and borne to the church amid great mourning. With no word from him on it, all choose the basilica he built at Aachen, and he is buried there that day. A gilded arch with his image and an inscription rises over the tomb, calling him great and orthodox, who enlarged the kingdom of the Franks, and dating his death to 814.

Corpus more sollemni lotum et curatum et maximo
the-body in-the-manner solemn washed and cared-for and with-the-greatest
totius populi luctu ecclesiae inlatum atque humatum
of-the-whole people grief into-the-church carried and buried
est. Dubitatum est primo, ubi reponi deberet, eo quod
was doubted it-was at-first where to-be-laid it-ought for-this that
ipse vivus de hoc nihil praecepisset. Tandem omnium
he-himself living about this nothing had-directed at-last of-all
animis sedit nusquam eum honestius tumulari posse
in-the-minds it-settled nowhere him more-honorably to-be-entombed to-be-able
quam in ea basilica, quam ipse propter amorem Dei
than in that basilica which he-himself on-account-of the-love of-God
et domini nostri Iesu Christi et ob honorem sanctae et
and of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ and for the-honor of-the-holy and
aeternae virginis, genetricis eius, proprio sumptu in eodem
eternal virgin the-mother of-him at-his-own expense in the-same
vico construxit. In hac sepultus est eadem die, qua
town built in this buried he-was on-the-same day on-which

defunctus est, arcusque supra tumulum deauratus cum imagine
died has and-an-arch over the-tomb gilded with an-image
et titulo exstructus. Titulus ille hoc modo descriptus
and inscription built-up the-inscription that in-this manner written
est: SUB HOC CONDITORIO SITUM EST CORPUS
was under this tomb laid is the-body
KAROLI MAGNI ATQUE ORTHODOXI IMPERATORIS,
of-Charles the-Great and orthodox emperor
QUI REGNUM FRANCORUM NOBILITER AMPLIAVIT
who the-kingdom of-the-Franks nobly enlarged
ET PER ANNOS XLVII FELICITER REXIT. DECESSIT
and through years forty-seven prosperously ruled he-died
SEPTUAGENARIUS ANNO [DOMINI DCCCXIIII],
a-seventy-year-old in-the-year of-the-Lord eight-hundred-fourteen
INDICTIONE [VII], V. KAL. FEBR.
in-the-indiction seventh on-the-fifth Kalends of-February

XXXII · PORTENTS

Many portents foretell his death: eclipses for three years, the collapse of the portico at Aachen, the burning of the Rhine bridge at Mainz, and a meteor on his last campaign, after which his horse falls and throws him. The palace shakes, lightning strikes the basilica, and the word "princeps" fades from an inscription naming him. Charles ignores them all.

Adpropinquantis finis conplura fuere prodigia, ut non
of-the-approaching end very-many there-were portents so-that not
solum alii, sed etiam ipse hoc minitari sentiret. Per tres
only others but even he-himself this to-threaten felt through three
continuos vitaeque termino proximos annos et solis et
continuous and-of-life to-the-end nearest years both of-the-sun and

lunae creberrima defectio et in sole macula quaedam atri
of-the-moon a-very-frequent eclipse and on the-sun a-spot a-certain of-black
coloris septem dierum spatio visa. Porticus, quam inter
color of-seven days for-the-space seen the-portico which between
basilicam et regiam operosa mole construxerat, die
the-basilica and the-palace with-laborious mass he-had-built on-the-day
ascensionis Domini subita ruina usque ad fundamenta
of-the-ascension of-the-Lord in-sudden collapse all-the-way to the-foundations
conlapsa. Item pons Rheni apud Mogontiacum, quem
fallen likewise the-bridge of-the-Rhine at Mainz which
ipse per decem annos ingenti labore et opere mirabili
he-himself through ten years with-huge labor and with-work wonderful
de ligno ita construxit, ut perenniter durare posse videretur,
of wood so built that perpetually to-last to-be-able it-seemed
ita tribus horis fortuitu incendio conflagravit, ut, praeter
so in-three hours by-accidental fire burned-down that except
quod aqua tegebatur, ne una quidem astula ex eo remaneret.
what by-water was-covered not one even splinter of it remained
Ipse quoque, cum ultimam in Saxoniam expeditionem
he-himself also when the-last into Saxony expedition
contra Godofridum regem Danorum ageret, quadam die,
against Godfred king of-the-Danes he-was-conducting on-a-certain day
cum ante exortum solis castris egressus iter agere
when before the-rising of-the-sun from-the-camp having-gone-out journey to-make
coepisset, vidit repente delapsam caelitus cum ingenti lumine
he-had-begun he-saw suddenly fallen from-heaven with huge light
facem a dextra in sinistram per serenum aera transcurrere.
a-torch from the-right to the-left through the-clear air to-run-across
Cunctisque hoc signum, quid portenderet, ammirantibus,
and-all this sign what it-might-portend wondering
subito equus, quem sedebat, capite deorsum merso decidit
suddenly the-horse which he-sat-on with-head downward plunged fell

eumque tam graviter ad terram elisit, ut, fibula sagi
and-him so heavily to the-ground dashed that the-brooch of-the-cloak
rupta balteoque gladii dissipato, a festinantibus qui aderant
broken and-the-belt of-the-sword torn-apart by the-hastening who were-present
ministris exarmatus et sine amiculo levaretur. Iaculum etiam,
attendants disarmed and without cloak he-was-lifted the-javelin also
quod tunc forte manu tenebat, ita elapsum est, ut viginti
which then by-chance in-hand he-was-holding so slipped was that twenty
vel eo amplius pedum spatio longe iaceret. Accessit
or than-that more of-feet for-the-space far-off it-lay there-was-added
ad hoc creber Aquensis palatii tremor et in domibus, ubi
to this frequent of-the-Aachen palace trembling and in the-houses where
conversabatur, assiduus laquearіorum crepitus. Tacta etiam de
he-lived constant of-the-ceilings creaking struck also from
caelo, in qua postea sepultus est, basilica, malumque aureum,
heaven in which afterward buried he-was the-basilica and-the-apple golden
quo tecti culmen erat ornatum, ictu fulminis
with-which of-the-roof the-top was adorned by-the-stroke of-lightning
dissipatum et supra domum pontificis, quae basilicae
shattered and over the-house of-the-bishop which to-the-basilica
contigua erat, proiectum est. Erat in eadem basilica in
adjoining was thrown was there-was in the-same basilica on
margine coronae, quae inter superiores et inferiores arcus
the-edge of-the-cornice which between the-upper and lower arches
interiorem aedis partem ambiebat, epigramma sinopide
the-inner of-the-building part went-around an-inscription in-red-ochre
scriptum, continens, quis auctor esset eiusdem templi, cuius
written containing who the-author was of-the-same temple of-which
in extremo versu legebatur: KAROLUS PRINCEPS. Notatum
in the-last line was-read Charles prince noted
est a quibusdam eodem, quo decessit, anno paucis
it-was by certain-men in-the-same in-which he-died year few

ante mortem mensibus eas, quae PRINCEPS exprimebant,
before the-death months those which prince expressed
litteras ita esse deletas, ut penitus non apparerent. Sed
letters so to-have-been effaced that utterly not they-appeared but
superiora omnia sic aut dissimulavit aut sprevit, acsi nihil
the-above all so either he-dissembled or scorned as-if nothing
horum ad res suas quolibet modo pertineret.
of-these to affairs his-own in-any way pertained

XXXIII · THE WILL

Charles begins wills too late to finish them. Three years before his death he divides his treasure before witnesses, and Einhard copies the record of 811. Two thirds go as alms to the twenty-one metropolitan sees; a third serves him for life, then is divided four ways. His books are sold for the poor, two silver tables go to Rome and Ravenna, and Louis fulfills it all.

Testamenta facere instituit, quibus filias et ex
wills to-make he-undertook by-which the-daughters and from
concubinis liberos ex aliqua parte sibi heredes faceret,
concubines the-children in some part to-himself heirs he-might-make
sed tarde inchoata perfici non poterant. Divisionem
but late begun to-be-completed not they-could the-division
tamen thesaurorum et pecuniae ac vestium aliaeque
yet of-the-treasures and of-the-money and of-the-garments and-of-the-other
suppellectilis coram amicis et ministris suis annis tribus,
furnishings before friends and attendants his-own years three
antequam decederet, fecit, contestatus eos, ut post
before he-died he-made having-called-to-witness them that after
obitum suum a se facta distributio per illorum suffragium
the-death his-own by himself made the-distribution through their support

rata permaneret. Quidque ex his quae diviserat fieri
ratified might-remain and-what of these-things which he-had-divided to-be-done
vellet, breviario conprehendit; cuius ratio ac textus talis est:
he-wished in-a-summary he-comprised whose plan and text such is
IN NOMINE DOMINI DEI OMNIPOTENTIS, PATRIS
in the-name of-the-Lord God almighty of-the-Father
ET FILII ET SPIRITUS SANCTI. Descriptio atque divisio,
and of-the-Son and of-the-Spirit Holy the-description and division
quae facta est a gloriosissimo atque piissimo domno Karolo
which made was by the-most-glorious and most-pious lord Charles
imperatore augusto anno ab incarnatione domini nostri
emperor augustus in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord our
Iesu Christi DCCCºXIº, anno vero regni eius in
Jesus Christ eight-hundred-eleventh in-the-year but of-the-reign of-him in
Francia XLºIIIº et in Italia XXXºVIº, imperii autem XIº,
Francia forty-third and in Italy thirty-sixth of-the-empire moreover eleventh
indictione IIIIª, quam pia et prudenti consideratione facere
in-the-indiction fourth which with-pious and prudent consideration to-make
decrevit et Domino annuente perfecit de thesauris suis atque
he-decided and the-Lord assenting completed of treasures his-own and
pecunia, quae in illa die in camera eius inventa est. In qua
money which on that day in the-chamber of-him found was in which
illud praecipue praecavere voluit, ut non solum eleimosinarum
this especially to-provide he-wished that not only of-alms
largitio, quae sollemniter apud Christianos de possessionibus
the-bestowal which solemnly among Christians from the-possessions
eorum agitur, pro se quoque de sua pecunia ordine
of-them is-done for himself also from his-own money in-order
atque ratione perficeretur, sed etiam ut heredes sui omni
and by-plan should-be-completed but also that the-heirs his-own all
ambiguitate remota, quid ad se pertinere deberet, liquido
ambiguity removed what to themselves to-belong ought clearly

cognoscere et sine lite atque contentione sua inter
to-know and without lawsuit and contention their-own-things among
se conpetenti partitione dividere potuissent.
themselves by-fitting division to-divide might-be-able
Hac igitur intentione atque proposito omnem substantiam
with-this therefore intention and purpose all the-substance
atque suppellectilem suam, quae in auro et argento gemmisque
and furnishings his-own which in gold and silver and-jewels
et ornatu regio in illa, ut dictum est, die in camera eius
and adornment royal on that as said it-has-been day in the-chamber of-him
poterat inveniri, primo quidem trina divisione partitus est.
could to-be-found first indeed in-a-threefold division divided he-has
Deinde easdem partes subdividendo de duabus partibus XX
then the-same parts by-subdividing of two parts twenty
et unam partem fecit, tertiam integram reservavit. Et duarum
and one parts he-made the-third whole he-reserved and of-the-two
quidem partium in XX et unam partem facta divisio
indeed parts into twenty and one parts made the-division
tali ratione consistit, ut, quia in regno illius metropolitanae
in-such way consists that because in kingdom his metropolitan
civitates XX et una esse noscuntur, unaquaeque illarum
cities twenty and one to-be are-known each of-those
partium ad unamquamque metropolim per manus heredum
parts to each metropolis through the-hands of-heirs
et amicorum suorum eleimosinae nomine perveniat, et
and of-friends his-own of-alms in-the-name may-come and
archiepiscopus, qui tunc illius ecclesiae rector extiterit, partem
the-archbishop who then of-that church ruler shall-have-been the-part
quae ad suam ecclesiam data est suscipiens cum suis
which to his-own church given has-been receiving with his-own
suffraganeis partiatur, eo scilicet modo, ut pars tertia suae
suffragans may-divide in-that namely way that a-part third his-own

sit ecclesiae, duae vero partes inter suffraganeos dividantur.
may-be church's two but parts among the-suffragans may-be-divided
Harum divisionum, quae ex duabus primis partibus factae
of-these divisions which from the-two first parts made
sunt et iuxta metropoleorum civitatum numerum XX
are and according-to of-the-metropolitan cities the-number twenty
et una esse noscuntur, unaquaeque ab altera sequestrata
and one to-be are-known each from the-other separated
semotim in suo repositorio cum superscriptione civitatis, ad
apart in its-own repository with the-superscription of-the-city to
quam perferenda est, recondita iacet. Nomina metropoleorum,
which to-be-carried it-is stored lies the-names of-the-metropolises
ad quas eadem eleimosina sive largitio facienda est, haec
to which the-same alms or bestowal to-be-made is these
sunt: Roma, Ravenna, Mediolanum, Forum Iulii, Gradus,
are Rome Ravenna Milan Forum Iulii Grado
Colonia, Mogontiacus, Iuvavum quae et Salzburc, Treveri,
Cologne Mainz Juvavum which also Salzburg Trier
Senones, Vesontio, Lugdunum, Ratumagus, Remi, Arelas,
Sens Besançon Lyon Rouen Reims Arles
Vienna, Darantasia, Ebrodunum, Burdigala, Turones, Bituriges.
Vienne Moûtiers Embrun Bordeaux Tours Bourges
Unius autem partis, quam integram reservari voluit, talis est
of-the-one moreover part which whole to-be-reserved he-wished such is
ratio, ut, illis duabus in supradictas divisiones distributis
the-plan that those two into the-above-mentioned divisions distributed
et sub sigillo reconditis, haec tertia in usu cotidiano
and under seal stored this third in use daily
versaretur, velut res, quam nulla voti obligatione a
should-be-employed as a-thing which by-no of-vow obligation from
dominio possidentis alienatam esse constaret, et hoc tamdiu,
the-ownership of-the-possessor alienated to-be it-was-agreed and this so-long

quoadusque vel ille mansisset in corpore vel usum
until-such-time-as either he should-have-remained in the-body or the-use
eius sibi necessarium iudicaret. Post obitum vero suum
of-it to-himself necessary should-judge after the-death but his-own
aut voluntariam saecularium rerum carentiam eadem pars
or voluntary of-secular things renunciation the-same part
quattuor subdivisionibus secaretur, et una quidem earum
into-four subdivisions should-be-cut and one indeed of-them
supradictis XX et unae partibus adderetur, altera a
to-the-above-mentioned twenty and one parts should-be-added the-second by
filiis ac filiabus suis filiisque ac filiabus filiorum suorum
the-sons and daughters his-own and-the-sons and daughters of-the-sons his-own
adsumpta iusta et rationabili inter eos partitione divideretur,
taken-up by-just and reasonable among them division should-be-divided
tertia vero consueto Christianis more in usum pauperum
the-third but in-the-accustomed for-Christians manner to the-use of-the-poor
fuisset erogata, quarta simili modo nomine eleimosinae
should-have-been paid-out the-fourth in-similar way in-the-name of-alms
in servorum et ancillarum usibus palatii famulantium
for of-the-servants and of-the-maidservants to-the-uses of-the-palace serving
sustentationem distributa veniret. Ad hanc tertiam totius
the-sustenance distributed should-come to this third of-the-whole
summae portionem, quae similiter ut ceterae ex auro et
sum portion which likewise as the-others from gold and
argento constat, adiungi voluit omnia ex aere et ferro
silver consists to-be-joined he-wished all of bronze and iron
aliisque metallis vasa atque utensilia cum armis et vestibus
and-other metals vessels and utensils with arms and garments
alioque aut pretioso aut vili ad varios usus facto suppellectili,
and-other either precious or cheap for various uses made furnishings
ut sunt cortinae, stragula, tapetia, filtra, coria, sagmata, et
as are curtains coverlets carpets felts hides pack-saddles and

quicquid in camera atque vestiario eius eo die fuisset
whatever in the-chamber and wardrobe of-him on-that day should-have-been
inventum, ut ex hoc maiores illius partis divisiones fierent
found that from this greater of-that part the-divisions might-be-made
et erogatio eleimosinae ad plures pervenire potuisset.
and the-paying-out of-alms to more to-reach might-be-able
Capellam, id est ecclesiasticum ministerium, tam id quod
the-chapel that is the-church service as-much that which
ipse fecit atque congregavit, quam quod ad eum ex paterna
he-himself made and gathered as what to him from paternal
hereditate pervenit, ut integrum esset neque ulla divisione
inheritance came that whole it-should-be nor by-any division
scinderetur, ordinavit. Si qua autem invenirentur aut vasa aut
be-cut he-ordained if any moreover should-be-found either vessels or
libri aut alia ornamenta, quae liquido constaret eidem capellae
books or other ornaments which clearly it-was-agreed to-the-same chapel
ab eo conlata non fuisse, haec qui habere vellet dato iustae
by him conferred not to-have-been these who to-have might-wish given of-a-just
aestimationis pretio emeret et haberet. Similiter et de libris,
valuation the-price should-buy and have likewise also about the-books
quorum magnam in bibliotheca sua copiam congregavit,
of-which a-great in library his-own abundance he-gathered
statuit, ut ab his qui eos habere vellent iusto pretio
he-decreed that by these who them to-have might-wish at-a-just price
fuissent redempti, pretiumque in pauperibus erogatum.
they-should-have-been bought-back and-the-price on the-poor paid-out
Inter ceteros thesauros atque pecuniam tres mensas argenteas
among the-other treasures and money three tables silver
et auream unam praecipuae magnitudinis et ponderis
and golden one of-special size and weight
esse constat. De quibus statuit atque decrevit, ut una
to-be it-is-agreed of which he-decreed and determined that one

ex his, quae forma quadrangula descriptionem urbis
of these which in-the-form square a-description of-the-city
Constantinopolitanae continet, inter cetera donaria, quae ad
of-Constantinople contains among the-other gifts which for
hoc deputata sunt, Romam ad basilicam beati Petri apostoli
this designated are to-Rome to the-basilica of-blessed Peter the-apostle
deferatur, et altera, quae forma rotunda Romanae urbis
should-be-carried and the-second which in-the-form round of-the-Roman city
effigie figurata est, episcopio Ravennatis ecclesiae
with-an-image figured is to-the-bishop's-house of-the-Ravenna church
conferatur. Tertiam, quae ceteris et operis pulchritudine et
should-be-conferred the-third which the-others both of-work in-beauty and
ponderis gravitate multum excellit, quae ex tribus orbibus
of-weight in-heaviness much excels which from three circles
conexa totius mundi descriptionem subtili ac minuta
joined of-the-whole world a-description in-fine and minute
figuratione conplectitur, et auream illam, quae quarta esse
figuring embraces and the-golden that-one which fourth to-be
dicta est, in tertiae illius et inter heredes suos atque
said has-been in of-the-third that and among heirs his-own and
in eleimosinam dividendae partis augmento esse constituit.
into alms to-be-divided part as-increase to-be be-established
Hanc constitutionem atque ordinationem coram episcopis,
this constitution and ordinance before bishops
abbatibus comitibusque, qui tunc praesentes esse potuerunt,
abbots and-counts who then present to-be could
quorumque hic nomina descripta sunt, fecit atque constituit.
and-whose here names written-down are he-made and established
Episcopi: Hildibaldus, Richolfus, Arn, Wolfarius, Bernoinus,
the-bishops Hildebald Richolf Arn Wolfar Bernoin
Laidradus, Iohannes, Theodulfus, Iesse, Heito, Waltgaudus.
Leidrad John Theodulf Jesse Heito Waltgaud

Abbates: Fridugisus, Adalungus, Engilbertus, Irmino. Comites:
the-abbots Fridugis Adalung Angilbert Irmino the-counts
Walah, Meginheri, Otulfus, Stephanus, Unruocus, Burchardus,
Wala Meginher Otulf Stephen Unruoch Burchard
Meginhardus, Hatto, Rihwinus, Edo, Ercangarius, Geroldus,
Meginhard Hatto Rihwin Edo Ercangar Gerold
Bero, Hildigernus, Hroccolfus.
Bero Hildigern Hroccolf
Haec omnia filius eius Hludowicus, qui ei divina
these-things all the-son of-him Louis who to-him by-divine
iussione successit, inspecto eodem breviario, quam celerrime
command succeeded examined the-same summary as most-quickly
poterat post obitum eius summa devotione adimplere
he-could after the-death of-him with-the-highest devotion to-fulfill
curavit.
took-care

NITHARD

Historiarum Libri IIII

The Histories

BOOK I

PREFACE

Nithard addresses Charles, who ordered him, before they entered Châlons, to record the events of his reign while Lothar's persecution was in its second year. He asks pardon for any roughness, since he has written amid the same storm as his lord. He had meant to pass over the reign of Charles's father, but the truth of the brothers' quarrels will be clearer if he touches on it first, and he will begin with the venerable memory of their grandfather.

Cum, ut optime, mi domine, nosti, iam poene annis
since as best my lord you-know already almost for-two
duobus illatam a fratre vestro persecutionem vos vestrique
years brought by brother your persecution you and-yours
haudquaquam meriti pateremini, antequam Cadhellonicam
by-no-means having-deserved were-suffering before Châlons
introissemus civitatem, precepistis, ut res vestris temporibus
we-had-entered the-city you-commanded that the-things in-your times
gestas stili officio memoriae traderem. Oportuna
done of-the-pen by-the-service to-memory I-should-hand-down timely
quidem placidaque res, fateor, fuerat praecepta, si otium
indeed and-pleasant the-thing I-confess had-been commanded if leisure
tanti negotii, ut digne exsequeretur, fuisset concessum;
for-so-great a-task that worthily it-might-be-carried-out had-been granted
nunc autem, si quid minus vel incultius, quam oportuerit
now moreover if anything less or more-unpolished than it-ought
pro rerum magnitudine, huic operi inveneritis insertum,
for of-the-things the-greatness into-this work you-shall-find inserted
tanto facilior venia a vobis vestrisque mihi debetur,
so-much easier pardon from you and-yours to-me is-owed
quanto me nostis eodem turbine, quo et vos, dum hoc
by-as-much-as me you-know by-the-same whirlwind by-which also you while this

opus peregerim, esse agitatum. Praeterire autem ea
work I-was-completing to-have-been tossed to-pass-over moreover those-things
quae temporibus pii patris vestri gesta sunt disposueram, sed
which in-the-times of-pious father your done were I-had-decided but
facilius cuilibet legenti altercationum vestrarum veritas patebit,
more-easily to-anyone reading of-the-quarrels your the-truth will-be-clear
si quaedam, que suo in tempore contigisse novimus,
if certain-things which their-own in time to-have-happened we-know
summotenus praelibavero. Avi quoque insuper
at-the-surface I-shall-have-touched-on-first of-grandfather also moreover
vestri venerandam memoriam per omnia obmittere ratum
your the-venerable memory in all to-omit judged
minime videtur; ac per hoc textus hinc sumat exordium.
by-no-means it-seems and through this the-text from-here may-take beginning

I · CHARLES THE GREAT

Charles, rightly called the Great by all nations, dies in a good old age at about the third hour of the day, leaving all Europe filled with good. He so surpasses the men of his time in wisdom and virtue that he seems to all at once terrible, lovable, and admirable. By moderate terror alone he tames the fierce, iron hearts of Franks and barbarians, which even Roman power could not. He reigns thirty-two years and holds the empire fourteen.

Karolus bone memoriae et merito Magnus imperator ab
Charles of-good memory and deservedly Great emperor by
universis nationibus vocatus, hora videlicet plus minus
all nations called at-the-hour namely more less
diei tertia, in senectute bona decedens omnem Europem
of-the-day third in old-age good dying all Europe
omni bonitate repletam reliquit, vir quippe omni sapientia et
with-all goodness filled left a-man indeed in-all wisdom and

omni virtute humanum genus suo in tempore adeo praecellens,
in-all virtue the-human race his-own in time so surpassing
ut omnibus orbem inhabitantibus terribilis, amabilis pariterque
that to-all the-world inhabiting fearsome lovable and-equally
et admirabilis videretur, ac per hoc omne imperium
also admirable he-seemed and through this the-whole empire
omnibus modis, ut cunctis manifeste claruit, honestum et
in-all ways as to-all plainly it-was-clear honorable and
utile effecit. Nam super omne, quod ammirabile fateor fore,
useful he-made for above all which wonderful I-confess to-be
Francorum barbarorumque ferocia ac ferrea corda, quae nec
of-the-Franks and-of-the-barbarians the-ferocity and iron hearts which not-even
Romana potentia domare valuit, hic solus moderato terrore ita
the-Roman power to-tame was-able he alone with-moderate terror so
repressit, ut nihil in imperio moliri, praeter quod publicae
repressed that nothing in the-empire to-attempt except what with-the-public
utilitati congruebat, manifeste auderent. Regnavit feliciter per
benefit agreed openly they-dared he-reigned prosperously through
annos duos et XXX^ta^ imperiique gubernacula nihilominus
years two and thirty and-of-the-empire the-helm nonetheless
cum omni felicitate per annos quattuordecim possedit.
with all good-fortune through years fourteen held

Louis, Charles's only surviving legitimate son, comes from Aquitaine to Aachen and takes the empire unopposed. He divides his father's treasure, sends his sisters to their convents, and raises his young half-brothers. When his nephew Bernard, king of Italy, rebels and is blinded and dies, Louis tonsures the half-brothers. He divides the empire among his sons and, a widower, marries Judith, who bears him Charles.

Heres autem tante sublimitatis Lodhuwicus, filiorum eius
the-heir moreover of-so-great eminence Louis of-the-sons of-him
iusto matrimonio susceptorum novissimus, ceteris decedentibus
in-lawful marriage begotten the-last the-others dying
successit. Qui ut pro certo patrem obisse comperit,
succeeded who as-soon-as for certain the-father to-have-died he-learned
Aquis ab Aquitania protinus venit; quo undique ad se
to-Aachen from Aquitaine at-once came where from-all-sides to himself
venientem populum absque quolibet impedimento suae
coming the-people without any hindrance to-his-own
ditioni addixit, de ceteris, qui sibi creduli videbantur,
dominion he-bound about the-others who to-himself trustworthy seemed
deliberaturus. Initio quidem imperii suscepti pecuniam
about-to-deliberate at-the-beginning indeed of-the-empire taken-up the-money
ingenti numero a patre relictam trifariam dividere iussit
in-huge number by the-father left in-three to-divide he-ordered
et unam partem causa funeris expendit, duas vero inter
and one part for-the-sake of-the-funeral he-spent two but between
se et sorores suas a patre iusto matrimonio susceptas
himself and sisters his-own by the-father in-lawful marriage begotten
divisit, quas et instanter a palatio ad sua monasteria
he-divided whom also urgently from the-palace to their-own monasteries
abire praecepit. Fratres quoque adhuc tenera aetate,
to-go-away he-commanded the-brothers also still of-tender age

Drugonem, Hugonem et Teodericum, participes mensae effecit,
Drogo Hugh and Theoderic sharers of-his-table he-made
quos et in palatio una secum nutriri praecepit, et
whom also in the-palace together with-himself to-be-brought-up he-commanded and
Bernardo nepoti suo, filio Pippini, regnum Italiae concessit.
to-Bernard nephew his-own the-son of-Pippin the-kingdom of-Italy he-granted
Qui quoniam ab eo paulo post defecit, capitur et a
who since from him a-little afterward revolted is-captured and by
Bertmundo Lugdunensis provinciae praefecto luminibus et
Bertmund of-the-Lyon province the-prefect of-his-eyes and
vita pariter privatur. Hinc autem metuens, ne post dicti
life alike is-deprived from-this moreover fearing lest afterward the-said
fratres populo sollicitato eadem facerent, ad conventum
brothers the-people stirred-up the-same-things might-do to the-assembly
publicum eos venire praecepit, totondit ac per monasteria
public them to-come he-commanded he-tonsured and through monasteries
sub libera custodia commendavit. Quo peracto filios suos
under free custody entrusted which done the-sons his-own
iusto matrimonio iunxit et universum imperium inter eos ita
in-lawful marriage he-joined and the-whole empire among them so
divisit, ut Pippinus quidem Aquitaniam, Lodhuwicus autem
divided that Pippin indeed Aquitaine Louis moreover
Baioariam, Lodharius vero post discessum eius universum
Bavaria Lothar but after the-departure of-him the-whole
imperium haberet, cui et una secum imperatoris
empire should-have to-whom also together with-himself of-emperor
nomen habere concessit. Interea Irmengardis regina materque
the-name to-have he-granted meanwhile Ermengard the-queen and-mother
illorum decessit, ac paulo post Lodhuwicus imperator
of-them died and a-little afterward Louis the-emperor
Iudith in matrimonium sumpsit, ex qua Karolus creatur.
Judith in marriage took from whom Charles is-born

With the empire divided, the emperor does not know what to give his newborn son Charles. Lothar swears to defend Charles's share, then repents. Once Bernard is chamberlain and Charles has Alamannia, the brothers seize their father at Compiègne and veil the queen. Pippin and Louis restore him and Lothar goes to Italy, but Gundobald and Bernard vie to be second, Pippin and Louis to be first.

Karolo quidem nato, quoniam omne imperium inter reliquos
Charles indeed born since the-whole empire among the-remaining
filios pater diviserat, quid huic faceret, ignorabat.
sons the-father had-divided what for-this-one he-should-do he-did-not-know
Cumque anxius pater pro filio filios rogaret, tandem
and-when anxious the-father for the-son the-sons was-asking at-last
Lodharius consensit ac sacramento testatus est, ut portionem
Lothar consented and by-oath witnessed has that the-portion
regni quam vellet eidem pater daret, tutoremque
of-the-kingdom which he-wished to-the-same the-father should-give and-guardian
ac defensorem illius se fore contra omnes inimicos eius
and defender of-him himself about-to-be against all enemies of-him
in futuro iurando firmavit. Instigante autem Hugone, cuius
in the-future by-swearing he-confirmed at-the-instigation moreover of-Hugh whose
filiam in matrimonium Lodharius duxerat, ac Mathfrido
daughter in marriage Lothar had-married and of-Matfrid
ceterisque, sero se hoc fecisse penituit et, quemadmodum
and-the-others late himself this to-have-done he-repented and how
illud quod fecerat annullare posset, querebat. Quod
that which he-had-done to-annul he-might-be-able he-sought which
patrem matremque minime latuit; ac per hoc hinc
the-father and-the-mother by-no-means escaped and through this hither
inde quod pater statuerat Lodharius diruere, etsi non
thither what the-father had-established Lothar to-tear-down if not

manifeste, occulte studebat. Ad quod Bernardum quendam,
openly secretly was-eager for which Bernard a-certain
ducem Septimaniae, pater in supplementum sibi sumens
duke of-Septimania the-father as support to-himself taking
camerarium constituit Karolumque eidem commendavit ac
chamberlain he-made and-Charles to-the-same entrusted and
secundum a se in imperio praefecit. Qui dum inconsulte
second from himself in the-empire set-over who while thoughtlessly
re publica abuteretur, quam solidare debuit, penitus
the-state public he-misused which to-strengthen he-ought utterly
evertit. Per idem tempus Karolo Alamannia per edictum
he-overturned through the-same time to-Charles Alamannia by edict
traditur. Tum tandem Lodharius quasi iusta quaerimonia
is-handed-over then at-last Lothar as-if a-just complaint
reperta tam fratres quam et universam plebem veluti ad
found as-much the-brothers as also the-whole people as-if to
restaurandum rei publicae statum animabat. Quam ob
restoring of-the-state public the-condition roused which for
rem pariter cum omni populo patri ad Compendium
reason together with all the-people on-the-father at Compiègne
superveniunt, reginam velaverunt, fratres eius Cunradum
they-come-upon the-queen they-veiled the-brothers of-her Conrad
et Rodulfum totonderunt atque in Aquitaniam servandos
and Rudolf they-tonsured and into Aquitaine to-be-kept
Pippino commiserunt. Bernardus quoque fuga lapsus in
to-Pippin entrusted Bernard also by-flight having-escaped into
Septimaniam se recepit; Eribertus frater eius captus
Septimania himself betook Heribert the-brother of-him captured
ac luminibus privatus in Italia custodiendus traditur. Et
and of-his-eyes deprived in Italy to-be-guarded is-handed-over and
Lodharius quidem, eo tenore re publica adepta, patrem
Lothar indeed on-this footing the-state public obtained the-father

et Karolum sub libera custodia servabat; cum quo monachos,
and Charles under free custody kept with whom monks
qui eidem vitam monasticam traderent et eandem vitam
who to-the-same the-life monastic should-teach and the-same life
illum assumere suaderent, esse praeceperat. Res autem
him to-assume should-urge to-be he-had-commanded the-state moreover
publica, quoniam quisque cupiditate illectus sua querebat,
public since each-one by-greed enticed his-own-things sought
cotidie deterius ibat. Quam ob rem tam monachi, quos
daily worse went which for reason as-much the-monks whom
supra memoravimus, quam et ceteri, qui quod factum fuerat
above we-have-mentioned as also the-others who what done had-been
dolebant, illum percontari coeperunt, si res publica eidem
grieved him to-question began if the-state public to-him
restitueretur, an eam pro viribus erigere ac fovere
were-restored whether it according-to his-strength to-raise-up and to-cherish
vellet, maximeque cultum divinum, quo omnis ordo
he-would-wish and-chiefly the-worship divine by-which every order
tuetur ac regitur. Quod quia facile confessum, in restauratione
is-protected and ruled which because readily he-acknowledged in the-restoration
eius otius consensum est; assumptoque Guntbaldo quodam
of-him more-quickly agreed it-was and-taken-up Gundobald a-certain
monacho sub specie religionis in hoc negotio ad Pippinum
monk under the-appearance of-religion in this business to Pippin
Ludovicumque, filios eius, occulte direxit, promittens, si in
and-Louis the-sons of-him secretly he-sent promising if in
sua restitutione una cum his qui hoc cupiebant adesse
his-own restoration together with those who this desired to-be-present
voluissent, regnum utrisque se ampliare velle. Ac per
they-would-be-willing the-kingdom for-both himself to-enlarge to-wish and through
hoc perfacile cupideque paruere; conventuque condicto regina
this very-easily and-eagerly they-obeyed and-an-assembly appointed the-queen

et fratres eius eidem restituuntur, ac plebs universa
and the-brothers of-her to-the-same are-restored and the-people whole
ditioni eius se subdidit. Hinc hi qui cum Lodhario
to-the-dominion of-him itself submitted hence those who with Lothar
senserunt in concilium deducti et ab ipso Lodhario ad
sided into a-council brought and by himself Lothar to
mortem diiudicati aut vita donata in exilium retrusi sunt.
death sentenced or with-life granted into exile thrust were
Lodharium quoque sola Italia contentum ea pactione
Lothar also with-only Italy content on-that agreement
abire permisit, ut extra patris voluntatem nihil deinceps
to-depart he-permitted that beyond the-father's will nothing thereafter
moliri in regno temptaret. Cumque se haec ita
to-undertake in the-kingdom he-should-try and-when themselves these-things so
haberent, et res publica paululum respirari videretur,
had and the-state public a-little to-breathe-again seemed
confestim Guntbaldus monachus, quem supra memoravimus,
at-once Gundobald the-monk whom above we-have-mentioned
quia multa in restitutione eius laboraverat, secundus in imperio
because much in the-restoration of-him had-labored second in the-empire
esse volebat; quod quoniam Bernardus, uti praemissum est,
to-be wished which since Bernard as said-before it-was
olim fuerat, summa industria iterum esse certabat. Pippinus
formerly had-been with-the-highest effort again to-be he-strove Pippin
quoque et Lodhuwicus, quanquam eis regna, sicut
also and Louis although to-them the-kingdoms as
promissum fuerat, aucta fuissent, tamen in imperio ut post
promised it-had-been enlarged had-been yet in the-empire that after
patrem primi essent, uterque laborabat; at illi, per quos
the-father first they-might-be each labored but those through whom
tunc res publica tractabatur, voluntati eorum obsistebant.
then the-state public was-managed to-the-will of-them stood-in-the-way

Aquitaine is taken from Pippin and given to Charles. Lothar's party frees the exiles, and with Pope Gregory in their train the three brothers meet their father in Alsace, win over his army, and capture him; Judith is exiled to Italy. But Lothar's favorites quarrel, and sons and people are ashamed. Lothar releases his father at Saint Denis and flees to Vienne; Judith returns.

Per idem tempus Aquitania Pippino dempta Karolo datur,
through the-same time Aquitaine from-Pippin taken to-Charles is-given
et in eius obsequio primatus populi, qui cum patre
and in his allegiance the-chief-men of-the-people who with the-father
sentiebat, iurat. Quod quidem hi, quos supra retulimus,
sided swears which indeed those whom above we-have-reported
graviter ferentes, ut res publica inutiliter tractaretur,
heavily bearing that the-state public uselessly was-managed
divulgant populumque quasi ad iustum regimen sollicitant;
they-spread-abroad and-the-people as-if to just government they-stir-up
Walanam, Elisachar, Mathfridum ceterosque, qui in exilium
Wala Elisachar Matfrid and-the-others who into exile
retrusi fuerant, custodia emittunt; Lodharium, ut rem
thrust had-been from-custody they-release Lothar that the-state
publicam invadat, compellunt; insuper autem et Gregorium
public he-may-invade they-compel besides moreover also Gregory
Romane summe sedis pontificem, ut sua auctoritate
of-the-Roman highest see the-pontiff that by-his authority
liberius quod cupiebant perficere possent, sub eadem
more-freely what they-desired to-accomplish they-might-be-able under the-same
specie magnis precibus in supplementum suae voluntatis
appearance with-great prayers as support of-their-own will
assumunt. Quam ob rem imperator una cum omni quod
they-take-up which for reason the-emperor together with all which

habebat imperio, tres reges filiique eius adversus eum cum
he-had command three kings and-sons of-him against him with
ingenti exercitu, insuper papa Gregorius cum omni comitatu
a-huge army moreover the-pope Gregory with all retinue
Romano Elisazam confluunt iuxtaque montem Sigwaldi castra
Roman to-Alsace stream-together and-near the-mount of-Sigwald the-camp
ponunt ac variis affectionibus populum, ut a patre
place and with-various inducements the-people that from the-father
deficeret, filii compellunt. Novissime quibusdam fuga
it-should-defect the-sons compel at-last certain-ones by-flight
lapsis, cum perpaucis pater capitur; uxor ab eo dempta in
escaped with very-few the-father is-captured the-wife from him taken into
Langobardiam exilio mittitur, ac Karolus una cum patre
Lombardy in-exile is-sent and Charles together with the-father
sub magna custodia servatur. Gregorius siquidem papa
under great guard is-kept Gregory indeed the-pope
iteneris penitudine correptus tardius quam vellet Romam
of-the-journey by-regret seized later than he-wished to-Rome
revertitur. Et Lodharius quidem iterum eo tenore imperium
returns and Lothar indeed again on-this footing the-empire
adeptum, quod iniuste tam facile iterato obtinuit, iterato
obtained which unjustly so easily a-second-time he-held a-second-time
facilius iuste amisit. Nam Pippinus et Lodhuwicus videntes,
more-easily justly lost for Pippin and Louis seeing
quod Lodharius universum imperium sibi vindicare illosque
that Lothar the-whole empire for-himself to-claim and-them
deteriores efficere vellet, graviter ferebant; insuper autem, dum
worse-off to-make wished heavily bore besides moreover while
Huc, Lambertus atque Mathfridus, quis illorum secundus
Hugh Lambert and Matfrid which of-them second
post Lodharium in imperio haberetur, ambigerent, dissedere
after Lothar in the-empire should-be-held disputed to-quarrel

coeperunt et, quoniam quisque eorum propria querebat,
began and since each of-them his-own-things sought
rem publicam penitus neglegebant. Quod quidem populus
the-state public utterly they-neglected which indeed the-people
cernens molestus erat. Occurrebat insuper etiam filiis
seeing troubled was there-came moreover also to-the-sons
verecundia et penitudo, quod patrem bis honore privaverant,
shame and regret that the-father twice of-honor they-had-deprived
universe plebi, quod bis imperatorem dimiserant, ac
to-the-whole people that twice the-emperor they-had-abandoned and
per hoc hinc inde in restitutione eius consentiunt et
through this hither thither in the-restoration of-him they-agree and
undique ad Sanctum Dyonisium, ubi tunc Lodharius
from-all-sides to Saint Denis where then Lothar
patrem et Karolum servabat, affluere contendunt. Cernens
the-father and Charles was-keeping to-stream they-strive seeing
Lodharius praedictam animositatem vires suas excedere,
Lothar the-aforesaid hostility strength his-own to-exceed
antequam conveniant, arma sumit, patrem ac Karolum
before they-assemble arms takes the-father and Charles
dimittit itinereque arrepto Viennam petit. Plebs autem non
releases and-the-journey seized Vienne seeks the-people moreover not
modica, quae praesens aderat, et iam iamque Lodhario pro
small which present was-there and now and-now on-Lothar for
patre vim inferre volebat, rege recepto basilicam sancti
the-father force to-bring wished the-king recovered into-the-basilica of-saint
Dyonisii una cum episcopis et omni clero confluunt,
Denis together with the-bishops and all the-clergy stream-together
laudes Deo devote referunt, coronam et arma regi
praises to-God devoutly render the-crown and arms on-the-king
suo imponunt et ad cetera deliberaturi contendunt.
their-own place and to the-rest about-to-deliberate strive

Lodharium pater persequi distulit, sed legatos, qui eum
Lothar the-father to-pursue put-off but envoys who him
citra Alpes festinare iuberent, post illum direxit; Pippinum
beyond the-Alps to-hasten should-order after him he-sent Pippin
ad se venientem benigne excepit, gratias in eo, quod
to himself coming kindly he-received thanks in that that
pro sua restitutione laboraverat, egit ac reverti eum in
for his-own restoration he-had-labored he-gave and to-return him into
Aquitaniam, uti petiverat, permisit. Hinc inde fideles, qui
Aquitaine as he-had-asked permitted hither thither the-faithful-men who
evaserant et rem publicam regere consueverant, confluunt;
had-escaped and the-state public to-rule had-been-accustomed stream-together
cum quibus itenere arrepto Aquis gematum petit, tandemque
with whom the-journey seized Aachen the-palace he-seeks and-at-last
Lodhuwicum venientem gratanter excepit, quem et una
Louis coming gladly received whom also together
secum causa praesidii esse praecepit. Interea hi qui
with-himself for-the-sake of-protection to-be he-commanded meanwhile those who
Iudith in Italia servabant audientes, quod Lodharius fugam
Judith in Italy were-keeping hearing that Lothar flight
inierat, et pater imperium regebat, arrepta Iudith fugam
had-entered-on and the-father the-empire was-ruling seized Judith flight
ineunt, Aquis prospere perveniunt, gratum munus imperatori
enter-on to-Aachen successfully arrive a-welcome gift to-the-emperor
deferunt. Verumtamen haud est thoro regio recepta,
bring nevertheless by-no-means she-is into-the-bed royal received
donec se criminibus obiectis innoxiam, quia criminator
until herself of-the-crimes charged innocent because an-accuser
deerat, sacramento una cum propinquis coram plebe effecit.
was-lacking by-oath together with kinsmen before the-people she-made

Lothar's men defeat Count Odo in the Breton march, and Odo is killed. Lothar besieges and burns Chalon, has Gerberga drowned in the Saône as a witch, beheads Gozhelm and Senila, and spares Warin. He marches on Orléans, but his father, with Louis the German, meets him. The Franks, ashamed of having twice deserted the emperor, will not defect, so Lothar, with nowhere to fight or flee, agrees to withdraw beyond the Alps and attempt nothing without his father's consent.

Per idem tempus Mathfridus et Lantbertus ceterique a
through the-same time Matfrid and Lambert and-the-others from
parte Lodharii poenes marcam Brittannicam morabantur.
the-party of-Lothar in-the-region-of the-march Breton were-staying
Ad quos pellendos missus est Uodo et omnes inter
for whom to-be-driven-off sent was Odo and all between
Sequanam et Ligerem degentes, qui manu valida collecta
the-Seine and the-Loire living who with-a-band strong collected
hinc atque inde convenerunt. Et hos quidem paucitas ac
hither and thither came-together and these indeed fewness and
per hoc summa necessitas unanimes effecit, Uodonem
through this the-highest necessity of-one-mind made Odo
autem et suos maxima multitudo securos, discordes et
moreover and his-men the-greatest multitude careless discordant and
inordinatos reddidit. Quapropter proelio commisso fugerunt.
disorderly rendered wherefore battle joined they-fled
Cecidit Uodo et Odo, Vivianus, Fulbertus ac plebis
there-fell Odo and Odo Vivian Fulbert and of-the-common-people
innumera multitudo. Quod quidem citato cursu victores
a-countless multitude which indeed at-swift pace the-victors
Lodhario notantes mandant, ut, quantotius posset, illis
to-Lothar noting send-word that as-quickly-as he-could to-them
cum exercitu occurrat. Qui libenter paruit et Cavillonum
with an-army he-should-come who gladly he-obeyed and to-Chalon

collecta manu valida venit, civitatem obsidione cinxit,
with-a-gathered band strong came the-city with-siege surrounded
praeliando triduum obsedit et tandem urbem captam una
fighting for-three-days besieged and at-last the-city taken together
cum ecclesiis incendit. Gerbergam more maleficorum in
with the-churches burned Gerberga in-the-manner of-witches into
Ararim mergi praecepit, Gozhelmum et Senilam capite
the-Saône to-be-drowned he-commanded Gozhelm and Senila with-the-head
punivit, Warino autem vitam donavit et, ut se deinceps
punished to-Warin moreover life he-granted and that him thereafter
pro viribus iuvaret, iureiurando constrinxit. Hinc autem
according-to his-strength he-should-help by-oath he-bound hence moreover
Lodharius et sui duobus praeliis feliciter gestis magnanimes
Lothar and his-men by-two battles successfully waged high-spirited
effecti, universum imperium perfacile invadere sperantes, ad
made the-whole empire very-easily to-invade hoping to
cetera deliberaturi Aurilianensem urbem petunt. Quod pater
the-rest about-to-deliberate Orléans the-city seek which the-father
audiens e Francia manu valida collecta, insuper Lodhuwico
hearing from Francia a-band strong collected moreover Louis
filio suo cum universis, qui trans Renum morabantur,
son his-own with all who across the-Rhine were-staying
in auxilium sibi assumpto tantum facinus a filio in
into help for-himself taken so-great a-crime by the-son against
imperium commissum vindicaturus perrexit. Lodharius quoque
the-empire committed about-to-avenge proceeded Lothar also
eadem spe, qua Francos abducere consuerat,
with-the-same hope with-which the-Franks to-lead-away he-had-been-accustomed
animatus ire obvius ratum duxit; ac per hoc hinc inde
inspired to-go to-meet right he-held and through this hither thither
confluunt supraque fluvium iuxta villam quae Calviacus
stream-together and-above the-river near the-estate which Calviacus

dicitur castra ponunt. Sed Franci, eo quod imperatorem
is-called the-camp place but the-Franks for-this that the-emperor
bis reliquerant, poenitudine correpti et, ut deinde tale
twice they-had-abandoned by-regret seized and that again such
quid committerent, turpe iudicantes ad defectionem impelli
anything they-should-commit shameful judging to defection to-be-driven
dedignati sunt; quam ob rem cum nec fuge nec proelii
disdained have which for reason when neither of-flight nor of-battle
locum videret, ea pactione novissime praelium diremit, ut
a-place he-saw on-that agreement at-last the-battle he-broke-off that
infra dies statutos Alpibus excederet ac deinceps sine
within days fixed from-the-Alps he-should-depart and thereafter without
patris iussione fines Franciae ingredi non praesumeret
the-father's command the-borders of-Francia to-enter not he-should-presume
et extra patris voluntatem in eius imperio deinceps nihil
and beyond the-father's will in his empire thereafter nothing
moliri temptaret. Quod et ita se et suos servaturos
to-undertake he-should-try which both so themselves and theirs about-to-keep
tam is quam et sui sacramento firmaverunt.
as-much he as also his-men by-oath confirmed

At Aachen the emperor gives Charles a kingdom from Frisia between the Meuse and the Seine to Burgundy and the sea, and at Quierzy arms, a crown, and lands beyond the Seine. When Louis the German revolts, his father drives him into Bavaria. Fearing his death, the queen and nobles offer Lothar forgiveness and a division of the kingdom with Charles, and both sides swear to it.

His ita compositis pater, uti et cum quibus consueverat,
these so settled the-father as and with whom he-had-been-accustomed
imperium regebat. Videns autem, quod populus nullo modo
the-empire was-ruling seeing moreover that the-people by-no way
diebus vitae suae illum relinquere, uti consueverat, vellet,
in-the-days of-life his-own him to-abandon as it-had-been-accustomed wished
conventu Aquis hieme indicto portionem regni his
an-assembly at-Aachen in-winter proclaimed a-portion of-the-kingdom by-these
terminis notatam Karolo dedit: Id est a mari per fines
borders marked to-Charles he-gave that is from the-sea through the-borders
Saxoniae usque ad fines Ribuariorum totam Frisiam
of-Saxony all-the-way to the-borders of-the-Ripuarians all Frisia
et per fines Ribuariorum comitatus Moilla, Haettra,
and through the-borders of-the-Ripuarians the-counties Moilla Hattuaria
Hammolant, Masagouwi, deinde vero quicquid inter Mosam
Hamaland Maasgau then but whatever between the-Meuse
et Sequanam usque Burgundiam una cum Viridunense
and the-Seine up-to Burgundy together with Verdun
consistit et de Burgundia Tullensem, Odornensem, Bedensem,
lies and of Burgundy Toul Ornois Bedois
Blesensem, Pertensem, utrosque Barrenses, Brionensem,
Blaisois Perthois both Barrois Brienne
Tricasinum, Autisioderensem, Senonicum, Wastinensem,
Troyes Auxerre Sens Gâtinais

Milidunensem, Stampensem, Castrensem, Parisiacum et
Melun Étampes Châtres Paris and
deinde per Sequanam usque in mare Oceanum et per
then through the-Seine up-to into the-sea Ocean and through
ipsum mare usque in Frisiam, omnes videlicet episcopatus,
the-very sea up-to into Frisia all namely bishoprics
abbatias, comitatus, fiscos et omnia infra praedictos
abbeys counties fiscal-lands and all-things within the-aforesaid
fines consistentia cum omnibus ad se pertinentibus,
borders lying with all to themselves belonging
in quacumque regione consistebant et sui iuris esse
in whatever region they-lay and of-his-own right to-be
videbantur, una cum auctoritate divina atque paterna
seemed together with authority divine and paternal
praefato filio suo Karolo dedit, firmumque ut permaneret,
to-the-aforesaid son his-own Charles he-gave and-firm that it-might-remain
Dei omnipotentis clementiam exoravit. Hilduinus autem
of-God almighty the-clemency he-implored Hilduin moreover
abbas ecclesiae sancti Dyonisii et Gerardus comes Parisius
the-abbot of-the-church of-saint Denis and Gerard the-count of-Paris
civitatis ceterique omnes praedictos fines inhabitantes
city and-the-others all the-aforesaid borders inhabiting
convenerunt fidemque sacramento Karolo firmaverunt. Quod
came-together and-faith by-oath to-Charles confirmed which
quidem Lotharius et Lodhuwicus audientes graviter ferebant,
indeed Lothar and Louis hearing heavily bore
unde et colloquium indixerunt. Ad quod venientes, cum
whence also a-conference they-proclaimed to which coming since
nihil ex his indignari se posse viderent, callide
nothing of these-things to-be-indignant themselves to-be-able they-saw cunningly
dissimulantes quippiam se contra patris voluntatem
dissembling anything themselves against the-father's will

moliri velle, discesserunt; verumtamen ob id
to-undertake to-wish they-departed nevertheless on-account-of that
colloquium commotio non modica exorta est, sed facile
conference a-commotion not small arisen was but easily
quievit. Hinc autem Carisiacum mediante Septembrio venit
it-quieted from-here moreover to-Quierzy mid September he-came
seditionemque quandam similiter perfacile sedavit ac praefato
and-a-sedition a-certain likewise very-easily he-calmed and to-the-aforesaid
Karolo arma et coronam nec non et quandam portionem
Charles arms and the-crown nor not also a-certain portion
regni inter Sequanam et Ligerem dedit, Pippinum ac
of-the-kingdom between the-Seine and the-Loire bestowed Pippin and
Karolum, ut videbatur, unanimes effecit ac deinde Pippinum
Charles as it-seemed of-one-mind he-made and then Pippin
in Aquitaniam abire cum gratia permisit, Karolum vero in
into Aquitaine to-depart with favor he-permitted Charles but into
partem regni, quam illi dederat, direxit. Quo veniens,
the-part of-the-kingdom which to-him he-had-given he-sent where coming
omnes hos fines inhabitantes ad illum venerunt et fidem
all these borders inhabiting to him came and faith
sacramento commendati eidem firmaverunt.
by-oath commended to-the-same confirmed
Eodem tempore nuntiatur, quod Lodhuwicus a patre suo
at-the-same time it-is-announced that Louis from father his-own
descivisset et quicquid trans Renum regni continebatur
had-revolted and whatever across the-Rhine of-the-kingdom was-contained
sibi vindicare vellet; quod pater eius audiens indicto
for-himself to-claim wished which the-father of-him hearing proclaimed
conventu Magonciacum venit ac traiecto exercitu fugere
an-assembly to-Mainz came and taken-across the-army to-flee
illum in Baioariam compulit. Post Aquis exultans rediit,
him into Bavaria compelled afterward to-Aachen exulting returned

quoniam, quocumque se verterat, nutu divino victor
since wherever himself he-had-turned by-nod divine victor
erat. Veruntamen ingruente senili aetate et propter varias
he-was nevertheless pressing-on the-old age and on-account-of various
afflictiones poene decrepita imminente, mater ac primores
afflictions almost decrepit impending the-mother and the-chief-men
populi, qui in voluntate patris pro Karolo laboraverant,
of-the-people who in the-will of-the-father for Charles had-labored
metuentes, si infectis rebus decederet, odia fratrum
fearing if unfinished the-affairs he-should-die the-hatreds of-the-brothers
usque ad internitionem sibi insurgere, ratum
all-the-way to destruction against-themselves to-rise right
duxerunt, ut quemlibet e filiis pater in supplementum
they-held that any from the-sons the-father as support
sibi assumeret, et, si post discessum eius ceteri concordes
for-himself should-take and if after the-departure of-him the-others in-concord
esse nollent, saltem hi duo unanimes effecti valerent
to-be should-be-unwilling at-least these two of-one-mind made might-be-able
resistere invidorum factioni. Cumque necessitate instante ac
to-resist of-the-envious the-faction and-when with-necessity pressing and
per hoc assiduis meditationibus in hac electione versarentur,
through this by-constant deliberations in this choice they-were-engaged
universorum sententia consensit, si Lodharius certum se
of-all the-opinion agreed if Lothar sure himself
in hoc negotio praebere vellet, cum eo foedus iniri
in this business to-show would-be-willing with him a-treaty to-be-entered
debere. Nam, uti praemissum est, idem olim patri
ought for as said-before it-was the-same formerly to-the-father
matrique ac Karolo iuraverat, ut partem regni quam
and-mother and to-Charles had-sworn that the-part of-the-kingdom which
vellet pater eidem daret, et eandem se consentire
he-might-wish the-father to-the-same should-give and the-same himself to-consent

et protegere illi contra omnes inimicos omnibus diebus
and to-protect for-him against all enemies on-all days
vitae suae deberet. Quam ob rem missos deligunt et
of-life his-own he-ought which for reason envoys they-choose and
in Italiam ad Lodharium mittunt promittentes, si patris
into Italy to Lothar send promising if the-father's
voluntatem deinceps erga Karolum conservare vellet,
will thereafter toward Charles to-keep he-would-wish
omnia, quae in illum actenus deliquerat, remitti et omne
all-things which against him up-to-now he-had-offended to-be-forgiven and all
regnum absque Baioaria inter illum et Karolum dividendum;
the-kingdom without Bavaria between him and Charles to-be-divided
quae quoniam Lodhario et suis rata videbantur, utraque
which since to-Lothar and his-men ratified seemed both
ex parte sic velle ac sic se perficere iuraverunt.
from side so to-wish and so themselves to-accomplish they-swore

VII · THE PARTITION AT WORMS

At Worms Lothar falls at his father's feet and is forgiven. Asked to divide the kingdom himself, with Charles choosing, he spends three days at it and then asks his father to divide it instead. The emperor divides it at the Meuse; Lothar takes the southern part, and the western goes to Charles. The emperor urges the brothers to love each other and sends Lothar to Italy.

Ergo ad urbem Vangionum conventu indicto convenerunt; in
therefore to the-city of-the-Vangiones an-assembly proclaimed they-came-together in
quo Lodharius humillime ad pedes patris coram cunctis
which Lothar most-humbly at the-feet of-the-father before all
procidit dicens: 'Novi me coram Deo et te, domine pater,
fell-down saying I-know me before God and you lord father

deliquisse; non regnum, sed indulgentiam et, ut gratiam
to-have-offended not a-kingdom but indulgence and that favor
tuam merear, quaeso'. Idem autem ut pius ac clemens pater
your I-may-earn I-ask the-same moreover as a-pious and merciful father
et delicta postulanti indulsit et gratiam roganti
both the-offenses to-the-one-asking forgave and favor to-the-one-entreating
concessit, eo scilicet pacto, ut deinceps nihil quolibet
granted on-that namely agreement that thereafter nothing in-any
modo contra suam voluntatem nec in Karolum nec
way against his will neither against Charles nor
in regnum alicubi egisset. Dein benigne illum
against the-kingdom anywhere he-should-have-done then kindly him
excoepit ac deosculans gratias Deo pro filio, quem aversum
he-received and kissing thanks to-God for the-son whom estranged
reconciliaverat, egit. Ad prandium deinde conversi sunt,
he-had-reconciled he-gave to dinner then turned they-were
in crastinum de ceteris, quae sui iuraverant, deliberaturi.
on the-morrow about the-rest which his-men had-sworn about-to-deliberate
Die autem altera concilium ineunt. Hinc pater, ut sui
on-the-day moreover second a-council they-enter hence the-father as his-men
iuraverant, perficere cupiens: 'Ecce, fili, ut promiseram,
had-sworn to-accomplish desiring behold son as I-had-promised
regnum omne coram te est, divide illud, prout libuerit.
the-kingdom whole before you is divide it as it-shall-please
Quod si tu diviseris, parcium electio Karoli erit; si
which if you shall-have-divided of-the-parts the-choice Charles's will-be if
autem nos illud diviserimus, similiter parcium electio tua
moreover we it shall-have-divided likewise of-the-parts the-choice yours
erit'. Quod idem cum per triduum dividere vellet, sed
will-be which the-same when through three-days to-divide he-wished but
minime posset, Iosippum atque Richardum ad patrem direxit
by-no-means could Joseph and Richard to the-father he-sent

deprecans, ut ille et sui regnum dividerent, parciumque
entreating that he and his-men the-kingdom should-divide and-of-the-parts
electio sibi concederetur; insuper vero in ea fide, quam
the-choice to-himself be-granted moreover but by that faith which
illis iuraverant, testati sunt, quod pro nulla re alia nisi
to-them they-had-sworn testified they-have that for no thing other except
sola ignorantia regionum id peragere differret. Quam ob rem
alone ignorance of-the-regions it to-accomplish he-delayed which for reason
pater, ut aequius valuit, regnum omne absque Baioaria
the-father as more-fairly he-was-able the-kingdom whole without Bavaria
cum suis divisit; et a Mosa partem australem Lodharius
with his-men divided and from the-Meuse the-part southern Lothar
cum suis elegit, quin immo et accepit, occiduam vero, ut
with his-men chose nay rather also received the-western but that
Karolo conferretur, consensit et una cum patre coram
on-Charles it-be-conferred he-agreed and together with the-father before
omni populo ita se velle annuntiavit. Hinc autem pater
all the-people so himself to-wish announced from-here moreover the-father
fratres, prout valuit, unanimes effecit, rogans ac deprecans,
the-brothers as he-was-able of-one-mind made asking and entreating
ut invicem se diligerent, et ut alter ab altero
that each-other themselves they-should-love and that one by the-other
protegeretur, adortans exorat et quod fieri desiderat
should-be-protected exhorting he-implores and what to-be-done he-desires
optat. Quibus peractis benigne et pacifice Lodharium in
he-wishes which completed kindly and peaceably Lothar into
Italiam ditatum remissionis gratia ac regni muneribus
Italy enriched of-forgiveness with-the-favor and of-the-kingdom with-the-gifts
remittens, sacramenta, quae sepe iuraverat, quotiens in illum
sending-back the-oaths which often he-had-sworn how-often against him
deliquerat, quotiens delicta eidem donaverat, in memoriam
he-had-offended how-often the-offenses to-the-same he-had-forgiven into memory

reducens ac piis visceribus monens contestabatur, ne saltem
recalling and with-pious heart warning he-adjured lest at-least
id, quod tunc novissime peregerant, coramque cunctis ita
that which then most-recently they-had-accomplished and-before all so
se velle confirmaverat, frustrari quolibet modo permittat.
himself to-wish had-confirmed to-be-frustrated in-any way he-should-allow

VIII · THE DEATH OF LOUIS THE PIOUS

On Pippin's death some Aquitanians wait for the emperor and others make Pippin's son king. The emperor has his loyal Aquitanians commend themselves to Charles, drives Louis the German back into Bavaria, and summons Lothar to Worms. Before the assembly meets, he dies on an island near Mainz, and his brother Drogo buries him at Metz. He lived sixty-four years.

Eodem tempore, ut Pippinus decessisset, pater nuntium
at-the-same time that Pippin had-died the-father news
acceperat; et pars quedam populi, quid avus de
had-received and part a-certain of-the-people what the-grandfather about
regno vel nepotibus iuberet, prestolabatur; pars autem
the-kingdom or the-grandsons might-order was-waiting the-part moreover
arrepto filio eius Pippino, quia natu maximus erat,
seized the-son of-him Pippin because by-birth eldest he-was
tyrannidem exercebat. Quapropter his ita, ut prefatum est,
tyranny practiced wherefore these-things so as said-before it-is
cum Lodhario perfectis, collecta manu valida per Cavillonem
with Lothar accomplished collected a-band strong through Chalon
Clarum-montem una cum Karolo ac matre pater petit ac
Clermont together with Charles and the-mother the-father seeks and
partem populi, quae illum praestolabatur, inibi benigne recepit.
the-part of-the-people which him was-awaiting there kindly received

Et quoniam olim regnum Aquitaniae Karolo donaverat,
and since formerly the-kingdom of-Aquitaine to-Charles he-had-given
ut illi se commendarent, ortando suasit, iussit. Qui
that to-him themselves they-should-commend by-exhorting he-urged he-ordered who
omnes commendati eidem sacramento fidem firmaverunt.
all commended to-the-same by-oath faith confirmed
Post quod, quomodo tyrannos compesceret, contendit. Per
after which how the-tyrants he-might-check he-strove through
idem tempus Lodhuwicus a Baioaria solito more
the-same time Louis from Bavaria in-the-accustomed manner
egressus Alamanniam invasit cum quibusdam Toringis et
having-gone-out Alamannia invaded with certain Thuringians and
Saxonibus sollicitatis; quam ob rem pater eius ab Aquitania
Saxons stirred-up which for reason the-father of-him from Aquitaine
revocatus, dimisso videlicet Karolo una cum matre eius
recalled left namely Charles together with the-mother of-him
Pictavis, ipse vero sanctum pascha Aquis celebravit et sic
at-Poitiers he-himself but holy Easter at-Aachen celebrated and so
uno eodemque itinere Toringam petiit. A qua Lodhuwico
by-one and-the-same journey Thuringia sought from which Louis
filio eius pulso, per Sclavos itinere redempto eum in
son of-him driven through the-Slavs a-way bought him into
Baioariam fugere compulit. Quo peracto Kal. Iulii ad
Bavaria to-flee he-compelled which done on-the-Kalends of-July at
Vangionum urbem conventum indixit, ad quod Lodharium
the-Vangiones' city an-assembly he-proclaimed to which Lothar
filium suum ab Italia venire praecepit, cum eo ceterisque
son his-own from Italy to-come he-commanded with him and-the-others
sibi credulis de Lodhuwico deliberaturus. Cumque se
to-himself trustworthy about Louis about-to-deliberate and-when themselves
haec ita haberent, et Lodharius in Italia, Lodhuwicus trans
these-things so had and Lothar in Italy Louis across

Renum, et Karolus in Aquitania esset, Lodhuvicus imperator
the-Rhine and Charles in Aquitaine was Louis the-emperor
paterque illorum in insula quadam iuxta Magonciacum
and-father of-them on an-island a-certain near Mainz
XII. Kal. Iulii obiit; quem Drogo frater et episcopus
on-the-twelfth Kalends of-July died whom Drogo the-brother and bishop
atque archicapellanus eius Mettis civitate sua apud Sanctum
and archchaplain of-him at-Metz city his-own at Saint
Arnulfum una cum episcopis, abbatibus comitibusque congruo
Arnulf together with bishops abbots and-counts with-fitting
honore sepulture tradidit. Vixit per annos IIII et LX,
honor to-burial delivered he-lived through years four and sixty
rexit Aquitaniam per annos VII et XXX, imperiale vero
he-ruled Aquitaine through years seven and thirty the-imperial but
nomen per annos VII et XX et per menses sex obtinuit.
name through years seven and twenty and through months six he-held

BOOK II

PREFACE

Having explained how the brothers' dissensions began, so that any reader can judge why Lothar persecuted Charles and his brother and whether he acted justly, Nithard will now record how Lothar carried it out, as memory and strength allow. He asks Charles to bear in mind the difficulties the same troubles have put in his way, and to forgive anything he neglects.

Explicitis pro tempore ac viribus dissensionum
unfolded according-to the-time and the-strength of-the-dissensions
vestrarum initiis, e quibus quique lector scire cupiens,
your the-beginnings from which every reader to-know wishing
quam ob rem post obitum patris vestri Lodharius vos
which for reason after the-death of-father your Lothar you
fratremque persequi statuerit, decernat, colligat et, si iuste
and-the-brother to-persecute decided may-discern may-gather and if justly
egerit, cognoscat, hinc iam, qua virtute ac industria
he-acted may-learn from-here now with-what valor and diligence
hoc exsecutus sit, prout memoria viresque suppleverint,
this carried-out has as memory and-strength shall-have-supplied
notare curabo. Vos vero difficultates, quae ex eadem
to-note I-shall-take-care you but the-difficulties which from the-same
molestia parvitati meae obstiterint, inspicere deposco et,
trouble to-the-smallness my have-stood-in-the-way to-consider I-beg and
si quid in hoc opere neglexero, ut ignoscatis, quaeso.
if anything in this work I-shall-have-neglected that you-forgive I-ask

Hearing of his father's death, Lothar sends word through Francia that he is coming to claim the empire, promising honors and threatening death to those who will not meet him. Men flock to him out of greed and fear. He moves first against Louis, sending Charles assurances of goodwill, faces Louis at Frankfurt, then agrees to a truce until November and turns against Charles.

Audiens Lodharius patrem suum obisse confestim nuntios
hearing Lothar father his-own to-have-died at-once messengers
ubique, presertim per totam Franciam mittit, qui se
everywhere especially through all Francia sends who himself
venturum in imperium, quod olim fuerat illi datum,
about-to-come into the-empire which formerly had-been to-him given
affirment, promittens unicuique honores a patre concessos
should-affirm promising to-each-one the-honors by the-father granted
se concedere et eosdem augere velle. Dubios quoque fidei
himself to-grant and the-same to-increase to-wish the-doubtful also of-faith
sacramento firmari praecepit; insuper autem iussit, ut,
by-oath to-be-confirmed he-commanded besides moreover he-ordered that
quantotius possent, obviam illi procederent, nolentibus
as-quickly-as they-could to-meet him they-should-come-forward to-the-unwilling
vero capitale supplicium ut praediceretur, indixit;
but capital punishment as should-be-announced-beforehand he-proclaimed
ipse autem pedetemptim, quo se res verteret, antequam
he-himself moreover step-by-step where itself the-affair might-turn before
Alpes excederet, scire volens ∗∗∗ Ergo cupiditate
the-Alps he-should-leave to-know wishing (lacuna) therefore by-greed
terroreque illecti undique ad illum confluunt; et hoc
and-terror enticed from-all-sides to him they-stream-together and this
cernens spe viribusque magnanimis effectus, quibus artibus
seeing by-hope and-strength high-spirited made by-what arts

universum imperium liberius invadere posset, deliberare
the-whole empire more-freely to-invade he-might-be-able to-deliberate
coepit. Lodhuwicum quoque quoniam itineri suo contiguum
began Louis also since to-route his-own adjacent
esse prospexit, ut primum in illum manum mitteret, ratum
to-be he-foresaw that first on him hand he-should-lay right
duxit et, ut eundem viribus annullaret, operam omni
he-held and that the-same by-strength he-might-annul effort with-all
virtute adiecit. Interea ad Karolum in Aquitaniam legatos
might he-applied meanwhile to Charles into Aquitaine envoys
callide dirigens mandat se erga illum, sicuti pater
cunningly sending he-sends-word himself toward him just-as the-father
statuerat, et sicut erga filiolum ex baptismate oportebat,
had-established and as toward a-godson from baptism it-was-fitting
benivolum esse, verumtamen ut nepoti suo, filio
well-disposed to-be nevertheless that to-the-nephew his-own to-the-son
Pippini, donec cum eo loqueretur, parceret, deprecatus est.
of-Pippin until with him he-might-speak he-should-spare requested he-has
Et his ita compositis ad urbem Vangionum iter direxit.
and these so settled to the-city of-the-Vangiones the-journey directed
Eodem tempore Lodhuwicus partem exercitus inibi causa
at-the-same time Louis part of-the-army there for-the-sake
custodiae reliquerat et Saxonibus sollicitatis obviam illis
of-guard had-left and the-Saxons stirred-up to-meet them
perrexerat. Quam ob rem Lodharius parvo conflictu custodes
had-proceeded which for reason Lothar with-small clash the-guards
fugere compulit, Renum cum universo exercitu transiens
to-flee compelled the-Rhine with the-whole army crossing
Franconofurth iter direxit. Quo insperate hinc Lodharius,
to-Frankfurt the-journey directed where unexpectedly from-here Lothar
inde Lodhuwicus confluunt, paceque sub nocte composita
from-there Louis stream-together and-peace under night settled

alter inibi, alter vero, quo Moin in Renum confluit, castra
the-one there the-other but where the-Main into the-Rhine flows the-camp
haud fraterno amore componunt. Cumque Lodhuwicus
by-no-means with-brotherly love pitch and-when Louis
viriliter resisteret, et Lodharius illum absque praelio sibi
manfully resisted and Lothar him without battle to-himself
subigere diffideret, sperans Karolum facilius superari posse,
to-subdue despaired hoping Charles more-easily to-be-overcome to-be-able
ea pactione praelium diremit, ut III. Idus Novembris
on-that agreement the-battle he-broke-off that on-the-third Ides of-November
eodem loco rursum conveniant et, ni concordia statutis
in-the-same place again they-should-meet and unless concord in-the-terms
interveniat, quid cuique debeatur, armis decernant; et his
should-intervene what to-each is-due by-arms they-should-decide and these
ita omissis Karolum sibi subigere contendit.
so dropped Charles to-himself to-subdue he-strove

II · CHARLES'S EMBASSY

Charles sends Nithard and Adelgar to remind Lothar of their oaths, offering to be faithful to him if he will let him keep what their father gave him. Lothar sends them back with a greeting and strips them of their honors. The men between the Meuse and the Seine call Charles; at Quierzy he receives many, but some beyond the Charbonnière, misled by Odulf, defect.

Per idem tempus Karolus Bituricas ad placitum, quo
through the-same time Charles to-Bourges to the-assembly at-which
Pippinum sui iuraverant venturum, venerat. Qui quidem
Pippin his-men had-sworn about-to-come had-come who indeed
ex omnibus nuntio recepto missos, videlicet Nithardum et
from all-sides news received envoys namely Nithard and

Adelgarium, delegit et, uti ocius valuit, ad Lodharium
Adelgar chose and as more-quickly he-was-able to Lothar
direxit, mandans ac deprecans, ut memor sit sacramentorum,
sent sending-word and entreating that mindful he-be of-the-oaths
quae inter se iuraverant, et servet, quae inter illos
which between themselves they-had-sworn and keep what between them
pater statuerat; insuper etiam fraternae filiolique conditionis
the-father had-established moreover also of-the-brotherly and-godson's relation
meminerit; haberet sua sibi et, quod illi pater
he-be-mindful let-him-have his-own-things to-himself and what to-him the-father
suo consensu concesserat, absque conflictu illum habere
with-his consent had-granted without conflict him to-have
permittat; promittens, si hoc faceret, fidelem se illi et
he-should-allow promising if this he-did faithful himself to-him and
subiectum fore velle, ita ut primogenito fratri esse oporteret.
subject to-be to-wish so as to-a-first-born brother to-be it-was-fitting
Insuper etiam quicquid actenus in illum deliquerat pollicitus
moreover also whatever up-to-now against him he-had-offended promised
est se ex corde remittere, deprecatus, ne amplius suos
he-has himself from the-heart to-forgive having-entreated lest longer his-men
sollicitet, ne regnum sibi a Deo commissum perturbet.
he-should-stir-up nor the-kingdom to-himself by God entrusted disturb
Cederent undique paci atque concordiae, et hoc se
they-should-yield on-all-sides to-peace and concord and this himself
sua suorumque ex parte ratum videre ac per hoc
his-own and-of-his-men from side ratified to-see and through this
conservare velle mandavit; quod etsi alter hoc ita esse non
to-preserve to-wish he-sent-word which even-if the-other this so to-be not
crederet, quocumque vellet modo ex his illum certum
believed in-whatever he-might-wish way of these-things him sure
se efficere promisit. Quae quidem Lodharius simulans se
himself to-make he-promised which indeed Lothar pretending himself

benigne suscipere legatos tantum salutationis causa redire
kindly to-receive the-envoys only of-greeting for-the-sake to-return
permisit ac per suos se responsurum de ceteris esse
allowed and through his-men himself about-to-answer about the-rest to-be
respondit. Insuper etiam, quoniam ad ipsum se vertere
he-answered moreover also since to him themselves to-turn
frustrata fide noluerunt, honoribus, quos pater illis
with-frustrated faith they-were-unwilling of-the-honors which the-father to-them
dederat, privavit; ita, quid fratri facere cogitaret, nolens
had-given he-deprived so what to-the-brother to-do he-was-planning unwilling
indicium dabat. Interea omnes inter Mosam et Sequanam
a-sign he-gave meanwhile all between the-Meuse and the-Seine
degentes ad Karolum miserunt mandantes, ut, antequam a
living to Charles sent sending-word that before by
Lodhario praeoccuparentur, veniret, adventum eius se
Lothar they-were-forestalled he-should-come the-arrival of-him themselves
praestolaturos promittentes. Quam ob rem cum perpaucis
about-to-await promising which for reason with very-few
Karolus hoc iter accelerans ab Aquitania Carisiacum venit
Charles this journey hastening from Aquitaine to-Quierzy came
et a Carbonariis et infra ad se venientes benigne
and from the-Charbonnière and below to himself coming kindly
suscepit. Extra vero Herenfridus, Gislebertus, Bovo ac ceteri
received beyond but Herenfrid Gislebert Bovo and the-others
ab Odulfo decepti, firmatam fidem neglegentes, defecerunt.
by Odulf deceived the-confirmed faith neglecting defected

News that Pippin means to attack Charles's mother calls Charles to Aquitaine, where he routs Pippin's men. Meanwhile Lothar crosses the Meuse. Hilduin of Saint Denis and Gerard of Paris desert Charles for him, and others follow, breaking their oaths rather than lose their estates. Lothar crosses the Seine, winning men by threats and flattery, and Charles hurries with his mother toward Francia.

Eodem tempore missus ab Aquitania venit nuntians, quod
at-the-same time an-envoy from Aquitaine came announcing that
Pippinus cum his qui parti suae favebant super matrem
Pippin with those who party his-own favored upon the-mother
Karoli irruere vellet; ac per hoc Karolus Francos inibi
of-Charles to-rush wished and through this Charles the-Franks there
omittens mandat, si illos frater suus, donec reverteretur,
leaving sends-word if them brother his-own until he-should-return
opprimere vellet, obviam sibi procederent. Insuper ad
to-crush should-wish to-meet him they-should-come-forward moreover to
Lodharium Hugonem, Adelhardum, Gerhardum et Hegilonem
Lothar Hugh Adalhard Gerard and Hegilo
direxit, cunctaque, quae tunc nuper illi mandaverat, replicans
he-sent and-all which then lately to-him he-had-sent-word repeating
nec non et pro Deo deprecatus est, ne suos sibi
nor not also for God entreated has lest his-men from-himself
subtrahens regnum, quod Deus paterque suo consensu
withdrawing the-kingdom which God and-the-father with-his consent
illi dederat, amplius dissipet. Et his ita compositis in
to-him had-given further he-should-scatter and these so settled into
Aquitaniam festinus perrexit superque Pippinum et suos
Aquitaine hastening proceeded and-upon Pippin and his-men
irruens fuga illos abire compulit. Per idem tempus cum
rushing in-flight them to-go-away compelled through the-same time when

Lodharius a Lodhuwico reverteretur, et omnes citra
Lothar from Louis was-returning and all on-this-side-of
Carbonarias ad illum venirent, Mosa traiecta ratum duxit, ut
the-Charbonnière to him came the-Meuse crossed right he-held that
Sequanam usque procederet. Quo dum tenderet, Hilduinus
the-Seine up-to he-should-advance whither while he-was-heading Hilduin
abbas Sancti Dyonisii et Gerardus comes Parisii civitatis
abbot of-Saint Denis and Gerard count of-Paris city
a Karolo deficientes fide frustrata ad illum venerunt.
from Charles defecting with-faith frustrated to him came
Quod quidem Pippinus filius Bernardi regis Langobardorum
which indeed Pippin son of-Bernard king of-the-Lombards
ceterique cernentes elegerunt potius more servorum fidem
and-the-others seeing chose rather in-the-manner of-slaves faith
omittere, iuramenta contempnere, quam ad modicum tempus
to-abandon oaths to-scorn than for a-short time
facultates relinquere, ac per hoc fide relicta quos supra
their-possessions to-leave and through this faith abandoned those-whom above
memoravimus secuti eidem se dederunt. Hinc quoque
we-have-mentioned having-followed to-the-same themselves gave hence also
Lodharius magnanimis effectus Sequanam excessit, praemittens
Lothar high-spirited made the-Seine crossed sending-ahead
more solito, qui ad defectionem inter Sequanam
in-the-manner accustomed men-who to defection between the-Seine
et Ligerem degentes partim minis, partim blanditiis
and the-Loire those-living partly by-threats partly by-blandishments
subducerent. Ipse quoque, uti consueverat, lento itinere
should-draw-off he-himself also as he-had-been-accustomed with-slow march
subsecutus Carnutenam civitatem tendebat. Cumque
having-followed-after Chartres city was-making-for and-when
Teodericum, Ericum et hos qui illum sequi deliberaverant
Theoderic Eric and those who him to-follow had-decided

ad se venturos didicisset, spe multitudinis suae
to himself about-to-come he-had-learned on-the-hope of-multitude his-own
fretus, Ligerem usque ut procederet, deliberavit; Karolus
relying the-Loire up-to that he-should-advance he-decided Charles
quoque a fuga, qua Pippinum et suos disperserat,
also from the-rout by-which Pippin and his-men he-had-scattered
reversus et, quoniam, matrem ubi tuto relinqueret, non
having-returned and since the-mother where safely he-might-leave not
habebat, pariter ad Franciae partes properabant.
he-had together toward of-Francia the-parts they-were-hastening

IV · THE TRUCE AT ORLÉANS

With so many deserting, Charles's men choose to die nobly rather than betray their king, and march to meet Lothar near Orléans. Lothar, hoping to win without battle, offers a truce: Charles will hold Aquitaine, Septimania, Provence, and ten counties until a meeting at Attigny in May. Charles's men accept to keep their king safe, but Lothar at once begins to suborn them.

Audiens autem Karolus interea, quod hi omnes, quos supra
hearing moreover Charles meanwhile that these all whom above
memoravimus, ab eo defecissent, et Lodharius cum ingenti
we-have-mentioned from him had-defected and Lothar with a-huge
exercitu persequi illum usque ad internitionem statuisset,
army to-pursue him all-the-way to destruction had-decided
hinc autem Pippinus et hinc Brittones infesti erant, quid
from-here moreover Pippin and from-here the-Bretons hostile were what
facerent, concilium convocant, ineunt deque his omnibus
they-should-do a-council they-convene they-enter and-about these all
deliberaturi, facile consilium perfacile inventum est. Et
about-to-deliberate an-easy counsel very-easily found was and

quoniam nihil praeter vitam et corpora reliquum habebant,
since nothing except life and bodies remaining they-had
elegerunt potius nobiliter mori quam regem proditum
they-chose rather nobly to-die than the-king betrayed
derelinquere. Quam ob rem obviam Lodhario pergunt,
to-abandon which for reason to-meet Lothar they-proceed
atque Aurilianensem urbem hinc inde petunt. Castra ponunt
and Orléans the-city hither thither seek the-camp they-pitch
distantes ab invicem plus minus leuwas VI, legatos invicem
distant from each-other more less leagues six envoys to-each-other
dirigunt; et Karolus quidem sola iusticia pacem petebat,
they-send and Charles indeed by-sole justice peace sought
Lodharius vero, quo astu absque praelio illum decipere
Lothar but by-what cunning without battle him to-deceive
ac superare posset, operam dabat. Quod cum peragere
and to-overcome he-might-be-able effort gave which when to-accomplish
strenue resistentibus diffideret, sperans vires suas, uti
vigorously with-men-resisting he-despaired hoping strength his-own as
coeperant, cotidie accrescere, quam, cum Karolo decrevissent,
they-had-begun daily to-increase than with Charles they-had-decreased
facilius illum subiugari posse arbitrabatur. Hac autem spe
more-easily him to-be-subjugated to-be-able be-reckoned by-this moreover hope
deceptus ea pactione praelium diremit, ut cederet
deceived on-that agreement the-battle he-broke-off that there-should-fall-to
Karolo Aquitania, Septimania, Provincia et decem comitatus
Charles Aquitaine Septimania Provence and ten counties
inter Ligerim et Sequanam, eo videlicet modo, ut his
between the-Loire and the-Seine in-that namely way that with-these
contentus interim inibi esset, donec Atiniacum VIII.
content meanwhile there he-should-be until to-Attigny on-the-eighth
Id. Maias conveniant; quasi quidem communi consensu
Ides of-May they-should-meet as-if indeed by-common consent

utrorumque utilitatem praevidere ac statuere velle promisit.
of-both the-advantage to-foresee and to-settle to-wish he-promised
Primores quoque partium Karoli cernentes negotium vires
the-chief-men also of-the-party of-Charles seeing the-business strength
suas excedere maximeque timebant, ne forte praelio
their-own to-exceed and-chiefly they-feared lest perhaps battle
commisso in tanta paucitate regem suum salvare difficile
joined in such fewness king their-own to-save hardly
possent — erat enim spes cunctis non modica
they-might-be-able there-was for hope to-all not small
indolis eius—; quam ob rem statutis eo tenore
of-the-character of-him which for reason to-the-terms on-that footing
consentiunt, ut deinceps Lodharius Karolo ita fidus amicus
they-agree that thereafter Lothar to-Charles so faithful friend
sit, sicut frater per iusticiam fratri esse debet, et
should-be as a-brother through justice to-a-brother to-be ought and
regna, quae illi deputabat, quieta habere faceret
the-kingdoms which to-him he-was-assigning undisturbed to-have should-cause
ac interim super Lodhuvicum hostiliter ire dedisset;
and meanwhile upon Louis in-hostile-fashion to-go should-have-allowed
aliter autem iure quod iuraverant absoluti esse deberent.
otherwise moreover from-the-right which they-had-sworn released to-be they-ought
Qua quidem arte et regem suum a periculis subtrahunt
by-which indeed art both king their-own from dangers they-withdraw
et se mox a sacramento absolvunt. Nam antequam
and themselves soon from the-oath they-release for before
idem, qui haec iuraverant, domo egrederentur,
the-same-men who these-things had-sworn from-the-house went-out
aliquos ex his qui aderant subducere ab illo temptavit et in
some of those who were-present to-draw-away from him he-tried and on
crastinum quosdam suorum recepit. Insuper et in regna,
the-morrow certain-ones of-his-men received moreover also into the-kingdoms

quae illi deputaverat, statim direxit et, in quantum potuit,
which to-him he-had-assigned at-once he-sent and in as-far-as he-could
ne illi se subderent, perturbavit et, ut e Provincia
lest to-him themselves they-should-submit he-disturbed and that from Provence
ad se venientes exciperet, perrexit et, quemadmodum
to him coming he-might-receive proceeded and how
Lodhuwicum dolo an vi superare posset, intendit.
Louis by-guile or by-force to-overcome he-might-be-able he-aimed

V · BERNARD, THE BRETONS, AND THE COUNCIL

At Orléans Charles welcomes Theobald, Warin, and some Burgundians. Bernard of Septimania puts him off, pleading an oath to Pippin, and when he fails again at Bourges, Charles falls upon him; Bernard escapes, then returns in humility and is forgiven. Nominoë of the Bretons swears fealty. Remembering Lothar's broken oaths, Charles's council resolves that he go to Attigny and, if refused justice, fight.

Interea Karolus Aurilianensem urbem veniens Teotbaldum et
meanwhile Charles to-Orléans the-city coming Theobald and
Warinum cum quibusdam e Burgundia ad se venientes
Warin with certain-men from Burgundy to himself coming
gratanter ac benigne excepit. Hinc autem obviam Bernardo,
gladly and kindly received from-here moreover to-meet Bernard
sicut mandaverat, Nivernensem urbem petit. Sed Bernardus
as he-had-sent-word Nevers the-city seeks but Bernard
more solito ad illum venire distulit dicens se cum
in-the-manner accustomed to him to-come put-off saying himself with
Pippino suisque sacramento firmasse, ut neuter absque
Pippin and-his-men by-oath to-have-confirmed that neither without
alterius consensu cum quolibet quodcumque pactum inire
the-other's consent with anyone any agreement to-enter

deberet; quam ob rem testatus est ad illos se ire velle,
ought which for reason testified he-has to them himself to-go to-wish
et si efficere posset, ut una secum sui devenirent,
and if to-bring-about he-could that together with-himself his-men should-come
bene; sin aliter, soluto iuramento infra dies quindecim
well but-if otherwise released the-oath within days fifteen
ad illum reversurum suaeque ditioni se commissurum
to him about-to-return and-to-his dominion himself about-to-commit
esse promisit. Quam ob rem Karolus Bituricas iterum
to-be he-promised which for reason Charles to-Bourges again
obviam illi venit. Quo Bernardus veniens cum neutrum
to-meet him came whither Bernard coming when neither
fecisset, graviter Karolus ferens seductiones, quas patri
he-had-done heavily Charles bearing the-deceptions which to-the-father
fecerat et actenus illi faciebat, timens, ne aliter illum
he-had-done and up-to-now to-him was-doing fearing lest otherwise him
comprehendere posset, subito in illum irruere statuit.
to-seize he-might-be-able suddenly upon him to-rush decided
Sed hoc Bernardus, quanquam tarde, praesensit, fugam
but this Bernard although late perceived flight
iniit ac vix evasit. Karolus autem quosdam e suis
entered-on and scarcely escaped Charles moreover certain-ones of his-men
stravit, quosdam saucios ac semivivos reliquit, quosdam vero
laid-low certain-ones wounded and half-dead left certain-ones but
inlesos cepit ac more captivorum custodiri praecepit,
unharmed took and in-the-manner of-captives to-be-guarded commanded
suppellectilem autem universam diripere permisit. Hinc quoque
the-baggage moreover all to-plunder allowed hence also
Bernardus humilior effectus paulo post supplex ad Karolum
Bernard humbler made a-little afterward suppliant to Charles
venit, dicens et fidelem se illi fuisse et tunc, si
came saying both faithful himself to-him to-have-been and then if

liceret, esse voluisset, et deinceps, quanquam hac
it-were-permitted to-be would-have-wished and thereafter although with-this
contumelia affectus esset, in futurum fore minime
insult afflicted he-had-been in the-future about-to-be by-no-means
diffideret; quod etsi quilibet aliter dicere vellet, armis
he-doubted which even-if anyone otherwise to-say should-wish by-arms
se hoc propulsurum promittit. Quibus Karolus credulus
himself this about-to-repel he-promises to-which Charles believing
effectus ditatum muneribus et gratia in societatem amicitiae
made enriched with-gifts and favor into the-fellowship of-friendship
suscepit et, ut Pippinum ac suos, uti promiserat, subditos
received and that Pippin and his-men as he-had-promised subject
sibi efficere temptaret, direxit. Et his ita compositis
to-himself to-make he-might-try he-sent and these so settled
Cenomannicam urbem adiit Lantbertum Ericumque una
Le-Mans the-city he-approached Lambert and-Eric together
cum ceteris recepturus. Cumque ille illos inibi perhumane
with the-others about-to-receive and-when he them there very-courteously
reciperet, protinus ad Nomenoium ducem Brittanniorum
received at-once to Nominoë the-duke of-the-Bretons
mittit scire cupiens, si suae se ditioni subdere vellet.
he-sends to-know wishing if to-his himself dominion to-submit he-would-wish
Qui adquiescens consiliis plurimorum Karolo munera mittit
who assenting to-the-counsels of-very-many to-Charles gifts sends
ac sacramento fidem deinceps servandam illi firmavit.
and by-oath faith thereafter to-be-kept to-him confirmed
Quibus peractis, quoniam tempus placiti, quod Attiniacum
which completed since the-time of-the-assembly which at-Attigny
condixerant, appropinquare videbatur, quid consulte ac solida
they-had-agreed to-approach seemed what prudently and with-firm
fide sibi suisque agere oporteret, Karolus anxius erat. Ergo
faith for-himself and-his-men to-do it-was-fitting Charles anxious was therefore

participes secretorum convocat, rem omnibus notam replicat
the-sharers of-his-secrets he-convenes the-thing to-all known he-repeats
ac, quemammodum a tanta calamitate congruentius se
and how from so-great calamity more-fittingly himself
suosque exui posse existimarent, ut aperiretur, deposcit;
and-his-men to-be-freed to-be-able they-might-judge that it-be-disclosed he-asks
seque in omnibus publice utilitati et parere velle, insuper
and-himself in all-things to-the-public good both to-obey to-wish moreover
etiam, si oporteret pro ea mortem subire, minime differre
also if it-were-fitting for it death to-undergo by-no-means to-delay
fatetur. Quibus cum undique vires crevisse viderentur,
he-confesses to-whom since on-all-sides the-strength to-have-grown seemed
reminiscentes insidiarum, quas Lodharius temporibus patris
recalling the-plots which Lothar in-the-times of-father
sui patri et Karolo inferre studuerat, quas etiam
his-own against-the-father and Charles to-bring had-been-eager which also
post obitum patris fratribus suis absque remedio
after the-death of-the-father against-brothers his-own without remedy
struebat — occurrebant insuper sacramenta, quae tunc nuper
he-was-building there-occurred moreover the-oaths which then lately
fefellerat—, aiebant se omnem iusticiam ab eo libenter
he-had-broken they-said themselves all justice from him gladly
consequi velle, sed his inditiis nil boni sperare posse;
to-obtain to-wish but from-these signs nothing of-good to-hope to-be-able
idcirco sibi undique consultum videri, quocumque modo
therefore to-themselves on-all-sides advisable to-seem in-whatever way
posset, ad condictum placitum venire minime differret;
he-could to the-agreed assembly to-come by-no-means he-should-delay
quodsi frater suus, uti promiserat, communem utilitatem
but-if brother his-own as he-had-promised the-common good
quaerere ac statuere vellet, hoc omnibus notis placere et, ut
to-seek and to-settle would-wish this to-all known to-please and that

gratanter reciperetur, congruum esse; sin aliter, fretus iusticia
gladly it-be-received fitting to-be but-if otherwise relying on-justice
ac per hoc auxilio divino suorumque fidelium et, quicquid
and through this on-the-help divine and-of-his-own faithful-men also whatever
regni pater suus amborumque fidelium consensu illi
of-the-kingdom father his-own and-of-both faithful-men with-the-consent to-him
dederat, obtinere omni virtute non neglegat.
had-given to-hold with-all might not he-should-neglect

VI · THE CROSSING OF THE SEINE

Charles summons the Aquitanians and his mother. At the flooded Seine he finds Lothar's counts guarding the river, with the boats destroyed and the bridges broken. Merchant ships carried upriver by the tide are found near Rouen; Charles mans twenty-eight of them, and the guards flee. He rescues Warin, pursues the rebels through the forest of Othe, and reaches Troyes after Holy Thursday.

Ergo omnes Aquitanos, qui suae parti favebant, una
therefore all the-Aquitanians who his-own party favored together
cum matre post se venire praecepit, insuper, quicumque
with the-mother after himself to-come he-commanded moreover whoever
e Burgundia nec non et inter Ligerem et Sequanam
from Burgundy nor not also between the-Loire and the-Seine
sui iuris esse vellent, similiter fecit. Idem autem ipse
of-his-own right to-be wished likewise he-did the-same moreover he-himself
una cum his qui per praesens aderant, quanquam difficile
together with those who at-the present were-there although difficult
videretur, prefatum iter arripuit. Cumque Sequanam venisset,
it-seemed the-aforesaid journey took-up and-when the-Seine he-had-come
repperit Guntboldum, Warnarium, Arnulfum, Gerardum nec
he-found Guntbold Warner Arnulf Gerard nor

non et omnes a Carbonariis et infra comites, abbates,
not also all from the-Charbonnière and below counts abbots
episcopos, ob hoc videlicet a Lodhario inibi relictos,
bishops for this namely by Lothar there left
ut, si absque suo consensu transire vellet, minime
that if without their consent to-cross he-should-wish by-no-means
posset. Accedebat insuper, quod amnis inundans vada
he-could there-was-added moreover that the-river flooding the-fords
ubique denegaverat, custodes autem fluminis omnes naves
everywhere had-denied the-guards moreover of-the-river all ships
aut contriverant aut certe submerserant, Gerardus quoque
either had-smashed or at-least had-sunk Gerard also
pontes, quoscumque repperit, destruxit. Igitur supra modum
bridges whatever he-found destroyed therefore beyond measure
transitus difficilis effectus non modicam transire cupientibus
the-crossing difficult made not small to-cross to-those-wishing
inportabat molestiam. Cum autem tot difficultatibus
brought trouble when moreover by-so-many difficulties
animi multimodis agitarentur consiliis, tandem mercatorum
the-minds by-manifold were-tossed counsels at-last of-merchants
naves ab hostio, quo Sequana mare influit, ferventi
ships from the-mouth by-which the-Seine into-the-sea flows by-boiling
estu abductae propterque Rotomacensem urbem expositae
tide carried-off and-near Rouen the-city put-ashore
nunciantur. Quo veniens harum duas minus de XXX^ta^
are-announced whither coming of-these two less than thirty
Karolus armato milite complet, idemque ingressus praemittit,
Charles with-armed soldiery fills and-the-same having-entered sends-ahead
qui se venturum prenuntient, unicuique volenti delicta
men-who himself about-to-come should-announce to-each-one willing the-offenses
cedens, nolentibus autem, ut habeant regnumque a
yielding to-the-unwilling moreover that they-should-depart and-the-kingdom by

Deo sibi datum illi relinquant. Quae dum sprevissent,
God to-himself given to-him they-should-leave which while they-had-scorned
classisque appropinquare videretur, crucem, in qua iuraverant,
and-the-fleet to-approach seemed the-cross on which they-had-sworn
et Karolum ut cognoverunt, relicto littore protinus fugerunt.
and Charles as they-recognized left the-shore at-once fled
Quos, quoniam in traiciendo equi moram fecerant, consequi
whom since in crossing the-horses delay had-made to-pursue
nequibat, ad Sanctum Dyonisium laudis obsecrationisque
he-could-not to Saint Denis of-praise and-of-prayer
causa iter direxit; quo veniens comperit, quod hi, quos
for-the-sake the-journey directed whither coming he-learned that those whom
fuga disperserat, in unum una cum Arnulfo et Gerardo
by-flight he-had-scattered into one together with Arnulf and Gerard
ceterisque coissent et super Teutbaldum, Warinum, Otbertum
and-the-others had-gathered and upon Theobald Warin Otbert
ceterosque, qui, uti mandatum fuerat, ad Karolum veniebant,
and-the-others who as commanded it-had-been to Charles were-coming
irruere vellent. Quam ob rem ad Sanctum Germanum
to-rush wished which for reason to Saint Germain
causa orationis perrexit ac per totam noctem iter
for-the-sake of-prayer he-proceeded and through the-whole night the-journey
faciens aurora delucescente, ubi Luva Sequane confluit,
making at-dawn growing-light where the-Loing with-the-Seine flows-together
Warinum cum sociis salvum recepit. Ac sic uno eodemque
Warin with companions safe he-received and so by-one and-the-same
itinere Senonicam adiit urbem. Hinc noctu consurgit
journey Sens he-approached the-city from-here by-night he-rises
per Uttam iter faciens speransque, uti nuntiatum
through the-Othe the-journey making and-hoping as announced
illi fuerat, quos supra memoravimus in eodem saltu
to-him it-had-been those-whom above we-have-mentioned in the-same forest

consistere; disposuerat enim, ubicumque et qualitercumque
to-be-stationed he-had-arranged for wherever and however
posset, supra illos irruere. Quod et utique fecisset, nisi
he-could upon them to-rush which also certainly he-would-have-done unless
sollicitis vitae mors inminens pro foribus nunciaretur; quam
to-the-anxious for-life death impending at the-doors were-announced which
ob rem poene cuncti supra modum exterriti, quo quisque
for reason almost all beyond measure terrified wherever each-one
valuit, fugam iniit; quos quoniam Karolus consequi non
was-able flight entered-on whom since Charles to-pursue not
potuit sociis equisque fessis, coenam Domini quieti
could with-companions and-horses tired the-supper of-the-Lord to-rest
indulgens Tricasinorum civitatem in crastinum adiit.
granting of-Troyes the-city on the-morrow he-approached

VII · LOUIS DRIVEN INTO BAVARIA

Meanwhile Lothar, advised by Otgar of Mainz and Count Adalbert of Metz, who hate Louis, crosses the Rhine with a huge army and wins over many of Louis's men by threats and flattery. The rest flee, and Louis withdraws into Bavaria with a few. Lothar leaves Adalbert to bind the people by oath and to stop Louis from joining Charles, and marches against Charles, intending to celebrate Easter at Aachen.

Eodem tempore, dum haec quae premisimus a Karolo
at-the-same time while these-things which we-have-set-forth by Charles
exsequerentur, Lodharius, uti praefatum est, dolo an vi
were-being-carried-out Lothar as said-before it-was by-guile or by-force
Lodhuvicum aut subdere aut, quod mavult, perdere posset,
Louis either to-subdue or what he-prefers to-destroy he-might-be-able
tota mente tractabat. In quo negotio congrue Otgarium
with-the-whole mind was-considering in which business fittingly Otgar

Magontiae sedis episcopum et Adhelbertum Metensium
of-Mainz of-the-see bishop and Adalbert of-the-people-of-Metz
comitem convocat; habebat enim uterque Lodhuvicum
count he-summons had for each Louis
ad mortem usque exosum. Iam enim Adhelbertus ex
to death all-the-way hated already for Adalbert from
infirmitate, qua poene per annum detentus fuerat, velut in
the-sickness by-which almost through a-year held he-had-been as-if as
supplementum fratricidii respiraverat; erat enim eo in tempore
support of-fratricide had-revived he-was for that in time
ita prudens consilio, ut sententiam ab eo prolatam non quilibet
so prudent in-counsel that the-opinion by him brought-forth not anyone
mutare vellet. Cuius instinctu Lodharius collectam hinc inde
to-change would-wish whose at-instigation Lothar a-gathered hither thither
infinitam multitudinem Renum traiecit, praemittens more
boundless multitude the-Rhine took-across sending-ahead in-the-manner
solito qui minis blanditiisque pendulam plebem subducere
accustomed men-who with-threats and-blandishments the-wavering people to-draw-off
temptarent. Timens autem populus, qui cum Lodhuwico
should-try fearing moreover the-people which with Louis
erat, ne tantum exercitum ferre valeret, partim defecti ad
was lest so-great an-army to-bear it-might-be-able partly defected to
Lodharium transeunt, partim fugam ineunt ac Lodhuwicum
Lothar cross-over partly flight enter-on and Louis
desolatum relinquunt. Qui, quoniam omne suffragium aliud
desolate leave who since all support other
undique deerat, cum perpaucis abiit et in Baioariam se
on-all-sides was-lacking with very-few departed and into Bavaria himself
recepit. Quod quoniam Lodhuwico contigit, minime deinceps
betook which since to-Louis it-happened by-no-means thereafter
Lodharius aliquid illum praevalere putavit. Igitur Adhelbertum
Lothar at-all him to-prevail thought therefore Adalbert

ducem, quem supra memoravimus, ob hoc inibi reliquit, ut et
the-duke whom above we-have-mentioned for this there he-left that both
populum sacramentis sibi firmaret, et, si Lodhuwicus ad
the-people by-oaths to-himself he-might-bind and if Louis to
Karolum ire vellet, nullo modo posset. Ipse vero, quoniam
Charles to-go should-wish in-no way he-could he-himself but since
Karolum Sequanam transire reppererat, obviam ire parabat.
Charles the-Seine to-cross he-had-found to-meet to-go was-preparing
Velociter quidem praemittit rei veritatem, ubi et cum
swiftly indeed he-sends-ahead of-the-thing the-truth where and with
quibus esset, scire cupiens, Aquis pascha celebraturus.
whom he-was to-know wishing at-Aachen Easter about-to-celebrate

VIII · THE CROWN ARRIVES AT EASTER

On Holy Saturday, when Charles and his men have nothing but the clothes they wear, envoys arrive from Aquitaine with his crown and vestments, carried safely through lands full of plunderers. All take it as a sign of God's favor. Lothar's envoys complain that Charles has crossed Lothar's borders; Charles replies that Lothar has broken every promise, and goes to the meeting place, where Lothar delays.

Mira sane ac merito notanda res Karolo in eodem
wonderful truly and deservedly to-be-noted a-thing to-Charles on the-same
sancto sabbato contigit. Nam neque ipse nec quilibet in
holy Saturday happened for neither he-himself nor anyone in
suo comitatu quicquam absque quod corpore gerebant et
his-own retinue anything except what on-the-body they-wore and
absque armis et equis habebant; cumque de balneo quidem
except arms and horses had and-when from the-bath indeed
egrederetur et eadem vestimenta, quae exuerat, induere
he-was-coming-out and the-same clothes which he-had-taken-off to-put-on

pararet, repente ab Aquitania missi pro foribus adstiterant,
was-preparing suddenly from Aquitaine envoys at the-doors had-stood
qui coronam et omnem ornatum, tam regium quam et
who the-crown and all the-adornment as-much royal as also
quicquid ad cultum divinum pertinebat, ferebant. Quis non
whatever to the-worship divine pertained were-bringing who not
miretur paucos et poene ignotos viros tot terrarum
would-wonder few and almost unknown men so-many of-lands
spacia, dum ubique omnes rapine insisterent, tot talenta
spaces while everywhere all to-plunder were-devoted so-many talents
auri gemmarumque infinitam multitudinem ferre inlesos
of-gold and-of-jewels a-boundless multitude to-carry unharmed
valuisse? et, quod maxime mirandum fateor fore, qualiter
to-have-been-able and what chiefly to-be-wondered-at I-confess to-be how
ad definitum locum vel certe ad statutam diem et horam
to the-appointed place or at-least to the-fixed day and hour
venire poterant, cum nec idem Karolus, ubi se suosque
to-come they-could when not-even the-same Charles where himself and-his-men
oporteret, sciebat. Quem quidem eventum haud aliter
it-behooved knew which indeed event by-no-means otherwise
quam munere ac nutu divino visum est evenire potuisse;
than by-the-gift and nod divine seemed it-has to-happen to-have-been-able
ac per hoc commilitonibus stuporem iniecit omnesque
and through this on-the-fellow-soldiers astonishment it-cast and-all
maximam ad spem salutis erexit. Hinc vero Karolus cunctaque
greatest to hope of-safety it-raised hence but Charles and-all
cohors exultans ad festa celebranda sese convertit.
the-company exulting to the-feast to-be-celebrated themselves turned
Expleto autem quod ceperat, missos Lodharii benigne
completed moreover what he-had-begun the-envoys of-Lothar kindly
excipiens convivari una secum praecepit; quibus et, ut in
receiving to-feast together with-himself he-commanded to-whom also that on

crastinum redirent, iniunxit, per suos se responsurum
the-morrow they-should-return he-enjoined through his-men himself about-to-answer
de eo, quod frater suus illi mandaverat, promittens.
about that which brother his-own to-him had-sent-word promising
In legatione vero Lodharii quaerebatur, cur absque suo
in the-embassy but of-Lothar it-was-asked why without his
consensu terminos, quos illi statuerat, excederet; et, quia
consent the-borders which to-him he-had-set he-crossed and because
fecerat, saltem, ubicumque illum repperirent, mandat, ut
he-had-done-so at-least wherever him they-might-find he-sends-word that
interim eo loco quiescat, donec illi mandaretur, si ad
meanwhile in-that place he-should-rest until to-him it-be-sent-word whether to
statutum locum an alio, ubi congruentius illi videretur,
the-appointed place or elsewhere where more-fittingly to-him it-might-seem
venire deberet. Karolus per suos econtra se ob hoc
to-come he-ought Charles through his-men in-reply himself for this
statutos terminos excessisse respondit, quoniam de omnibus
the-appointed borders to-have-crossed answered since of all
bonis sua ex parte illi promissis ac iureiurando firmatis
good-things his from side to-him promised and by-oath confirmed
nihil stabile esse permisit. Nam suorum hominum ultra quod
nothing stable to-be he-allowed for of-his-own men beyond what
firmatum fuerat sollicitatos quosdam suo iuri adiecit,
confirmed had-been stirred-up certain-ones to-his-own right he-added
quosdam vero vita privavit, insuper regna, quae subiecta
certain-ones but of-life he-deprived moreover the-kingdoms which subject
illi efficere debuit, in quantum valuit, perturbavit et, quod
to-him to-make he-ought in as-far-as he-was-able he-disturbed and what
maximum est, in fratrem hostiliter irruit nec non et
greatest is upon the-brother in-hostile-fashion he-rushed nor not also
suffragium a paganis illum quaerere compulit. Verumtamen,
support from pagans him to-seek he-compelled nevertheless

quanquam se haec ita haberent, in conventum, quod
although themselves these-things so had into the-assembly which
communi consensu statuerant, venire se velle mandavit;
by-common consent they-had-appointed to-come himself to-wish he-sent-word
ubi si communem utilitatem, uti promiserat, quaerere ac
where if the-common good as he-had-promised to-seek and
statuere vellet, sibi placere; sin aliter, de regno,
to-settle he-would-wish to-himself to-please but-if otherwise about the-kingdom
quod Deus paterque suus suorum consensu illi dederat,
which God and-father his-own of-his-men with-the-consent to-him had-given
consiliis suorum fidelium in omnibus secundum Dei
to-the-counsels of-his-own faithful-men in all-things according-to of-God
voluntatem parere se innotuit. Et his ita compositis
will to-obey himself he-made-known and these so settled
idem iter arripuit atque ad praefatum locum pridie
the-same journey he-took-up and at the-aforesaid place the-day-before
quam convenerat praevenit. Quo quidem Lodharius veluti
than it-had-been-agreed arrived-first whither indeed Lothar as-if
ex consulto venire distulit, verumtamen missos variis
from design to-come delayed nevertheless envoys with-various
querimoniis refertos frequenter mittebat et, ne forte ex
complaints filled frequently he-was-sending and lest perhaps from
inproviso Karolus supra illum irruere posset, cavebat.
the-unforeseen Charles upon him to-rush might-be-able he-was-on-guard

Louis sends word that he will help Charles. A minority's view that Charles should first meet his mother and the Aquitanians prevails, and at Châlons he learns that Louis has defeated Adalbert and crossed the Rhine. Lothar claims Charles is fleeing, and Charles marches to meet him. The two brothers meet and send bishops and nobles to beg Lothar for peace, offering everything but their horses and arms.

Interea legati a Lodhuvico venerant nunciantes, quod, si
meanwhile envoys from Louis had-come announcing that if
sciret, quomodo fieri posset, in illius adiutorium venire
he-knew how to-be-done it-could into his help to-come
vellet. Quo se Karolus et indigere respondit, gratias
he-would-wish for-which himself Charles also to-need answered thanks
congruae voluntati egit et, ut hoc accelerare studerent,
for-the-fitting will he-gave and that this to-hasten they-should-be-eager
protinus praefatos missos remisit. Cumque quattuor vel eo
at-once the-aforesaid envoys he-sent-back and-when four or than-that
amplius dies inibi adventum Lodharii praestolaretur, et ille
more days there the-arrival of-Lothar he-awaited and he
venire differret, contionem advocat, concilium iniit, quidnam
to-come delayed an-assembly he-calls a-council he-entered what
consultius deinceps illi agendum videretur, deliberaturus.
more-advisably thereafter by-him to-be-done might-seem about-to-deliberate
Quidam autem aiebant, quoniam mater sua una cum
certain-ones moreover said since mother his-own together with
Aquitaniis veniebat, obviam illi ire debere; sed maxima pars
the-Aquitanians was-coming to-meet her to-go ought but the-greatest part
aut obviam Lodhario iter arripere suadebant, aut certe,
either to-meet Lothar the-march to-take-up urged or at-least
ubicumque vellet, adventum illius praestolari debere dicebant;
wherever he-wished the-arrival of-him to-await ought said

ob hoc quidem maxime, quoniam, si quoquo modo aliorsum
for this indeed chiefly since if in-any way elsewhere
iter flectere coepisset, cuncti fugam illum inisse
the-march to-turn he-had-begun all flight him to-have-entered-on
iactarent, et hinc Lodharium et suos audentiores fieri
would-boast and hence Lothar and his-men bolder to-become
debere, atque hi, qui adhuc causa timoris neutri se
ought and those who still by-reason of-fear to-neither themselves
copulaverant, ad illum affluere undique sperabant; quod
had-joined to him to-stream from-all-sides they-expected which
et evenit. Nam, quamquam difficile, praevaluit tamen
also happened for although with-difficulty it-prevailed yet
sententia priorum; quam ob rem Cadhellonicam Karolus
the-opinion of-the-former which for reason Châlons Charles
adiit urbem, ibique matre una cum Aquitaniis recepta
approached the-city and-there the-mother together with the-Aquitanians received
repente nunciatur, quod Lodhuvicus cum Adhelberto duce
suddenly it-is-announced that Louis with Adalbert duke
Austrasiorum praelio commisso vicisset Renoque traiecto
of-the-Austrasians battle joined had-conquered and-the-Rhine crossed
ob illius adiutorium, quantocius posset, veniret. Quod
for his help as-quickly-as he-could was-coming which
cum otius universis castris omnibus notum fieret,
when more-quickly in-the-whole camp to-all known it-became
cuncti alacri animo, ut illi obviam irent, suadebant.
all with-eager mind that him to-meet they-should-go urged
Lodharius quoque ut haec ita se habere deprehendit,
Lothar also when these-things so themselves to-have he-discovered
circumfusae plebi Karolum fugam inisse persequique
to-the-surrounding people Charles flight to-have-entered-on and-to-pursue
illum, quantocius posset, velle denuntiat; quo quidem
him as-quickly-as he-could to-wish announces by-which indeed

nuntio fidos sibi alacriores reddidit, dubiis autem
news the-faithful to-himself more-eager he-rendered on-the-doubtful moreover
quibusque et affluendi audaciam iniecit et firmiores
all both of-streaming-to-him boldness he-cast and firmer
suae parti reddidit. Cumque Karolus a Lodhario persequi
to-his party rendered and-when Charles by Lothar to-be-pursued
se didicisset, quoniam in difficili loco aquis paludibusque
himself he-had-learned since in a-difficult place by-waters and-marshes
circumfusis castra posuerant, ut absque qualibet difficultate,
surrounded the-camp they-had-placed that without any difficulty
si Lodharius vellet, congredi possent, protinus obviam
if Lothar wished to-engage they-might-be-able at-once to-meet
illi perrexit. Quae quidem Lodhario ut nuntiata sunt,
him he-proceeded which indeed to-Lothar when announced they-were
castra posuit ac veluti fessis equis biduo requiem dedit.
the-camp he-placed and as-if to-the-tired horses for-two-days rest gave
Iterato itaque cum haec eadem fecissent missosque
a-second-time and-so when these same-things they-had-done and-envoys
invicem frequenter mitterent, sed nihil proficui deliberare
to-each-other frequently were-sending but nothing of-profit to-decide
possent, tandem appropinquantes Lodhuvicus et Karolus
could at-last approaching Louis and Charles
conveniunt deque his omnibus in eodem conventu, quae
meet and-about these all in the-same meeting which
Lodharius absque quolibet moderamine erga se suosque
Lothar without any restraint against themselves and-their-men
seviebat, dolendo conferunt, quidve deinceps agendum
was-raging-in in-grieving they-confer and-what thereafter to-be-done
oportunius videretur, in crastinum deliberaturi. Aurora
more-opportunely might-seem on the-morrow about-to-deliberate at-dawn
siquidem delucescente conveniunt, concilium ineunt, in quo
indeed growing-light they-meet a-council they-enter in which

multum de tanta calamitate conquirunt. Cumque alteruter,
much about so-great a-calamity they-complain and-when each
que quantave et qualia passi a fratre fuerant,
what and-how-great and what-sort-of-things suffered from the-brother they-had
referre desissent, universis visum unanimiter parique
to-relate had-ceased to-all it-seemed unanimously and-with-equal
consensu, tam ex sacrosancto ordine episcoporum quam
consent as-much from the-sacrosanct order of-the-bishops as
et laicorum viros nobiles, prudentes, benivolos deligant,
also of-the-laymen men noble prudent well-disposed they-should-choose
per quos, quae pater inter illos statuerat, et quae post
through whom what the-father between them had-established and what after
obitum patris ab illo passi sint, mandent, insuper
the-death of-the-father from him suffered they-have they-should-send-word moreover
obsecrent, ut memor sit Dei omnipotentis et concedat
they-should-beseech that mindful he-be of-God almighty and grant
pacem fratribus suis universeque ecclesiae Dei; cederet
peace to-brothers his-own and-to-the-whole church of-God he-should-yield
cuique, quod patris fratrisque consensu iuste debebatur;
to-each what of-the-father and-of-the-brother with-the-consent justly was-due
insuper etiam, ut iustis precibus acquiesceret, offerrent illi
moreover also that to-just prayers he-might-assent they-should-offer to-him
quicquid absque equis et armis in universo exercitu habere
whatever except horses and arms in the-whole army to-have
videbantur. Et si his monitis obsecrationibusque acquiescere
they-seemed and if to-these warnings and-entreaties to-assent
vellet, placere; sin aliter, aiebant se divino ex munere
he-would-wish to-please but-if otherwise they-said themselves divine from gift
suffragium absque dubio sperare posse, si omne quod iustum
support without doubt to-hope to-be-able if all which just

est vellent et hoc fratri offerre humiliter studerent.
is they-wished and this to-the-brother to-offer humbly they-were-eager
Quae quoniam merito rata videbantur, protinus expleta sunt.
which since deservedly ratified seemed at-once fulfilled were

X · THE BATTLE OF FONTENOY

Lothar refuses and goes to meet Pippin. Louis and Charles overtake him near Auxerre and follow him to Fontenoy, offering everything but horses and arms, then part of each kingdom, then an equal share of Francia; he plays for time until Pippin arrives. On 25 June Louis routs Lothar at Brittas, Nithard fights at Solennat, and at last Lothar's whole army flees.

Sed haec veluti pro nihilo ducta Lodharius sprevit, per
but these-things as-if for nothing held Lothar scorned through
suos se nihil absque prelio velle mandavit confestimque
his-men himself nothing without battle to-wish sent-word and-at-once
obviam Pippino, qui ab Aquitania ad illum veniebat, iter
to-meet Pippin who from Aquitaine to him was-coming the-march
arripuit. Quod cum otius didicissent Lodhuwicus et
took-up which when more-quickly they-had-learned Louis and
sui, supra modum rem graviter ferentes — erant
his-men beyond measure the-thing heavily bearing they-were
enim undique graviter tam itineris longitudine quam
for on-all-sides heavily as-much of-the-march by-the-length as
et proeliis variisque difficultatibus et maxime equorum
also by-battles and-by-various difficulties and chiefly of-the-horses
inopia attriti—, verumtamen, quanquam se haec ita
by-the-want worn-down nevertheless although themselves these-things so
haberent, timentes, ne forte, si ab auxilio fratris frater
had fearing lest perhaps if from the-help of-the-brother the-brother

deficeret, posteris suis indignam memoriam reliquissent;
should-fail to-posterity their-own an-unworthy memory they-would-have-left
quod quidem ne facerent, elegerunt omni penuriae, etiam,
which indeed lest they-should-do they-chose every hardship even
si oporteret, morti potius subire quam nomen invictum
if it-were-fitting death rather to-undergo than the-name unconquered
amittere. Quam ob rem ex eadem magnanimitate mestitia
to-lose which for reason from the-same magnanimity sadness
oppressa, invicem se adortantes, gaudentes velociterque, ut
overcome each-other themselves exhorting rejoicing and-swiftly that
Lodharium cito consequi possent, ibant. Cumque atque
Lothar quickly to-overtake they-might-be-able they-went and-when and
insperate propter urbem Alciodorensem uterque exercitus alter
unexpectedly near the-city of-Auxerre each army the-one
ab altero videretur, confestim Lodharius verens, ne forte
by the-other was-seen at-once Lothar fearing lest perhaps
fratres sui absque dilatione supra se irruere vellent,
brothers his-own without delay upon himself to-rush should-wish
armatus castra aliquantulum excessit. Quod quoniam fratres
armed the-camp a-little left which since the-brothers
sui facere illum cognoverunt, quosdam castra metantes
his-own to-do him knew certain-men the-camp measuring-out
relinquunt, quosdam secum armatos assumunt et absque
they-leave certain-men with-themselves armed they-take and without
dilatione obviam procedunt; missos invicem mittunt
delay to-meet-him advance envoys to-each-other they-send
pacemque sub nocte componunt. Castra autem ab invicem
and-peace under night settle the-camps moreover from each-other
distabant plus minus leuvas tres, et intererat paucula
were-distant more less leagues three and there-lay-between a-little
palus saltusque; ac per hoc erat utrique ad alterum
marsh and-woodland and through this there-was for-each to the-other

difficilis accessus. Quapropter aurora delucescente Lodhuwicus
difficult approach wherefore at-dawn growing-light Louis
et Karolus ad Lodharium mittunt, mandant sibi valde
and Charles to Lothar send they-send-word to-themselves greatly
displicere, quod illis pacem absque proelio denegaverat; quod
to-displease that to-them peace without battle he-had-denied which
etiam, quoniam vellet, et absque qualibet fraude, si fieri
also since he-wished and without any fraud if to-be-done
deberet, esset. Et primum quidem ieiuniis ac votis Deum
it-must it-should-be and first indeed with-fasts and vows God
invocent, deinde, si ille transire ad illos voluisset, locum
they-should-invoke then if he to-cross to them should-have-wished a-place
transeundi se daturos promittunt, ut omni inpedimento
of-crossing themselves about-to-give they-promise that with-all hindrance
sua suorumque ex parte ablato absque qualibet occulta
their-own and-of-their-men from side removed without any hidden
deceptione congredi possent; quae et, si vellet, sacramento
deception to-engage they-might-be-able which also if he-wished by-oath
firmare praeceperunt, at si nollet, ut eadem illis
to-confirm they-directed but if he-were-unwilling that the-same to-them
concederet atque firmare rogaret, petunt. Is autem more
he-should-grant and to-confirm he-should-ask they-request he moreover in-the-manner
solito per suos se responsurum promisit et, ut
accustomed through his-men himself about-to-answer promised and as-soon-as
legati regressi sunt, protinus obviam iter arripuit ac
the-envoys returned have at-once to-meet-them the-march took-up and
locum, quo castra poneret, Fontaneum petit. Eadem
a-place where the-camp he-might-place Fontenoy seeks on-the-same
autem die fratres sui post Lodharium iter accelerantes
moreover day the-brothers his-own after Lothar the-march hastening
antecesserunt illum et propter vicum quod Tauriacus dicitur
went-ahead-of him and near the-village which Thury is-called

castra posuerunt. Crastina die exercitus praeparati ad proelium
the-camp placed on-the-next day the-armies prepared for battle
castra aliquantulum excesserunt. Praemittentes Lodhuwicus ac
the-camp a-little left sending-ahead Louis and
Karolus Lodhario mandaverunt, ut memor esset fraternae
Charles to-Lothar sent-word that mindful he-be of-the-brotherly
conditionis, sineret ecclesiam Dei et universum populum
relation he-should-allow the-church of-God and the-whole people
Christianum pacem habere, concederet illis regna a patre
Christian peace to-have he-should-grant them the-kingdoms by the-father
suo consensu concessa, haberet sua sibi non
with-his consent granted he-should-have his-own-things to-himself not
merito, sed sola misericordia a patre illi relicta. Et in
by-merit but sole by-mercy by the-father to-him left and as
munere offerebant illi quicquid in universo exercitu absque
gift they-offered to-him whatever in the-whole army except
armis et equis habere videbantur; at si id nollet,
arms and horses to-have they-seemed but if this he-were-unwilling
cedebant illi uterque portionem regni, alter usque
they-yielded to-him each a-portion of-the-kingdom the-one up-to
Carbonarias, alter vero usque Renum; quod et si rennueret,
the-Charbonnière the-other but up-to the-Rhine which also if he-should-refuse
universam Franciam aequa lance dividerent, et quicquid
the-whole Francia with-equal balance they-should-divide and whichever
horum vellet suae ditionis esset. Ad quod Lodharius
of-these he-wished of-his-own dominion should-be to which Lothar
more solito per suos se quicquid placeret notare
in-the-manner accustomed through his-men himself whatever might-please to-note
respondit, mittensque per presens Drogonem, Hugonem
answered and-sending at-the present Drogo Hugh
et Hegibertum mandat non illos aliquid tale antea illi
and Hegibert he-sends-word not them anything such before to-him

mandasse, ad quod considerandum spatium habere se
to-have-sent-word for which to-be-considered time to-have himself
velle aiebat; re autem vera Pippinus non venerat, illum
to-wish he-said in-reality moreover true Pippin not had-come him
hac dilatione expectare volebat. Verumtamen Ricuinum,
by-this delay to-wait-for he-wished nevertheless Ricwin
Hirmenaldum et Fredericum sacramento firmare praecepit,
Hirmenald and Frederic by-oath to-confirm he-directed
quod pro nulla re alia has indutias peteret, praeter quod
that for no thing other this truce he-sought except that
commune profectum tam illorum quam et universae plebis,
the-common advantage as-much of-them as also of-the-whole people
sicut iusticiam inter fratres et populum Christi oportebat,
as justice between brothers and the-people of-Christ required
quaerere volebat. Quo quidem sacramento Lodhuvicus et
to-seek he-wished by-which indeed oath Louis and
Karolus creduli effecti, ea die et in crastinum, insuper
Charles believing made on-that day and on the-morrow moreover
etiam usque in horam secundam diei tercii, quod evenit
also up-to into the-hour second of-the-day third which fell
VII. Kal. Iulii, pace utrorumque ex parte iureiurando
on-the-seventh Kalends of-July peace of-both from side by-oath
firmata, ad castra redeunt, missam vero sancti Iohannis
confirmed to the-camp return the-mass but of-saint John
in crastinum celebraturi. Pippino quoque eadem die
on the-morrow about-to-celebrate Pippin also on-the-same day
Lodharius in supplementum recepto mandat fratribus suis,
Lothar as support received sends-word to-brothers his-own
quoniam scirent illi imperatoris nomen magna auctoritate
since they-knew to-him of-emperor the-name with-great authority
fuisse impositum, ut considerent, quatenus eiusdem
to-have-been imposed that they-should-consider how-far of-the-same

nominis magnificum posset explere officium; insuper
name the-magnificent he-might-be-able to-fulfill office besides
autem haut se libenter utrorumque querere profectum.
moreover not himself gladly of-both to-seek the-advantage
Interrogati autem, si quiddam horum, quae mandaverant,
asked moreover if anything of-these-things which they-had-sent-word
recipere vellet vel si quamlibet finitivam sententiam
to-accept he-would-wish or if any final sentence
illis mandasset, nihil sibi horum fuisse iniunctum
to-them he-had-sent-word nothing to-themselves of-these to-have-been enjoined
responderunt. Quam ob rem cum omnis spes iusticiae ac
they-answered which for reason since all hope of-justice and
pacis sua ex parte ablata videretur, mandant illi, si
of-peace his from side removed seemed they-send-word to-him if
melius non invenisset, aut reciperet unum horum, quae
better not he-should-have-found either he-should-accept one of-these which
illi mandaverant, aut nosset illos in crastinum — quod
to-him they-had-sent-word or he-should-know them on the-morrow which
contigit, sicut praefatum est, VII. Kal. Iulii — hora
fell as said-before it-was on-the-seventh Kalends of-July at-the-hour
videlicet diei secunda, ad omnipotentis Dei iudicium, quod
namely of-the-day second to of-almighty God the-judgment which
illis absque illorum voluntate mandaverat, esse venturos.
to-them without their will he-had-sent-word to-be about-to-come
Quae quidem Lodharius solito more insolenter sprevit
which indeed Lothar in-the-accustomed manner insolently scorned
et visuros se, quid agere deberet, respondit. Dum
and about-to-see themselves what to-do he-ought answered while
haec super Ligerim iuxta Sanctum Fludualdum consistens
these-things above the-Loire near Saint Cloud staying
scriberem, ecclipsis solis hora prima feria [tertia],
I-was-writing an-eclipse of-the-sun at-the-hour first on-the-day third

XV. Kal. Novembris in Scorpione contigit. His
on-the-fifteenth Kalends of-November in Scorpio happened these
ita omissis diluculo Lodhuvicus et Karolus consurgunt,
so left-aside at-daybreak Louis and Charles rise
verticem montis castrae Lodharii contigui cum tertia,
the-top of-the-mountain to-the-camp of-Lothar adjoining with a-third
ut videtur, exercitus parte occupant adventumque eius et
as it-seems of-the-army part they-occupy and-the-arrival of-him and
horam secundam, ut sui iuraverant, exspectant. Cumque
the-hour second as his-men had-sworn they-await and-when
utrumque adesset, proelium super rivolum Burgundionum
each was-at-hand battle above the-brook of-the-Burgundians
magno certamine committunt. Et Lodhuvicus quidem ac
with-great struggle they-join and Louis indeed and
Lodharius in loco qui Brittas dicitur strenue confligunt;
Lothar in the-place which Brittas is-called vigorously clash
quo superatus Lodharius terga vertit. Pars autem exercitus,
where overcome Lothar the-back turned the-part moreover of-the-army
quam Karolus in loco qui Fagit vulgo dicitur excepit,
which Charles in the-place which Fagit commonly is-called met
protinus fugit; pars vero, quae in Solennat Adhelardum
at-once fled the-part but which at Solennat Adalhard
ceterosque, quibus haud modicum supplementum Domino
and-the-others to-whom not small support the-Lord
auxiliante prebui, appetiit, strenue conflixit; quo et utrique
helping I-gave attacked vigorously clashed where also both
vicerunt, sed novissime omnes a parte Lodharii fugerunt.
conquered but at-last all from the-side of-Lothar fled
Qua finem primi certaminis dedit Lodharius, terminetur
where the-end of-the-first struggle gave Lothar let-be-ended
liber secundus.
the-book second

BOOK III

PREFACE

Nithard is ashamed to tell of evil in his own family and had meant to end the work with Book II. But lest anyone, misled, give a false account of what happened in their time, he adds a third book about the events he witnessed.

Quoniam sinistrum me quiddam ex genere nostro ut
since sinister me something from family our that
audiam pudet, referre praesertim quam maxime piget;
I-should-hear it-shames to-relate especially as most it-grieves
quam ob rem imperio haudquaquam malivole contempto,
which for reason the-command by-no-means maliciously scorned
ut finis optatus libri secundi affuit, per omnia
when the-end wished-for of-the-book second was-at-hand in all
finire hoc opus animus decrevit; sed ne forte quilibet
to-finish this work the-mind decided but lest perhaps anyone
quocumque modo deceptus res nostro in tempore gestas,
in-whatever way deceived the-things our in time done
praeterquam exactae sunt, narrare praesumat, ex his
otherwise-than done they-were to-narrate should-presume from those-things
quibus interfui tertium libellum ut adderem acquievi.
at-which I-was-present a-third little-book that I-should-add I-have-agreed

The kings, pitying their brother and the people, do not pursue the fleeing army, hoping God's judgment will bring Lothar to his senses. They spend Sunday on the field, bury friend and foe alike, and offer pardon to the fugitives. The bishops declare that the brothers fought for justice alone, order secret penance for any who fought from anger, and proclaim a three-day fast.

Proelio quidem, uti praefatum est, strenue peracto, quid
the-battle indeed as said-before it-was vigorously completed what
de palantibus peragere deberetur, Lodhuvicus et Karolus in
about the-scattered to-carry-out ought Louis and Charles on
eodem campo deliberare coeperunt. Et quidam ira correpti
the-same field to-deliberate began and certain-men by-anger seized
persequi hostes suadebant, quidam autem, et maxime reges,
to-pursue the-enemies urged certain-men but and chiefly the-kings
miserantes fratris plebisque et, ut iudicio Dei et hac
pitying the-brother and-the-people and that by-the-judgment of-God and by-this
plaga repressi ab iniqua cupiditate resipiscerent, et
blow checked from wicked greed they-might-come-to-their-senses and
Deo donante deinceps unanimes in vera iusticia devenirent,
God granting thereafter of-one-mind into true justice might-come
piis visceribus solito more optabant. In quo negotio
with-pious heart in-the-accustomed manner wished in which business
Dei omnipotentis misericordia ut prestolaretur, suadebant.
of-God almighty the-mercy that it-be-awaited they-urged
Quibus cetera multitudo assentientes a proelio et praeda
to-whom the-rest multitude assenting from battle and plunder
discesserunt et fere mediante die ad castra redeunt, quid
departed and almost at-mid day to the-camp return what
deinceps consultius acturum videretur, deliberaturi. Fuit
thereafter more-advisably about-to-do might-seem about-to-deliberate there-was

quidem ingens numerus praedae et ingens cedes et insuper
indeed a-huge number of-plunder and huge slaughter and moreover
ammirabilis, immo et merito notabilis misericordia tam
a-wonderful nay also deservedly notable mercy as-much
regum quam et universorum. Nam diversis pro rebus
of-the-kings as also of-all for diverse for reasons
diem dominicum inibi acturos se deliberarunt. In quo
the-day Lord's there about-to-spend themselves they-decided on which
missa peracta amicos et inimicos, fideles et infideles pariter
the-mass completed friends and enemies faithful and unfaithful alike
sepulturae tradebant, plaga correptos ac semivivos eodem
to-burial they-delivered by-the-blow seized and half-dead in-the-same
modo pro viribus ex animo refovebant. Post hos qui fuga
way according-to strength from the-heart they-tended after these who by-flight
evaserant miserunt offerentes, si reverti sana fide vellent,
had-escaped they-sent offering if to-return with-sound faith they-wished
omnia delicta remitti. Post haec reges populique super
all the-offenses to-be-forgiven after these-things the-kings and-the-peoples over
fratre populoque Christiano dolentes percontari episcopos
the-brother and-the-people Christian grieving to-question the-bishops
coeperunt, quid agere super hoc negotio deberent. Quam
began what to-do over this business they-ought which
ob rem unanimes ad concilium omnes episcopi confluunt,
for reason of-one-mind to the-council all the-bishops stream-together
inventumque in conventu publico est, quod pro sola iusticia et
and-found in the-assembly public it-was that for sole justice and
aequitate decertaverint, et hoc Dei iuditio manifestum
equity they-had-fought-it-out and this of-God by-the-judgment manifest
effectum sit, ac per hoc inmunis omnis Dei minister
made has-been and through this free-of-guilt every of-God minister
in hoc negotio haberi, tam suasor quam et effector,
in this business to-be-held as-much the-adviser as also the-doer

deberetur; at quicumque consciens sibi aut ira aut
ought but whoever conscious to-himself either by-anger or
odio aut vana gloria aut certe quolibet vitio quiddam in hac
by-hatred or by-vain glory or at-least by-any vice anything in this
expeditione suasit vel gessit, esset vere confessus secrete
expedition advised or did he-should-have truly confessed secretly
secreti delicti et secundum modum culpe diiudicaretur;
of-the-secret offense and according-to the-measure of-the-fault should-be-judged
verumtamen in veneratione ac laude tantae declarationis
nevertheless in veneration and praise of-so-great a-declaration
iusticiae pro remissione delictis mortuorum fratrum suorum
of-justice for remission for-the-offenses of-dead brothers their-own
— in eo, quod inperfecti peccatis intervenientibus se
in that that imperfect with-sins intervening themselves
noverant, ut in multis volentes nolentesque delinquebant —
they-knew as in many-things willing and-unwilling they-offended
ut suo adiutorio ab his exuti liberarentur; insuper autem, uti
that by-his help from these stripped they-might-be-freed besides moreover as
actenus in iusticia adiutor et protector illis Deus extitit, ita
up-to-now in justice helper and protector to-them God stood so
ut deinceps ubique existeret; proque his omnibus triduanum
that thereafter everywhere he-might-stand and-for these all a-three-day
ieiunium inventum immoque libenter ac celebre celebratum est.
fast found nay gladly and solemnly celebrated was

Louis makes for the Rhine and Charles for Aquitaine. Bernard of Septimania, who kept out of the battle, sends his son William to commend himself to Charles. But with the danger past, men go home; Pippin puts off a treaty, and the Franks, told that Charles has fallen, put off submitting. At Reims Charles learns that Louis cannot meet him because Lothar threatens his kingdom.

His ita reor peractis Lodhuwicus, ut Renum peteret,
these so I-think completed Louis that the-Rhine he-should-seek
decrevit, Karolus autem diversis pro rebus et maxime
decided Charles moreover diverse for reasons and chiefly
propter Pippinum, ut illum sibi subdere studeret, in
on-account-of Pippin that him to-himself to-subdue he-might-strive into
Aquitaniam ut proficisceretur, ratum duxit. Nam Bernardus
Aquitaine that he-should-set-out right he-held for Bernard
dux Septimaniae, quanquam a loco praedicti proelii
the-duke of-Septimania although from the-place of-the-aforesaid battle
plus minus leuvas tres defuerit, neutri in hoc negotio
more less leagues three he-was-away to-neither in this business
supplementum fuit; victoriam autem ut Karoli esse didicit,
support was the-victory moreover when Charles's to-be he-learned
filium suum Willelmum ad illum direxit et, si honores, quos
the-son his-own William to him sent and if the-honors which
idem in Burgundia habuit, eidem donare vellet, ut se
the-same in Burgundy had to-the-same to-give he-would-wish that himself
illi commendaret, praecepit. Insuper iactabat se posse
to-him he-should-commend he-directed moreover he-boasted himself to-be-able
nec non et aiebat, quod Pipinum una cum suis Karolo
nor not also he-said that Pippin together with his-men to-Charles
foedere, quo valeret, subdere vellet. Quam legationem
by-the-treaty by-which he-might-be-able to-subject he-wished which embassy

benigne excepit et, sicut postulaverat, per omnia concessit,
kindly he-received and as he-had-asked in all-things granted
monens, ut de Pippino et suis quod promiserat, in
warning that about Pippin and his-men what he-had-promised in
quantum posset, ut perficeretur, operam daret. Cumque
as-far-as he-could that it-be-accomplished effort he-should-give and-when
adversa undique propulsa viderentur, ac spes prosperitatis
adversities on-all-sides driven-off seemed and hope of-prosperity
cuique hinc inde faveret, Lodhuwicus cum suis Renum
each bither thither favored Louis with his-men the-Rhine
petiit, Karolus vero una cum matre Ligerim adiit. Res
sought Charles but together with the-mother the-Loire approached the-state
autem publica inconsultius, quam oporteret, omissa; quo
moreover public more-thoughtlessly than it-ought dropped where
quemque voluntas rapuit, perfacile omissus abscessit. Quod
each-one the-will snatched very-easily dropped went-off which
quidem Pippinus audiens paulo ante desideratum cum illo
indeed Pippin hearing a-little before desired with him
foedus inire distulit. Bernardus quidem ad illum venit, sed,
a-treaty to-enter delayed Bernard indeed to him came but
ut illi se commendaret, minime acquievit. Quidam tamen
that to-him himself he-should-commend by-no-means agreed certain-men yet
a Pipino desciverunt, et hoc tantum praefata expeditio
from Pippin revolted and this only the-aforesaid expedition
Karolo profuit, quod illos sibi foederatos recepit. Interea
to-Charles profited that them to-himself allied he-received meanwhile
Adhelardus ceterique, quos Karolus ad Francos direxerat
Adalhard and-the-others whom Charles to the-Franks had-sent
scire cupiens, si ad illum reverti vellent, Carisiacum
to-know wishing if to him to-return they-would-wish to-Quierzy
venientes, quo illi ut missos dirigeret mandaverant,
coming where to-him that envoys he-should-send they-had-sent-word

perpaucos obviam habuerunt; qui hoc dicebant, si idem
very-few to-meet-them had who this said if the-same
Karolus ad praesens esset, ad illum venire minime
Charles at-the present were to him to-come by-no-means
differrent; aliter autem nescire aiebant, utrum viveret an
they-would-delay otherwise moreover not-to-know they-said whether he-lived or
non. Iactaverant enim hi qui partis Lodharii sentiebant
not had-boasted for those who of-the-party of-Lothar sided
in proelio Karolum cecidisse, Lodhuvicum vulneratum et
in the-battle Charles to-have-fallen Louis wounded and
fuga lapsum abisse. Quapropter inconsultum aiebant in
by-flight escaped to-have-gone-off wherefore unadvised they-said in
incertis rebus aliquod foedus cum quolibet inire debere.
uncertain affairs any treaty with anyone to-enter to-be-obliged
At Guntboldus ceterique coadunati supra praefatos Karoli
but Guntbold and-the-others gathered-together upon the-aforesaid of-Charles
missos irruere se simulabant, et utique fecissent,
envoys to-rush themselves pretended and certainly they-would-have-done
si ausi essent. Quapropter ad Karolum Adhelardus et
if dared they-had wherefore to Charles Adalhard and
ceteri miserunt mandantes, ut, quantotius posset, venire
the-others sent sending-word that as-quickly-as he-could to-come
satageret, quatinus et illis adiutorium praeberet et, si
he-should-take-pains so-that both to-them help he-might-furnish and if
Franci, uti aiebant, ad illum venire vellent, scire posset.
the-Franks as they-said to him to-come wished to-know he-might-be-able
Ipsi vero Parisiacam civitatem adeunt adventum Karoli
they-themselves but Paris the-city approach the-arrival of-Charles
praestolaturi. Quod cum Karolo nunciaretur, protinus his in
about-to-await which when to-Charles was-announced at-once these into
partibus iter direxit. Ad Sequanam autem ut pervenit,
parts the-journey he-directed to the-Seine moreover when he-arrived

Adhelardum una cum ceteris in Spedonna obviam habuit,
Adalhard together with the-others at Épône to-meet-him had
et quanquam propter conventum, quod cum fratre in
and although on-account-of the-meeting which with the-brother at
Lingonicam urbem Kal. Sept. condixerat, quoniam
Langres the-city on-the-Kalends of-September he-had-agreed since
imminebat, anxius esset, ratum duxit, ut saltem citato cursu
it-was-imminent anxious he-was right he-held that at-least at-swift pace
per urbem Belvacensem ac deinde per Compendium
through the-city of-Beauvais and then through Compiègne
et Suessionis, hinc per Remensem et Cadelonensem
and Soissons hence through Reims and Châlons
Lingonicam peteret urbem, quatinus eo tenore id, quod
Langres he-should-seek the-city so-that on-that footing that which
cum fratre statuerat, observare studeret et, si quilibet
with the-brother he-had-established to-keep he-might-strive and if any
e Francis ad illum venire vellet, posset. Franci vero eandem
of the-Franks to him to-come wished he-could the-Franks but the-same
paucitatem, quam et Aequitanii spreverant, spernentes
fewness which also the-Aquitanians had-scorned scorning
variis fictionibus illi se per praesens subdere
with-various pretenses to-him themselves for-the present to-submit
distulerunt. Quod ut Karolus cognovit, praefatum iter
delayed which when Charles learned the-aforesaid journey
accelerare coepit *** Remensem urbem petiit; quo cum
to-hasten he-began (lacuna) Reims the-city sought whither when
venisset, nuncium recepit, quod Lodhuvicus ad conventum,
he-had-come news he-received that Louis to the-meeting
quod in Lingonicam urbem condixerant, venire non posset,
which at Langres the-city they-had-agreed to-come not could
eo quod Lodharius in regnum illius hostili manu irruere
for-this that Lothar into the-kingdom of-him with-hostile hand to-rush

vellet; mandaverant etiam Huc avunculus eius nec non et
wished they-had-sent-word also Hugh the-uncle of-him nor not also
Gislebertus comes Mansuariorum, si in illis partibus isset,
Gislebert the-count of-the-Maasgau if into those parts he-went
ad illum se una cum ceteris esse venturos.
to him themselves together with the-others to-be about-to-come

III · THE SEINE RISES

Charles goes to meet his supporters at Saint Quentin and Maastricht. Lothar turns against him and comes to Saint Denis meaning to cross the low autumn Seine, but Charles guards the fords, and the river, though it has not rained for two months, suddenly rises and blocks every crossing. Lothar offers peace if Charles abandons Louis; Charles refuses, and Lothar goes to Sens.

Ergo tam pro fratris adiutorio quam et, ut hos, si
therefore as-much for the-brother's help as also that these if
ad illum venire vellent, recipere posset, ad Sanctum
to him to-come they-wished to-receive he-might-be-able to Saint
Quintinum iter direxit. Quo quidem Hugonem, sicut
Quentin the-journey he-directed where indeed Hugh as
mandaverat, obviam habuit et inde in partes Traiecti
he-had-sent-word to-meet-him had and thence into the-parts of-Maastricht
iter direxit. Lodharius autem, ut haec audivit,
the-journey he-directed Lothar moreover when these-things he-heard
omisso Lodhuvico, quem paulo ante persequi statuerat, a
dropped Louis whom a-little before to-pursue he-had-decided from
Warmatia ad conventum, quod Teotonis-villam indixerat,
Worms to the-assembly which at-Thionville he-had-proclaimed
iter arripuit et, qualiter super Karolum irrueret,
the-journey took-up and how upon Charles he-might-rush

intendit. Quod cum Karolus in Wasiticum didicisset,
he-aimed which when Charles in the-Wasgau had-learned
Hugonem et Adhelardum ad Gislebertum una cum ceteris,
Hugh and Adalhard to Gislebert together with the-others
[quos] foedere, quo valerent, sibi adnecterent, direxit.
whom by-the-treaty by-which they-could to-himself they-might-bind he-sent
Rabanonem etiam ad Lodhuvicum dirigens mandat, qualiter
Rabanus also to Louis sending he-sends-word how
pro suo adiutorio illis in partibus isset, quod Lodharius
for his help those into parts he-had-gone which Lothar
audiens, illo omisso, supra se cum omnibus copiis ire
hearing him dropped upon himself with all forces to-go
pararet, monensque ac deprecatur, ut, quantotius posset,
was-preparing and-warning and entreats that as-quickly-as he-could
solito more adiutorium illi praebere studeret.
in-the-accustomed manner help to-him to-furnish he-should-strive
Insuper autem Exemenonem venerabilem episcopum ad
besides moreover Hemmo the-venerable bishop to
Lodharium direxit, solito more humiliter praecepit, ut
Lothar he-sent in-the-accustomed manner humbly he-directed that
roget, ut obsecret, meminerit, quod frater filiolusque
he-should-ask that he-should-beseech he-should-remember that brother and-godson
eius sit; meminerit, quae pater inter illos statuerat,
of-him he-is he-should-remember what the-father between them had-established
quae tam is quam et sui inter illos iuraverant;
what as-much he as also his-men between them had-sworn
meminerit, quod novissime iudicio Dei inter illos
he-should-remember that most-recently by-the-judgment of-God between them
voluntas eius declarata sit; et si horum omnium recordare
the-will of-him declared has-been and if these all to-recall
nolit, cesset a persecutione sanctae Dei ecclesiae,
he-be-unwilling he-should-cease from the-persecution of-the-holy of-God church

misereatur pauperum, viduarum orfanorumque et regnum
he-should-pity the-poor the-widows and-orphans and the-kingdom
a patre suo consensu sibi datum ut ingrediatur
by the-father with-his consent to-himself given that he-enter
omittat, ne forte iterato populum Christianum ad
he-should-give-up lest perhaps a-second-time the-people Christian to
cedem mutuam confluere compellat. Et his ita compositis
slaughter mutual to-stream-together he-compel and these so settled
idem ipse Parisiacam urbem adiit tam fratris sui
the-same he-himself Paris the-city approached as-much of-brother his-own
Lodhuvici adventum quam et ceteros fideles suos, quos
Louis the-arrival as also the-other faithful-men his-own whom
undique convocaverat, praestolaturus. Quod cum Lodharius
from-all-sides he-had-summoned about-to-await which when Lothar
didicisset, ad eandem urbem iter direxit; habebat enim
had-learned to the-same city the-journey directed he-had for
tam Saxonum quam et Austrasiorum nec non et de
as-much of-the-Saxons as also of-the-Austrasians nor not also of
Alamannis partem haud modicam secum, horumque
the-Alamanni a-part by-no-means small with-himself and-of-these
auxilio praemaxime confisus ad Sanctum Dyonisium venit.
on-the-help very-greatly trusting to Saint Denis came
Reppererat autem inibi naves plus minus XX^{ti}; insuper
he-had-found moreover there ships more less twenty moreover
quoque Sequana, uti mense Septembrio solet, exigua erat
also the-Seine as in-the-month of-September it-is-wont low was
transitumque perfacilem praestabat. Quam ob rem iactabant
and-a-crossing very-easy offered which for reason boasted
se sui facile transire posse et hoc utique simulabant
themselves his-men easily to-cross to-be-able and this certainly pretended
se maxime velle. Ergo Karolus quosdam Parisium et
themselves chiefly to-wish therefore Charles certain-men Paris and

Milidonem custodiri praecepit, quosdam vero, ubicumque
Melun to-be-guarded commanded certain-men but wherever
vada vel navigia esse noverat, residere fecit; ipse vero e
fords or vessels to-be he-knew to-stay he-caused he-himself but from
regione Sancti Dyonisii iuxta Sanctum Fludualdum castra in
opposite of-Saint Denis near Saint Cloud the-camp in
meditullio posuit, ut et Lodhario, si ita oporteret, transitum
the-middle placed that both to-Lothar if so it-were-fitting the-crossing
prohibere aut, si alicubi super suos irruere vellet, illis
to-forbid or if anywhere upon his-men to-rush he-should-wish to-them
succurrere posset. Et ut perfacile dinosceretur, quo
to-run-to-help he-might-be-able and that very-easily it-might-be-discerned what
in loco adiutorium praeberi deberet, more maritimo
in place help to-be-furnished ought in-the-manner of-the-sea
signa in locis congruis atque custodias deputavit. Insuper
signals in places suitable and guards he-assigned besides
autem Sequana, mirabile dictu! dum nos nusquam eo in
moreover the-Seine wonderful to-say while we nowhere that in
tempore infra duos menses pluvias esse novimus, repente
time within two months rains to-have-been know suddenly
aere sereno tumescere coepit ac sponte his in locis
the-air being-clear to-swell began and of-its-own-accord these in places
vada ubique prohibuit. Cumque haec ita se haberent,
fords everywhere forbade and-when these-things so themselves had
cernens Lodharius transitum inibi undique sibi prohibitum,
seeing Lothar the-crossing there on-all-sides to-himself forbidden
eo tenore cum Karolo pacem inire se velle mandavit, ut
on-that footing with Charles peace to-enter himself to-wish sent-word that
foedus, quod Karolus cum fratre suo Lodhuvico sacramentis
the-treaty which Charles with brother his-own Louis by-oaths
firmaverat, omisisset, et ille econtra foedus, quod
had-confirmed he-should-have-dropped and he in-turn the-treaty which

cum Pippino nepote suo similiter sacramentis firmaverat,
with Pippin nephew his-own likewise by-oaths he-had-confirmed
omitteret; et haberet Karolus a Sequana partem occiduam
he-should-drop and should-have Charles from the-Seine the-part western
absque Provinciam et Septimaniam, essentque quasi pace
without Provence and Septimania and-they-should-be as-if by-peace
perpetua foederati. Re autem vera sic se utrosque
perpetual allied in-reality moreover true so himself both
facilius decipere posse putabat omneque imperium hac
more-easily to-deceive to-be-able he-thought and-the-whole empire by-this
arte invadere sperabat. At Karolus respondit se foedus,
art to-invade he-hoped but Charles answered himself the-treaty
quod cum fratre suo necessitate coactus inierat, minime
which with brother his-own by-necessity compelled he-had-entered by-no-means
violare velle; insuper ut a Mosa usque Sequanam regnum,
to-violate to-wish moreover that from the-Meuse up-to the-Seine the-kingdom
quod pater illi dederat, nequaquam congruum videretur,
which the-father to-him had-given by-no-means fitting it-seemed
ut illi obmitteret, praesertim cum tanta nobilitas illum
that to-him he-should-give-up especially since so-great a-nobility him
secuta de his regionibus esset, quos in sua fide deceptos
followed from these regions had whom in his-own faith deceived
esse minime oporteret. Quam ob rem, quoniam hiemps
to-be by-no-means it-was-fitting which for reason since winter
aderat, haberet quique honores, quos pater illis dederat,
was-at-hand let-them-have each-one the-honors which the-father to-them had-given
si vellet, mandavit, donec veris tempore, vellent cum
if he-wished he-sent-word until of-spring in-the-time whether-they-wished with
paucis, vellent cum omni comitatu, omnes conveniant et,
few or-they-wished with all retinue all should-meet and
ni statutis aut statuendis concordia concurrat, quid
unless in-the-things-established or to-be-established concord should-concur what

cuique debeatur, armis decernant. Quae quidem Lodharius
to-each is-due by-arms they-should-decide which indeed Lothar
more solito sprevit et a Sancto Dionysio obviam
in-the-manner accustomed scorned and from Saint Denis to-meet
Pippino, qui ab Aquitania ad illum veniebat, Senones
Pippin who from Aquitaine to him was-coming to-Sens
iter direxit; Karolus autem econtra, qualiter Lodhuvicum
the-journey directed Charles moreover in-turn how Louis
in adiutorium suum recipere posset, intendit.
into help his-own to-receive he-might-be-able aimed

IV · LAON

Charles's sister Hildegard has seized one of his men at Laon. Charles rides all night through the frost; the citizens give the man back and promise to surrender, and he keeps his soldiers from sacking the city and forgives his sister. Lothar marches against Charles's men in the Perche without success and returns worn out. Charles crosses into Alsace, and Otgar, who has barred Louis's way, flees.

Interea nunciatum est Karolo, quod soror sua Hildigardis
meanwhile announced it-was to-Charles that sister his-own Hildegard
Adelgarium quendam ex suis captum haberet et in urbe
Adelgar a-certain of his-men captured held and in the-city
Laudunensi una secum custodiri fecisset. Qua pro re
of-Laon together with-herself to-be-guarded had-caused which for reason
expeditos ad hoc opus Karolus sibi delegit ac protinus
men-unencumbered for this work Charles for-himself chose and at-once
decedente iam die his in partibus festinus perrexit;
departing already the-day these in parts hastening proceeded
distabat enim urbs eadem plus minus leuvas XXX^ta^.
was-distant for the-city same more less leagues thirty

Per totam siquidem noctem iter faciens impediente
through the-whole indeed night the-journey making hindering
gelu praevalido, hora fere diei tercia insperate subito
the-frost very-strong at-the-hour about of-the-day third unexpectedly suddenly
sorori et civibus cum infinita multitudine nunciatur
to-the-sister and to-the-citizens with a-boundless multitude it-is-announced
Karolus adesse, omnisque urbs militibus circumdata fore.
Charles to-be-at-hand and-the-whole city with-soldiers surrounded about-to-be
Quo quidem nuncio exterriti, quoniam nec evadendi nec
by-which indeed news terrified since neither of-escaping nor
aderat spes moenia tuendi, pacem sub una eademque
was-there hope the-walls of-defending peace under one and-the-same
nocte petunt, Adelgarium confestim reddunt et, ut se
night they-seek Adelgar at-once they-give-back and that themselves
urbemque absque conflictu in crastinum dedant,
and-the-city without conflict on the-morrow they-would-surrender
cum omni subiectione promittunt. Dum haec agerentur,
with all submission they-promise while these-things were-being-done
milites moram huius rei graviter ferentes, insuper laboris
the-soldiers the-delay of-this thing heavily bearing moreover by-weariness
tedio, quod praeterite noctis passi fuerant, permoti in
of-the-labor which of-the-past night suffered they-had moved to
excidium urbis ruere undique coeperunt; essetque
destruction of-the-city to-rush on-all-sides began and-it-would-have-been
procul dubio protinus flammis rapinisque tradita, ni
far from-doubt at-once to-flames and-plunderings handed-over unless
idem Karolus misericordia super ecclesiarum Dei sororisque
the-same Charles by-pity over the-churches of-God and-the-sister
necnon et populi Christiani permotus minis atque blanditiis
and-also also the-people Christian moved by-threats and blandishments
horum animos maximo labore compescere studuisset. Quos
their minds with-the-greatest labor to-restrain had-striven whom

cum abscedere fecisset, ut soror postulaverat, concessit
when to-withdraw he-had-caused as the-sister had-asked he-granted
et Salmonciacum ab urbe discessit. Crastina quoque die
and to-Samoussy from the-city departed on-the-next also day
Hildigardis ad fidem suam, sicut spoponderat, venit urbemque
Hildegard to the-faith his as she-had-pledged came and-the-city
inlesam et absque conflictu sui iuris restituit. Sororem suam
unharmed and without conflict to-his right restored the-sister his-own
siquidem Karolus benigne excepit et omnia quae actenus erga
indeed Charles kindly received and all-things which up-to-now against
illum deliquerat illi donavit, multisque verbis blande illam
him she-had-offended to-her he-forgave and-with-many words kindly her
allocutus omnem benignitatem, quam frater sorori debet,
having-addressed all kindness which a-brother to-a-sister owes
si deinde benivola erga illum esse vellet, ei perhumane
if thereafter well-disposed toward him to-be she-would-wish to-her very-courteously
promisit ac quo voluit illam abire concessit. Urbi sua
he-promised and where she-wished her to-go allowed to-the-city its-own
iura statuit et ad suos, quos circa Parisium omiserat,
rights he-established and to his-men whom around Paris he-had-left
his ita peractis rediit. Senones autem Lodharius Pippino
these so completed he-returned at-Sens moreover Lothar Pippin
recepto, quid agere deberet, anxius erat. Nam Karolus partem
received what to-do he-ought anxious was for Charles part
exercitus Sequanam traiecit et in saltum qui Pertica vulgo
of-the-army the-Seine took-across and into the-forest which Perche commonly
dicitur direxit. Quos quoniam Lodharius vel se vel suos
is-called sent whom since Lothar either himself or his-men
impedire timuit, primum insectari statuit. Qua quidem re
to-hinder he-feared first to-pursue decided by-which indeed thing
sperabat se et hos facile delere et hoc terrore sibi
he-hoped himself both these easily to-destroy and by-this terror to-himself

residuos subiugare maximeque Nominoium Brittannorum
the-rest to-subjugate and-chiefly Nominoë of-the-Bretons
ducem suo subdere dominatui posse. Sed frustra haec
duke his to-subject to-dominion to-be-able but in-vain these-things
omnia expleturus adiit, dum nihil horum ad effectum
all about-to-accomplish he-approached since nothing of-these to effect
perduxit. Nam exercitus Karoli omnis ab eo salvus evasit,
he-brought for the-army of-Charles all from him safe escaped
insuper ex suis neminem recepit; et Nomenoius omnia que
moreover of his-men no-one he-received and Nominoë all-things which
illi mandaverat insolenter sprevit. His ita se habentibus
to-him he-had-sent-word insolently scorned these so themselves having
repente nuntium accepit, quod Lodhuvicus et Karolus una
suddenly news he-received that Louis and Charles together
cum ingenti exercitu alter alteri studeret. Cumque se
with a-huge army the-one to-the-other was-striving and-when himself
undique rebus adversis circumseptum videret, maximo
on-all-sides by-affairs adverse hemmed-in he-saw with-the-greatest
ambitu inaniter expleto a Turones redire coepit et fatigato
circuit vainly completed from Tours to-return he-began and with-wearied
exercitu tandem fessus Franciam pervenit. Pippinus autem,
army at-last tired Francia he-reached Pippin moreover
quod se illi sociaverat, penitudine correptus Aquitaniam
because himself to-him he-had-allied by-regret seized into-Aquitaine
se recepit. Interea audiens Karolus, quod Otgarius
himself betook meanwhile hearing Charles that Otgar
Maguntiae sedis episcopus una cum ceteris Lodhuwico
of-the-Mainz see the-bishop together with the-others to-Louis
fratri suo transitum ad se prohibuisset, iter per
brother his-own the-crossing to himself had-forbidden the-journey through
Tullensem urbem accelerans Elisazam ad Zabarnam introiit;
Toul the-city hastening Alsace at Saverne he-entered

quod cum Otgarius didicisset, una cum ceteris litore
which when Otgar had-learned together with the-others the-shore
relicto abiit, et quo quisque valuit ocius se abdidit.
left went-off and wherever each-one was-able more-quickly himself bid

V · THE OATHS OF STRASBOURG

On 14 February Louis and Charles meet at Strasbourg. Each addresses the people, Louis in German and Charles in Romance; then Louis swears in Romance and Charles in German, and each people swears to aid no king who breaks the oath. Nithard notes the cold summer, the snow, and a winter comet; at Worms the kings send envoys to Lothar.

Ergo XVI. Kal. Marcii Lodhuvicus et Karolus
therefore on-the-sixteenth Kalends of-March Louis and Charles
in civitate quae olim Argentaria vocabatur, nunc autem
in the-city which formerly Argentaria was-called now moreover
Strazburg vulgo dicitur, convenerunt et sacramenta, quae
Strasbourg commonly is-called came-together and the-oaths which
subter notata sunt, Lodhuvicus Romana, Karolus vero
below noted are Louis in-the-Romance Charles but
Teudisca lingua iuraverunt. Ac sic ante sacramentum
in-the-German language swore and so before the-oath
circumfusam plebem, alter Teudisca, alter Romana
the-surrounding people the-one in-the-German the-other in-the-Romance
lingua alloquuti sunt. Lodhuvicus autem, quia maior natu,
language addressed have Louis moreover because elder by-birth
prior exorsus sic coepit: 'Quotiens Lodharius me et hunc
first having-begun thus began how-often Lothar me and this
fratrem meum post obitum patris nostri insectando usque
brother my after the-death of-father our by-pursuing all-the-way

ad internecionem delere conatus sit, nostis. Cum autem nec
to destruction to-destroy tried has you-know when moreover neither
fraternitas nec Christianitas nec quodlibet ingenium, salva
brotherhood nor Christianity nor any device saving
iusticia ut pax inter nos esset, adiuvare posset, tandem
justice that peace between us might-be to-help could at-last
coacti rem ad iuditium omnipotentis Dei detulimus, ut
compelled the-matter to the-judgment of-almighty God we-brought that
suo nutu, quid cuique deberetur, contenti essemus. In quo
by-his nod what to-each was-due content we-should-be in which
nos, sicut nostis, per misericordiam Dei victores extitimus,
we as you-know through the-mercy of-God victors emerged
is autem victus una cum suis quo valuit secessit. Hinc
he moreover conquered together with his-men where he-was-able withdrew hence
vero fraterno amore correpti nec non et super populum
but by-brotherly love seized nor not also over the-people
Christianum conpassi persequi atque delere illos noluimus,
Christian having-pitied to-pursue and to-destroy them we-were-unwilling
sed hactenus sicut et antea, ut saltem deinde cuique sua
but up-to-now as also before that at-least thereafter to-each his-own
iusticia cederetur, mandavimus. At ille post haec non
justice might-be-yielded we-sent-word but he after these-things not
contentus iudicio divino, sed hostili manu iterum et
content with-the-judgment divine but with-hostile hand again both
me et hunc fratrem meum persequi non cessat, insuper
me and this brother my to-pursue not ceases moreover
et populum nostrum incendiis, rapinis cedibusque devastat;
also the-people our with-burnings plunderings and-slaughters he-lays-waste
quam ob rem nunc necessitate coacti convenimus et,
which for reason now by-necessity compelled we-have-come-together and
quoniam vos de nostra stabili fide ac firma fraternitate
since you of our stable faith and firm brotherhood

dubitare credimus, hoc sacramentum inter nos in conspectu
to-doubt we-believe this oath between us in the-sight
vestro iurare decrevimus. Non qualibet iniqua cupiditate illecti
your to-swear we-have-decided not by-any wicked greed enticed
hoc agimus, sed ut certiores, si Deus nobis vestro adiutorio
this we-do but that surer if God to-us by-your help
quietem dederit, de communi profectu simus. Si autem,
quiet shall-have-given of the-common advantage we-may-be if moreover
quod absit, sacramentum, quod fratri meo iuravero,
which may-it-not-be the-oath which to-brother my I-shall-have-sworn
violare praesumpsero, a subditione mea nec non et
to-violate I-shall-have-presumed from subjection my nor not also
a iuramento, quod mihi iurastis, unumquemque vestrum
from the-oath which to-me you-swore each-one of-you
absolvo'. Cumque Karolus haec eadem verba Romana
I-release and-when Charles these same words in-the-Romance
lingua perorasset, Lodhuvicus, quoniam maior natu erat,
language had-finished-speaking Louis since elder by-birth he-was
prior haec deinde se servaturum testatus est: 'Pro Deo
first these-things then himself about-to-keep testified has for God's
amur et pro Christian poblo et nostro commun saluament,
love and for the-Christian people and our common salvation
d'ist di in auant, in quant Deus sauir et podir me
from-this day in forward in as-much-as God knowledge and power me
dunat, si saluarai eo cist meon fradre Karlo et in aiudha
gives so will-save I this my brother Charles both in aid
et in cadhuna cosa, si cum om per dreit son fradra
and in each thing as as one by right his brother
salvar dist, in o, quid il mi altresi fazet; et ab Ludher
to-save ought in that that he me likewise do and with Lothar
nul plaid numquam prindrai, qui meon uol cist meon
no agreement never will-I-take which by-my will this my

fradre Karle in damno sit'. Quod cum Lodhuvicus explesset,
brother Charles in harm be which when Louis had-completed
Karolus Teudisca lingua sic haec eadem verba testatus est:
Charles in-the-German language thus these same words testified has
'In Godes minna ind in thes Christanes folches ind unser
in God's love and in the Christian people's and of-us
bedhero gealtnissi, fon thesemo dage frammordes, so fram
both salvation from this day forward so far
so mir Got geuuizci indi mahd furgibit, so haldih tesan
as me God wisdom and power gives so hold-I this
minan bruodher, soso man mit rehtu sinan bruodher scal,
my brother as one by right his brother shall
in thiu thaz er mig sosoma duo; indi mit Ludheren in
in that that he me likewise do and with Lothar in
nohheiniu thing ne gegango, zhe minan uuillon imo ce
no thing not go which by-my will him to
scadhen uuerhen'. Sacramentum autem, quod utrorumque
harm become the-oath moreover which of-both
populus, quique propria lingua, testatus est, Romana
the-people each-one own in-language testified has in-the-Romance
lingua sic se habet: 'Si Lodhuuigs sagrament, quae son
language thus itself has if Louis the-oath which to-his
fradre Karlo iurat, conservat, et Karlus meos sendra de suo
brother Charles he-swears keeps and Charles my lord on his
part non lostanit, si io returnar non l'int pois, ne
part not breaks-it if I to-turn-back not him-from-it can neither
io ne neuls, cui eo returnar int pois, in nulla aiudha
I nor anyone whom I to-turn-back from-it can in no aid
contra Lodhuuuig nun li iuer'. Teudisca autem lingua:
against Louis not him will-be in-the-German moreover language
'Oba Karl then eid, then er sinemo bruodher Ludhuuuige
if Charles the oath which he to-his brother Louis

gesuor, geleistit, indi Ludhuuuig min herro, then er imo
swore keeps and Louis my lord which he to-him
gesuor, forbrihchit, ob ih inan es iruuenden ne mag,
swore breaks if I him from-it turn not can
noh ih noh thero nohhein, then ih es iruuenden mag,
neither I nor of-those any whom I from-it turn can
uuidhar Karle imo ce follusti ne uuirdhit'. Quibus peractis
against Charles to-him in help not becomes which completed
Lodhuwicus Renotenus per Spiram et Karolus iuxta
Louis as-far-as-the-Rhine through Speyer and Charles near
Wasagum per Wizzunburg Warmatiam iter direxit.
the-Vosges through Wissembourg to-Worms the-journey directed
Aestas autem, in qua praefatum exactum est prelium,
the-summer moreover in which the-aforesaid fought was the-battle
fuit frigida nimis, et omnes fruges persero collectae sunt;
was cold too-much and all the-crops very-late gathered were
autunnus vero et hiemps naturalem ordinem peregerunt. Ac
the-autumn but and the-winter the-natural order completed and
eadem die, qua praedicti fratres nec non et primores
on-the-same day on-which the-aforesaid brothers nor not also the-chief-men
populi praefatum pepigere pactum, subsequente gelu nix
of-the-people the-aforesaid made pact following frost snow
multa cecidit. Stella cometis mense Decembrio et Ianuario
much fell a-star comet in-the-month of-December and January
nec non et Februario usque praelatum conventum apparuit,
nor not also February up-to the-aforementioned assembly appeared
per Pisces centrum ascendit et inter signum, quod a
through Pisces the-center it-ascended and between the-sign which by
quibusdam Lyra, a quibusdam vero Andromeda vocatur, et
some Lyra by some but Andromeda is-called and
Arcturum obscuriorem hoc concilio expleto defecit. Haec
Arcturus dimmer this council completed it-failed these-things

paucis de temporum siderisque serie delibatis ad historiae
in-few about of-the-times and-of-the-star the-series touched-on to of-history
tramitem revertamur. — Cumque Warmatiam venissent,
the-path let-us-return and-when to-Worms they-had-come
missos deligunt, quos protinus ad Lodharium et in Saxoniam
envoys they-choose whom at-once to Lothar and into Saxony
mittunt; et horum nec non et Karlemanni adventus inter
they-send and of-these nor not also of-Carloman the-arrival between
Warmatiam et Magonciacum prestolaretur, statuunt.
Worms and Mainz should-be-awaited they-decide

VI · THE TWO KINGS

Nithard describes the kings: both of middle height, handsome, skilled in every exercise, bold, generous, prudent, and eloquent, and above all in holy concord, sharing feasts, a house, and counsel. For exercise they hold games: equal companies of Saxons, Gascons, Austrasians, and Bretons charge one another, turn, and pursue, until both kings ride out with all their young men brandishing spears. Despite the crowd and the mix of peoples, no one is hurt or insulted.

Hic quoque haudquaquam ab re, quoniam iocunda
here also by-no-means from the-matter since pleasant
ac merito notanda videntur, de qualitate horum regum
and deservedly to-be-noted they-seem about the-character of-these kings
et unanimitate, qua interea deguerint, pauca referre
and the-unanimity in-which meanwhile they-lived a-few-things to-relate
libet. Erat quidem utrisque forma mediocris cum omni
it-pleases there-was indeed to-both a-form middling with all
decore pulchra et omni exercitio apta; erat uterque audax,
grace handsome and for-every exercise fit was each bold
largus, prudens pariter et eloquens; omnemque praemissam
generous prudent equally and eloquent and-all the-aforesaid

nobilitatem excedebat fratrum sancta ac veneranda concordia.
nobility exceeded of-the-brothers the-holy and venerable concord
Nam convivia erant illis poene assidua, et, quodcumque
for feasts were to-them almost constant and whatever
precium habebant, hoc alter alteri perhumane dabat. Una
of-value they-had this the-one to-the-other very-courteously gave one
domus erat illis convivii et una somni; tractabant tam
house was to-them of-feasting and one of-sleep they-treated with-as
pari consensu communia quam et privata; non quicquam
equal consent common-matters as also private not anything
aliud quilibet horum ab altero petebat, nisi quod utile ac
else either of-these from the-other sought except what useful and
congruum illi esse censebat. Ludos etiam hoc ordine saepe
fitting for-him to-be he-judged games also in-this order often
causa exercitii frequentabant. Conveniebant autem quocumque
for-the-sake of-exercise they-frequented they-met moreover wherever
congruum spectaculo videbatur, et subsistente hinc inde omni
fitting for-a-spectacle it-seemed and standing hither thither all
multitudine, primum pari numero Saxonorum, Wasconorum,
the-multitude first with-equal number of-Saxons of-Gascons
Austrasiorum, Brittonorum, ex utraque parte, veluti invicem
of-Austrasians of-Bretons from each side as-if each-other
adversari sibi vellent, alter in alterum veloci cursu
to-oppose themselves they-wished the-one against the-other at-swift pace
ruebat. Hinc pars terga versa protecti umbonibus ad
rushed from-here the-part the-backs turned protected by-their-shields to
socios insectantes evadere se velle simulabant, at
their-companions pursuing to-escape themselves to-wish pretended but
versa vice iterum illos, quos fugiebant, persequi studebant,
turned the-tables again those whom they-were-fleeing to-pursue they-strove
donec novissime utrique reges cum omni iuventute ingenti
until at-last both kings with all the-youth with-huge

clamore equis emissis astilia crispantes exiliunt et nunc
shouting with-horses let-go spears brandishing leap-out and now
his, nunc illis terga dantibus insistunt. Eratque res digna
these now those the-backs giving they-press-on and-it-was a-thing worthy
pro tanta nobilitate nec non et moderatione spectaculo; non
for so-great nobility nor not also moderation for-a-spectacle not
enim quispiam in tanta multitudine ac diversitate generis,
for anyone in so-great a-multitude and diversity of-race
uti saepe inter paucissimos et notos contingere solet,
as often among very-few and acquaintances to-happen is-wont
alicui aut lesionis aut vituperii quippiam inferre audebat.
to-anyone either of-injury or of-abuse anything to-bring dared

VII · LOTHAR FLEES TO THE RHÔNE

Carloman brings Louis an army at Mainz, and Bardo reports that the Saxons have rejected Lothar. When Lothar puts off hearing their envoys, the brothers march against him on 17 March by three routes and meet at Koblenz, where they hear mass at Saint Castor and cross the Moselle. Lothar's guards flee, and Lothar abandons his kingdom and does not stop until he reaches the Rhône.

His ita se habentibus Karlemannus cum ingenti exercitu
these so themselves having Carloman with a-huge army
Baioariorum et Alamannorum ad patrem suum Mogontiam
of-Bavarians and of-Alamanni to father his-own to-Mainz
venit. Bardo vero, qui in Saxoniam missus fuerat, similiter
came Bardo but who into Saxony sent had-been likewise
fecit nuntians, quod Saxones mandata Lodharii sprevissent et,
did announcing that the-Saxons the-commands of-Lothar had-scorned and
quicquid Lodhuvicus et Karolus illis praeciperent, libenter id
whatever Louis and Charles to-them should-direct gladly it

facere vellent. Lodharius quoque missos, qui ad se directi
to-do they-wished Lothar also the-envoys who to himself sent
fuerant, inconsulte audire distulit, quod tam Lodhuvicus
had-been thoughtlessly to-hear put-off which as-much Louis
quam et Karolus nec non et universus exercitus aegre
as also Charles nor not also the-whole army with-displeasure
tulerunt et, qualiter idem ipsi ad illum pervenire
bore and how the-same they-themselves to him to-reach
possent, intendunt. Ergo XVI. Kal. Aprelis illis in
might-be-able they-aim therefore on-the-sixteenth Kalends of-April those in
partibus viam dirigunt, et Karolus quidem per Wasagum
parts the-way they-direct and Charles indeed through the-Vosges
iter difficile ingressus, Lodhuvicus vero terra Renoque
a-journey difficult having-entered Louis but by-land and-by-the-Rhine
per Bingam, Karlemannus autem per Einrichi ad Conflentim
through Bingen Carloman moreover through the-Einrich to Koblenz
in crastinum hora fere diei sexta venerunt; protinusque
on the-morrow at-the-hour about of-the-day sixth came and-at-once
ad Sanctum Castorem orationis causa pergunt, missam
to Saint Castor of-prayer for-the-sake they-proceed the-mass
audiunt ac deinde idem reges armati naves conscendunt et
they-hear and then the-same kings armed the-ships board and
Mosellam otius traiciunt. Quod cum Otgarius Mogontiae
the-Moselle more-quickly cross which when Otgar of-Mainz
sedis episcopus, Hatto comes, Herioldus ceterique viderunt,
of-the-see bishop Hatto the-count Heriold and-the-others saw
quos Lodharius ob hoc inibi reliquerat, ut illis transitum
whom Lothar for this there had-left that to-them the-crossing
prohibuissent, timore perterriti litore relicto fugerunt.
they-might-have-forbidden by-fear terrified the-shore left fled
Lodharius quoque, ut fratres suos Mosellam transisse in
Lothar also when brothers his-own the-Moselle to-have-crossed at

Sinciaco didicit, confestim et ipse abire et regno et
Sinzig he-learned at-once and he-himself to-depart both from-the-kingdom and
sede non destitit, donec se super ripam Rodani cum
from-the-seat not ceased until himself upon the-bank of-the-Rhône with
paucis, qui se sequi deliberaverant, ceteris omissis excoepit.
few who him to-follow had-resolved the-others dropped he-took-up
Qua finem secundi certaminis dedit Lodharius, terminetur
where the-end of-the-second struggle gave Lothar let-be-ended
liber tercius.
the-book third

BOOK IV

PREFACE

Nithard would gladly rest from writing, and his mind, full of complaints, turns over how he might withdraw from public affairs altogether. Fortune has tossed him in the storm of events, and he does not know to what harbor he will be carried. But if he finds leisure he will go on recording, as ordered, the deeds of their princes, so that at least he may clear the cloud of error from these events for posterity.

Non solum me, uti praefatum est, ab hoc opere narrationis
not only me as said-before it-was from this work of-narration
quiescere delectat, verum etiam, quo ab universa re
to-rest it-delights but also how from the-whole state
publica totus secedam, mens variis quaerimoniis referta,
public wholly I-may-withdraw the-mind with-various complaints filled
assiduis meditationibus anxia versat. Sed quoniam me
with-constant deliberations anxious turns-over but since me
de rebus universis fortuna hinc inde iunxit validisque
with affairs universal fortune hither thither has-joined and-with-strong
procellis moerentem vehit, qua portum ferar, immo
storms grieving carries to-what harbor I-may-be-borne nay
vero poenitus ignoro. Interim autem si aliquod tempus
indeed utterly I-do-not-know meanwhile moreover if some time
otiosum repperero, quid oberit, si, uti iussum est, facta
free I-shall-find what will-it-harm if as ordered it-is the-deeds
principum procerumque nostrorum stili officio memoriae
of-the-princes and-of-the-nobles our of-the-pen by-the-service to-memory
mandare curabo? Ergo huic rerum operi quarto assistam
to-entrust I-shall-take-care therefore to-this of-affairs work fourth I-shall-attend

et, si in ceteris rebus futuris prodesse nequivero, saltem
and if in other things to-the-future to-be-of-use I-shall-be-unable at-least
in his erroris nubeculam proprio labore posteris detergam.
in these of-error the-little-cloud by-my-own labor for-posterity I-shall-wipe-away

I · THE BISHOPS GIVE THE KINGDOM

At Aachen Louis and Charles refer Lothar's abandoned kingdom to the bishops. Reviewing his perjuries, his wars on his father and brothers, and the evils the Church has suffered from his greed, they declare that God has cast him out, and give the kingdom to his brothers to rule by God's will. Each king chooses twelve men, Nithard among them, to divide it.

Usque Lodhuvicus et Karolus Lodharium a regno suo
as-soon-as Louis and Charles Lothar from kingdom his-own
abisse certis indiciis cognovere, Aquis palatium, quod
to-have-gone-off by-sure signs learned to-Aachen the-palace which
tunc sedes prima Frantiae erat, petentes, sequenti vero die,
then the-seat first of-Francia was seeking on-the-following but day
quid consultius de populo ac regno a fratre relicto
what more-advisably about the-people and the-kingdom by the-brother left
agendum videretur, deliberaturi. Et quidem primum visum
to-be-done might-seem about-to-deliberate and indeed first seemed
est, ut rem ad episcopos sacerdotesque, quorum aderat
it-has that the-matter to the-bishops and-priests of-whom was-present
pars maxima, conferrent, ut illorum consultu veluti numine
the-part greatest they-should-bring that of-them by-the-counsel as-if by-power
divino harum rerum exordium atque auctoritas proderetur.
divine of-these affairs the-beginning and authority might-be-furnished
Et hoc illis, quoniam merito ratum videbatur, commissum
and this to-them since deservedly ratified it-seemed entrusted

est. Quibus ab initio gesta Lodharii considerantibus,
was who from the-beginning the-deeds of-Lothar considering
quomodo patrem suum regno pepulerit, quoties
how father his-own from-the-kingdom he-drove how-often
populum Christianum periurum sua cupiditate effecerit,
the-people Christian perjured by-his greed he-made
quoties idem ipse hoc, quod patri fratribusque
how-often the-same he-himself this which to-the-father and-brothers
iuraverat, frustraverit, quoties post patris obitum fratres
he-had-sworn he-frustrated how-often after the-father's death the-brothers
suos exhereditare atque delere temptasset, quota homicidia,
his-own to-disinherit and to-destroy he-had-tried how-many homicides
adulteria, incendia omnigenaque facinora universalis ecclesia
adulteries burnings and-all-kinds-of crimes the-universal church
sua nefandissima cupiditate perpessa sit, insuper autem
by-his most-wicked greed suffered has besides moreover
neque scientiam gubernandi rem publicam illum habere
neither the-knowledge of-governing the-state public him to-have
nec quoddam vestigium bone voluntatis in sua gubernatione
nor any trace of-good will in his government
quemlibet invenire posse ferebant. Quibus ex causis non
anyone to-find to-be-able they-reported which from reasons not
inmerito, sed iusto Dei omnipotentis iudicio primum
undeservedly but by-the-just of-God almighty judgment first
a proelio et secundo a proprio regno fugam illum
from the-battle and second from his-own kingdom flight him
inisse aiebant. Ergo omnibus unanimiter visum est
to-have-entered-on they-said therefore to-all unanimously seemed it-has
atque consentiunt, quod ob suam nequitiam vindicta Dei
and they-agree that for his wickedness the-vengeance of-God
illum eiecerit regnumque fratribus suis melioribus se
him had-cast-out and-the-kingdom to-brothers his-own better than-he

iuste ad regendum tradiderit. Verumtamen haudquaquam
justly for ruling had-handed-over nevertheless by-no-means
illis hanc licentiam dedere, donec palam illos percontati
to-them this license they-gave until openly them questioned
sunt, utrum illud per vestigia fratris eiecti an
they-have whether it through the-footsteps of-the-brother cast-out or
secundum Dei voluntatem regere voluissent. Respondentibus
according-to of-God will to-rule they-would-wish answering
autem, in quantum nosse ac posse Deus illis concederet,
moreover in as-much-as to-know and to-be-able God to-them should-grant
secundum suam voluntatem se et suos gubernare
according-to his will themselves and theirs to-govern
et regere velle aiunt: 'Et auctoritate divina, ut illud
and to-rule to-wish they-say and by-authority divine that it
suscipiatis et secundum Dei voluntatem illud regatis,
you-should-take-up and according-to of-God will it you-should-rule
monemus, ortamur atque praecipimus'. Hinc autem uterque
we-warn we-exhort and we-command from-here moreover each
illorum duodecim e suis ad hoc opus elegit, quorum unus
of-them twelve of his-men for this work chose of-whom one
extiti; et sicut illis congruum, ut inter illos hoc regnum
I-was and as to-them fitting that between them this kingdom
divideretur, visum est, contenti sunt; in qua divisione non
should-be-divided seemed it-has content they-were in which division not
tantum fertilitas aut equa portio regni, quantum affinitas
so-much fertility or equal portion of-the-kingdom as the-affinity
et congruentia cuiusque aptata est. Evenitque Lodhuvico
and suitability of-each fitted was and-there-fell to-Louis
omnis Frisia et cetera. *** Karolo vero ***
all Frisia and the-rest (lacuna) to-Charles but (lacuna)

Louis goes to Cologne because of the Saxons, whom Charles the Great converted and who are divided into nobles, freemen, and serfs. To win support Lothar promised the freemen and serfs their old pagan law; calling themselves the Stellinga, they nearly drove out their lords, and he let Northmen plunder Christians. Fearing the Northmen and Slavs will join the Stellinga, Louis acts against them.

Quibus peractis quique illorum e populo, qui se sequutus
which completed each of-them from the-people which him followed
est, suscepit ac sibi, ut deinceps fidelis esset, sacramento
has received and to-himself that thereafter faithful he-should-be by-oath
firmavit. Et Karolus quidem Mosam regnum suum ordinaturus
bound and Charles indeed the-Meuse kingdom his-own about-to-order
traiecit, Lodhuvicus vero Saxonorum causa Coloniam petiit.
crossed Louis but of-the-Saxons for-the-sake Cologne sought
Quorum casus quoniam maximos esse perspicio, praetereundos
whose fortunes since very-great to-be I-perceive to-be-passed-over
minime puto. Saxones quidem, sicut universis Europam
by-no-means I-think the-Saxons indeed as to-all Europe
degentibus patet, Karolus Magnus imperator ab universis
inhabiting is-plain Charles the-Great emperor by all
nationibus non inmerito vocatus ab idolorum vana cultura
nations not undeservedly called from of-idols the-vain worship
multo ac diverso labore ad veram Dei Christianamque
by-much and diverse labor to the-true of-God and-Christian
religionem convertit. Qui ab initio tam nobiles quam
religion converted who from the-beginning as-much noble as
et ad bella promptissimi multis inditiis persaepe claruerunt.
also for wars most-ready by-many signs very-often were-renowned
Que gens omnis in tribus ordinibus divisa consistit: sunt
which people whole into three orders divided stands there-are

etenim inter illos qui edhilingui, sunt qui frilingi, sunt qui
for among them who edhilingi are who frilingi are who
lazzi illorum lingua dicuntur; Latina vero lingua hoc
lazzi of-them in-the-language are-called Latin but in-the-language this
sunt: nobiles, ingenuiles atque serviles. Sed pars illorum,
is nobles freemen and serfs but the-part of-them
quae nobilis inter illos habetur, in duabus partibus in
which noble among them is-held into two parts in
dissensione Lodharii ac fratrum suorum divisa, unaque
the-dissension of-Lothar and of-the-brothers his divided and-one
eorum Lodharium, altera vero Lodhuvicum secuta est. His
of-them Lothar the-other but Louis followed has these
ita se habentibus, cernens Lodharius, quod post victoriam
so themselves having seeing Lothar that after the-victory
fratrum populus, qui cum illo fuerat, deficere vellet, variis
of-the-brothers the-people which with him had-been to-defect wished by-various
necessitatibus astrictus, quocumque et quomodocumque
necessities constrained wherever and however
poterat, subsidium quaerebat. Hinc rem publicam in
he-could support sought from-here the-state public to
propriis usibus tribuebat, hinc quibusdam libertatem dabat,
his-own uses he-gave-away from-here to-some freedom he-gave
quibusdam autem post victoriam se daturum promittebat,
to-some moreover after the-victory himself about-to-give he-promised
hinc etiam in Saxoniam misit frilingis lazzibusque, quorum
from-here also into Saxony he-sent to-the-frilingi and-lazzi of-whom
infinita multitudo est, promittens, si secum sentirent, ut
boundless the-multitude is promising if with-him they-sided that
legem, quam antecessores sui tempore, quo idolorum cultores
the-law which ancestors their in-the-time when of-idols worshipers
erant, habuerant, eandem illis deinceps habendam concederet.
they-were had-had the-same to-them thereafter to-be-had he-would-grant

Qua supra modum cupidi nomen novum sibi, id
for-which beyond measure eager a-name new for-themselves that
est Stellinga, imposuerunt et in unum conglobati dominis
is Stellinga they-imposed and into one massed the-lords
e regno poene pulsis more antiquo qua quisque
from the-kingdom almost driven in-the-manner ancient by-what each-one
volebat lege vivebat. Insuper autem Lodharius Nortmannos
wished law lived besides moreover Lothar the-Northmen
causa subsidii introduxerat partemque Christianorum illis
for-the-sake of-support had-brought-in and-part of-the-Christians to-them
subdiderat, quibus etiam, ut ceteros Christianos depraedarent,
had-subjected to-whom also that the-other Christians they-should-plunder
licentiam dabat. Igitur metuens Lodhuvicus, ne idem
license he-gave therefore fearing Louis lest the-same
Nortmanni nec non et Sclavi propter affinitatem Saxonibus,
Northmen nor not also the-Slavs on-account-of kinship with-the-Saxons
qui se Stellinga nominaverant, coniungerent regnumque
who themselves Stellinga had-named should-join and-the-kingdom
sibi vindicaturi invaderent et Christianam religionem
for-themselves about-to-claim should-invade and the-Christian religion
his in partibus annullarent: quam ob rem, uti praetulimus,
these in parts should-annul which for reason as we-have-said-before
praemaxime *** adiit et, in quantum valuit, simul
very-greatly (lacuna) approached and in as-far-as he-was-able at-the-same-time
et cetera regni sui scandala, ne hoc nefandissimum
also the-other of-kingdom his-own offenses lest this most-wicked
malum sanctae Dei ecclesiae deveniret, precavit.
evil to-the-holy of-God church should-come he-guarded-against
Quibus expletis Viridunensium civitatem Lodhuvicus per
which completed of-the-people-of-Verdun the-city Louis through

Teotonis-villam, Karolus autem per Remensem urbem
Thionville Charles moreover through Reims the-city
adeunt, quid deinceps agendum videretur, deliberaturi.
approach what thereafter to-be-done might-seem about-to-deliberate

III · LOTHAR SUES FOR PEACE

The Northmen plunder Quentovic and, across the sea, Hamwic and Northwic. From the Rhône Lothar sends envoys admitting his wrongs and asking for a third of the kingdom. Louis and Charles offer him the lands between the Rhine and the Meuse and down the Saône and Rhône to the sea. When he complains it is not equal, the envoys add more and swear to a division in three.

Per idem tempus Nortmanni Contwig depredati sunt,
through the-same time the-Northmen Quentovic plundered have
inibique mare traiecto Hamwig et Nordhunnwig similiter
and-there the-sea crossed Hamwic and Northwic likewise
depopulati sunt. Lodharius autem, ut se supra ripam
ravaged have Lothar moreover when himself upon the-bank
Rodani recepit, navigio eiusdem fluminis fretus inibi
of-the-Rhône he-betook on-the-shipping of-the-same river relying there
resedit; quo undique quos valuit sibi in subsidium
settled whither from-all-sides whom he-was-able to-himself into support
adtraxit. Verumtamen legatum ad fratres suos dirigens
drew nevertheless an-envoy to brothers his-own sending
mandat, si sciret, qua fieri posset, primores suos ad
he-sends-word if he-knew where to-be-done it-could chief-men his-own to
illos dirigere vellet de pace deliberaturos. Responsum
them to-send he-would-wish about peace about-to-deliberate answered
est, mitteret quos vellet, facile quemlibet scire posse,
it-was let-him-send whom he-wished easily anyone to-know to-be-able

qua illis deveniret esse; ipsi vero uno eodemque
where to-them he-might-come to-be they-themselves but by-one and-the-same
itinere per Tricasinensium Cadhellonensem adeunt urbem.
journey through of-the-people-of-Troyes of-Châlons approach the-city
Cumque Miliciacum venissent, Iosippus, Eberhardus, Egbertus
and-when to-Mellecey they-had-come Joseph Eberhard Egbert
una cum ceteris a parte Lodharii ad illos venerunt
together with the-others from the-side of-Lothar to them came
dicentes, quod Lodharius cognovisset se in Deum
saying that Lothar had-recognized himself against God
et illos deliquisse, nolletque amplius, ut altercatio inter
and them to-have-offended and-wished-not longer that strife between
illos et Christianum populum esset; si vellent aliquid
them and the-Christian people should-be if they-would-wish something
illi supra terciam partem regni propter nomen
for-him above the-third part of-the-kingdom on-account-of the-name
imperatoris, quod illi pater illorum concesserat, et
of-emperor which to-him the-father of-them had-granted and
propter dignitatem imperii, quam avus regno
on-account-of the-dignity of-the-empire which the-grandfather to-the-kingdom
Francorum adiecerat, augere, facerent; sin aliter, terciam
of-the-Franks had-added to-increase they-should-cause but-if otherwise the-third
tantummodo partem totius absque Langobardia, Baioaria
only part of-the-whole without Lombardy Bavaria
et Aquitania illi concederent; regeretque quisque illorum
and Aquitaine to-him they-should-grant and-should-rule each of-them
Deo favente portionem regni sui, prout melius posset;
God favoring the-portion of-kingdom his-own as better he-could
frueretur alter alterius subsidio ac benivolentia; concederent
should-enjoy the-one of-the-other's support and goodwill they-should-grant
pacem et leges invicem sibi subiectis, essetque
peace and laws to-each-other to-themselves to-those-subject and-there-should-be

inter illos Deo auctore pax pacta perpes. Quod cum
between them God as-author peace agreed perpetual which when
Lodhuvicus et Karolus audissent, et illis plebique
Louis and Charles had-heard and to-them and-to-the-people
universae perplacidum esset, in unum una cum primoribus
whole very-pleasing it-was into one together with the-chief-men
coeunt ac, quid de talibus acturi essent, gratanti
they-come-together and what about such-things about-to-do they-were with-glad
animo conferunt. Aiebant se hoc in exordio dissensionis
mind they-confer they-said themselves this in the-beginning of-the-dissension
voluisse et, quanquam peccatis intervenientibus proficuum
to-have-wished and although with-sins intervening profitable
esse non posset, saepe hoc illi mandatum fuisse. In
to-be not it-could often this to-him sent-word to-have-been in
eo tamen omnipotenti Deo gratias referebant, cuius tandem
that yet to-almighty God thanks they-rendered whose at-last
ope adiuti hoc promeruerant, ut frater illorum, qui
by-aid helped this they-had-earned that the-brother of-them who
semper pacem atque concordiam spreverat, Deo largiente
always peace and concord had-scorned God granting
tunc illa petebat. Verumtamen solito more ad
then those-things sought nevertheless in-the-accustomed manner to
episcopos sacerdotesque rem referunt, ut quocumque
the-bishops and-priests the-matter they-refer that wherever
divina auctoritas id vertere vellet, nutu ipsius libenti
divine authority it to-turn should-wish at-the-nod of-it with-willing
animo praesto adessent. Quibus cum undique, ut
mind ready they-might-be-at-hand to-whom when on-all-sides that
pax inter illos fieret, melius videretur, consentiunt,
peace between them should-be-made better it-seemed they-agree
legatos convocant, postulata concedunt. Cumque in divisione
the-envoys they-summon the-demands they-grant and-when in the-division

regni quattuor dies vel eo amplius morarentur,
of-the-kingdom four days or than-that more they-delayed
tandem visum est, ut inter Renum et Mosam usque
at-last seemed it-has that between the-Rhine and the-Meuse all-the-way
ad exortum Mosae ac deinde ad exortum Saugonne et
to the-source of-the-Meuse and then to the-source of-the-Saône and
sic per Saugonnam usque ad confluentum Rodani et
so through the-Saône all-the-way to the-confluence of-the-Rhône and
sic deinde per Rodanum usque in mare Tyrrenum omnes
so then through the-Rhône up-to into the-sea Tyrrhenian all
videlicet episcopatus, abbatias, comitatus, fisca cis
namely bishoprics abbeys counties fiscal-lands on-this-side-of
Alpibus consistentia absque *** illi in parte regni
the-Alps lying without (lacuna) to-him in part of-the-kingdom
tercia offerrent, et, si hanc recipere rennuat, quid cuique
third they-should-offer and if this to-receive he-refuse what to-each
debeatur, armis decernant. Quod quidem, quanquam ultra
is-due by-arms they-should-decide which indeed although beyond
quod iustum ac congruum, ut quibusdam videbatur, inventum
what just and fitting as to-some it-seemed found
fuerit, per Conradum, Cobbonem, Adhelhardum et ceteros
it-was through Conrad Cobbo Adalhard and the-others
mandatum est; ipsi vero interim, donec qui missi
sent-word was they-themselves but meanwhile until who sent
fuerant reverterentur, in eodem loco esse se decernunt
had-been should-return in the-same place to-be themselves they-decide
responsum Lodharii praestolaturi. Qui cum ad Lodharium
the-answer of-Lothar about-to-await who when to Lothar
venissent, reppererunt illum paululum minus solito
they-had-come found him a-little less than-in-the-accustomed
more animatum. Aiebat enim se non esse contentum in
manner spirited he-said for himself not to-be content in

eo, quod fratres sui illi mandaverant, quia equa portio
that which brothers his-own to-him had-sent-word because an-equal portion
non esset, querebaturque insuper suorum, qui se sequuti
not it-was and-he-complained moreover of-his-men who him followed
sunt, causam, quod in praefata parte, quae illi offerebatur,
have the-cause that in the-aforesaid part which to-him was-being-offered
non haberet, unde illis ea quae amittebant restituere
not he-had whence to-them those-things which they-were-losing to-restore
posset. Quam ob rem — ignoro, qua fraude decepti
he-might-be-able which for reason I-do-not-know by-what fraud deceived
— hi qui missi fuerant augent illi supra definitam partem
those who sent had-been increase for-him beyond the-defined part
usque in Carbonarias; insuper, si hoc usque ad tempus,
up-to into the-Charbonnière moreover if this all-the-way to the-time
quod illis pariter conveniret, reciperet, iurant illi, quod
which to-them equally should-suit he-should-accept they-swear to-him that
tunc fratres sui iureiurando, prout aequius possent, regnum
then brothers his-own by-oath as more-fairly they-could the-kingdom
omne absque Langobardia, Baioaria et Aequitania in tribus
whole without Lombardy Bavaria and Aquitaine into three
partibus dividerent, essetque super his sua electio, ut
parts should-divide and-there-should-be over these his choice that
quam vellet harum acciperet, ac diebus vitae suae eandem
which he-wished of-these he-might-take and for-the-days of-life his-own the-same
illi concederent in eo, quod ille illis similiter faceret;
to-him they-would-grant in that that he to-them likewise should-do
et haec omnia, si aliter non crederet, sacramento sic
and these-things all if otherwise not he-believed by-oath so
se facturos promitterent. Iurat etiam Lodharius sic se
themselves about-to-do they-should-promise swears also Lothar so himself

velle ac sua ex parte sic perficere in eo, quod fratres
to-wish and his from side so to-accomplish in that that brothers
sui, uti missi illorum tunc illi iuraverant, adimplessent.
his-own as the-envoys of-them then to-him had-sworn should-have-fulfilled

IV · MÂCON AND METZ

In June the three brothers meet on an island near Mâcon and swear peace until the kingdom is divided in three, with Lothar choosing first. Louis checks the Stellinga, and Charles drives Pippin into hiding. At the end of September Charles finds Lothar at Thionville, too close to Metz for the commissioners' safety, and at last a hundred and ten commissioners are to meet at Koblenz.

Igitur mediante Iunio, feria videlicet quinta, propter
therefore at-mid June on-the-day namely fifth near
civitatem Madasconis in insula quae Ansilla dicitur cum
the-city of-Mâcon on an-island which Ansilla is-called with
aequo numero primorum Lodharius, Lodhuvicus et Karolus
equal number of-chief-men Lothar Louis and Charles
conveniunt et hoc sacramentum mutuo sibi iuraverunt,
meet and this oath mutually to-each-other swore
videlicet ut ab ea die et deinceps invicem sibi pacem
namely that from that day and thereafter to-each-other to-themselves peace
conservare deberent, et ad placitum, quod fideles illorum
to-keep they-ought and at the-assembly which the-faithful-men of-them
inibi statuissent, regnum omne absque Langobardia,
there should-have-appointed the-kingdom whole without Lombardy
Baioaria et Aquitania cum sacramento, prout aequius possent,
Bavaria and Aquitaine with an-oath as more-fairly they-could
in tribus partibus sui dividerent, electioque partium
into three parts their-men should-divide and-the-choice of-the-parts

eiusdem regni esset Lodharii; et quique illorum partem,
of-the-same kingdom should-be Lothar's and each of-them the-part
quam quisque acciperet, cuique deinde omnibus diebus vitae
which each should-receive for-each then on-all days of-life
suae conservare deberet in eo, si adversus fratres suos
his-own to-keep ought in that if against brothers his-own
frater suus similiter faceret. Quo expleto adhibitisque verbis
the-brother his-own likewise should-do which completed and-applied words
pacificis pacifice discedunt, ad castra redeunt, in crastinum
peaceful peaceably they-depart to the-camp they-return on the-morrow
de ceteris deliberaturi. Quanquam et id aegre vix,
about the-rest about-to-deliberate although even this with-difficulty scarcely
tamen effectum est, et usque ad conventum, quod in
yet accomplished was and all-the-way to the-assembly which on
Kal. Octobris condixerant, pacifice quisque in sua
the-Kalends of-October they-had-agreed peaceably each in his-own
portione, qua vellet, esset. Et Lodhuvicus quidem Saxoniam,
portion where he-wished should-be and Louis indeed Saxony
Karolus vero Aquitaniam ordinaturi adeunt, Lodharius autem
Charles but Aquitaine about-to-order approach Lothar moreover
iam, ut sibi videbatur, de electione regni partium
already as to-himself it-seemed about the-choice of-the-kingdom's parts
securus Arduennam venatu petit omnesque primores suae
secure the-Ardennes to-hunt seeks and-all the-chief-men of-his-own
portionis populi, qui a se, dum a regno abiret,
portion of-the-people who from himself while from the-kingdom he-was-going-away
necessitate coacti desciverant, honoribus privavit. Lodhuvicus
by-necessity compelled had-revolted of-honors he-deprived Louis
etenim in Saxonia seditiosos, qui se, uti praefatum
for in Saxony the-seditious who themselves as said-before
est, Stellinga nominaverant, nobiliter, legali tamen cede
it-was Stellinga had-named nobly lawful yet by-slaughter

compescuit. Karolus vero in Aquitaniam Pippinum fugavit;
checked Charles but into Aquitaine Pippin put-to-flight
quo latitante nihil aliud notabile efficere valuit, praeter
who hiding nothing else notable to-accomplish he-was-able except
quod Warinum quendam ducem ceterosque, qui sibi
that Warin a-certain duke and-the-others who to-himself
fidi videbantur, ob custodiam eiusdem patriae inibi reliquit.
faithful seemed for the-guarding of-the-same country there he-left
Insuper Egfridus comes Tolosae e Pippini sociis, qui ad se
moreover Egfrid count of-Toulouse of Pippin's companions who for him
perdendum missi fuerant, quosdam in insidiis cepit, quosdam
to-be-destroyed sent had-been certain-ones in ambush took certain-ones
stravit. Idemque Karolus ad placitum, quod cum Lodhuvico
laid-low and-the-same Charles to the-assembly which with Louis
fratre suo Warmatiam condixerat, iter direxit. Cumque
brother his-own at-Worms he-had-agreed the-journey directed and-when
Mettis pridie Kal. Octobris venisset, Lodharium
to-Metz on-the-day-before the-Kalends of-October he-had-come Lothar
in villa Teotonis repperit, quo ante condictum placitum
in the-estate of-Theoto he-found where before the-agreed assembly
venerat ac aliter, quam statuerat, residebat. Quam ob
he-had-come and otherwise than he-had-appointed he-was-staying which for
rem his, qui a parte Lodhuvici nec non et Karoli
reason to-those who from the-side of-Louis nor not also of-Charles
propter divisionem regni Mettis residere debuerant, tutum
for the-division of-the-kingdom at-Metz to-stay had-been-due safe
minime videbatur, ut, dum seniores sui in Warmatia
by-no-means it-seemed that while lords their-own at Worms
et Lodharius in Teotonis-villa essent, illi Mettis regnum
and Lothar at Thionville were they at-Metz the-kingdom
dividerent. Distat enim Warmatia a Mettis leuvas plus
should-divide is-distant for Worms from Metz leagues more

minus LXX, Teotonis autem villa plus minus octo. Occurrebat
less seventy Theoto's moreover estate more less eight there-occurred
etiam, quod Lodharius in fratrum deceptione sepe perfacilis
also that Lothar in of-the-brothers the-deception often very-easy
promptusque extiterat, ideoque suam salutem illi credere
and-ready had-shown-himself and-therefore their safety to-him to-entrust
haudquaquam absque qualibet securitate audebant. Ergo
by-no-means without any security they-dared therefore
Karolus horum saluti consulens ad Lodharium dirigit,
Charles of-these for-the-safety taking-thought to Lothar sends
mandat, quoniam aliter, quam convenisset, venerat et
he-sends-word since otherwise than had-been-agreed he-had-come and
erat, si vellet, ut missi fratris sui nec non et sui
was if he-wished that the-envoys of-brother his-own nor not also his-own
inibi una cum suis remanerent, daret illi obsides,
there together with his-men should-remain he-should-give to-him hostages
ut de salute illorum fidus esset; sin aliter, mitteret
that about the-safety of-them sure he-might-be but-if otherwise he-should-send
ille missos suos Warmatiam ad illos, et illi quos vellet
he envoys his-own to-Worms to them and they whom he-wished
obsides illi darent; sin aliter, recederent a Mettis
as-hostages to-him should-give but-if otherwise they-should-withdraw from Metz
pari spatio; sin etiam et hoc nollet, in meditullio,
by-an-equal distance but-if also and this he-were-unwilling in the-middle
qua vellet, missi illorum convenissent: non enim se
where he-wished the-envoys of-them should-have-met not for himself
tot nobilium virorum salutem neglegere debere dicebat.
of-so-many noble men the-safety to-neglect ought he-said
Erant quidem octoginta electi ex omni multitudine omni
there-were indeed eighty chosen from all the-multitude in-all
nobilitate praestantes, quorum interitus ni praecaveretur,
nobility outstanding whose death unless it-were-guarded-against

maximam sibi fratrique suo posse inferre iacturam
the-greatest on-himself and-on-brother his-own to-be-able to-bring loss
aiebat. Tum tandem pro commoditate omnium hinc inde
he-said then at-last for the-convenience of-all hither thither
visum est, ut Conflentum missi illorum, centum decem
seemed it-has that to-Koblenz the-envoys of-them a-hundred ten
videlicet, absque obsidibus convenirent inibique regnum, prout
namely without hostages should-meet and-there the-kingdom as
aequius possent, dividerent.
more-fairly they-could should-divide

V · KOBLENZ AND NITHARD'S FAMILY

At Koblenz the commissioners camp on opposite banks and meet daily at Saint Castor. Since no one knows the whole empire, Louis's and Charles's men refuse to swear to an equal division, and the peace is extended. That day an earthquake strikes Gaul, and Angilbert's body is found undecayed at Saint-Riquier. Nithard says Angilbert fathered him and his brother Hartnid by Charlemagne's daughter Bertha.

Quo scilicet XIIII. Kal. Novenbris convenientes, ne
whither namely on-the-fourteenth Kalends of-November meeting lest
forte quoddam scandalum inter homines illorum qualibet ex
perhaps some offense between the-men of-them any from
causa oriretur, pars illorum, quae a Lodhuwico nec non et
cause should-arise the-part of-them which from Louis nor not also
Karolo venerat, orientalem ripam Reni metantes, quae autem
Charles had-come the-eastern bank of-the-Rhine camping-on which moreover
a Lodhario, occiduam, cotidieque ob commune colloquium
from Lothar the-western and-daily for common conference
Sanctum Castorem petierunt. Cumque ad regni divisionem
Saint Castor sought and-when to the-kingdom's division

hi, qui a Lodhuvico et Karolo missi fuerant, variis
those who from Louis and Charles sent had-been with-various
querimoniis accessissent, quesitum est, si quis illorum totius
complaints had-come asked it-was if anyone of-them of-the-whole
imperii noticiam ad liquidum haberet. Cum nullus repperiretur,
empire knowledge to clearness had when no-one was-found
quaesitum est, cur missi illorum illud in transacto spatio
asked it-was why the-envoys of-them it in the-past interval
non circumissent, et illorum industria inbreviatum esset;
not had-gone-round and of-them by-the-diligence recorded it-had-been
cum et hoc, ut fieret, Lodharium nolle repperissent,
since also this that it-be-done Lothar to-be-unwilling they-had-found
aiebant inpossibile esse ignoranti quoddam aequaliter
they-said impossible to-be for-one-ignorant anything equally
dividere posse. Novissime autem quaesitum est, quoniam
to-divide to-be-able at-last moreover asked it-was since
sacramento illud, prout aequius ac melius possent nossentque,
by-oath it as more-fairly and better they-could and-knew
dividere deberent, si hoc sincere iurare possent, dum scirent,
to-divide they-ought if this sincerely to-swear they-could while they-knew
quod nemo ignoranter id facere valeret. Et hoc quoque ad
that no-one ignorantly it to-do might-be-able and this also for
conferendum episcopis commissum. Qui hinc inde in basilica
conferring to-the-bishops entrusted who hither thither in the-basilica
sancti Castoris convenientes, a parte Lodharii aiebant, si in
of-saint Castor meeting from the-side of-Lothar said if in
sacramento quilibet deliquisset, hoc expiare posse, ac per
the-oath anyone had-offended this to-expiate to-be-able and through
hoc melius esset, ut hoc facerent, quam diutius tot
this better it-was that this they-should-do than longer so-many
rapinas, incendia, homicidia, adulteria ecclesia Dei pateretur.
plunderings burnings homicides adulteries the-church of-God should-suffer

At contra hi qui a parte Ludhuvici nec non et Karoli
but on-the-contrary those who from the-side of-Louis nor not also of-Charles
erant aiebant, dum neutrum necesse esset, cur in Deum
were said since neither necessary was why against God
peccare deberent? Aiebant melius esse, ut firmaretur pax
to-sin they-ought they-said better to-be that there-be-confirmed peace
inter illos, mitterentque pariter per universum imperium,
between them and-they-should-send equally through the-whole empire
et imbreviaretur, ac tum tandem iurare quod certum est
and it-should-be-recorded and then at-last to-swear what certain is
absque periculo aequaliterque dividere posse censebant: sic
without danger and-equally to-divide to-be-able they-judged so
quoque periuria ceteraque facinora devitare, ni ceca cupiditas
also perjuries and-the-other crimes to-avoid unless blind greed
impediret, posse firmabant; ac per hoc nec se ledere
hindered to-be-able they-affirmed and through this neither themselves to-injure
in sacramento velle nec cuipiam, ut faceret, licentiam dare
in the-oath to-wish nor to-anyone that he-do-so license to-give
testabantur. Qua dissentientes quique, qua venerat, ad
they-testified in-which-matter disagreeing each where he-had-come to
suos secesserunt. Hinc omnes in eadem domo convenerunt,
his-own withdrew hence all in the-same house met
a parte Lodharii dicentes, quod parati ad sacramentum et
from the-side of-Lothar saying that ready for the-oath and
ad divisionem, uti iuratum fuerat, essent; at contra a
for the-division as sworn it-had-been they-were but on-the-contrary from
parte Lodhuvici et Karoli similiter se velle, si possent,
the-side of-Louis and Charles likewise themselves to-wish if they-could
aiebant; novissime autem, quoniam neuter quod alter
said at-last moreover since neither what the-other
volebat absque seniorum suorum auctoritate assentire audebat,
wished without of-lords their-own the-authority to-assent dared

statuunt, ut pax inter illos esset, donec scire possent,
they-decide that peace between them should-be until to-know they-could
quid seniores sui horum recipere vellent; et hoc fieri
what lords their-own of-these to-accept would-wish and this to-be-done
posse in Non. Novenbris visum est, usquequo pacis
to-be-able on the-Nones of-November seemed it-has up-to-which of-the-peace
termino constituto discedunt. Qua quidem die terrae
the-term set they-depart on-which indeed day of-the-earth
motus magnus per omnem poene hanc Galliam factus
a-quaking great through all almost this Gaul occurred
est, eademque die Angilbertus vir memorabilis Centulo
was and-on-the-same day Angilbert a-man memorable at-Saint-Riquier
translatus et anno post decessum eius XXVIIII. corpore
translated and in-the-year after the-death of-him twenty-ninth with-body
absque aromatibus indissoluto repertus est. Fuit hic vir ortus
without spices undecayed found was was this man sprung
eo in tempore haud ignotae familiae. Madhelgaudus autem,
that in time not unknown of-a-family Madelgaud moreover
Richardus et hic una progenie fuere et apud Magnum
Richard and he of-one lineage were and with the-Great
Karolum merito magni habebantur. Qui ex eiusdem magni
Charles deservedly great were-held who from of-the-same great
regis filia nomine Berehta Hartnidum fratrem meum et
king the-daughter by-name Bertha Hartnid brother my and
me Nithardum genuit. Centulo opus mirificum in honore
me Nithard begot at-Saint-Riquier a-work wonderful in honor
omnipotentis Dei sanctique Richarii construxit, familiam
of-almighty God and-of-saint Riquier he-built the-household
sibi commissam mirifice rexit, hinc vitam cum omni
to-himself entrusted wonderfully he-ruled hence life with all

felicitate defunctam Centulo in pace quievit. His paucis
good-fortune completed at-Saint-Riquier in peace he-rested these few
de origine mea delibatis ad historiae seriem redire libet.
about the-origin my touched-on to of-history the-sequence to-return it-pleases

VI · CHARLES'S MARRIAGE

Want, winter, and the nobles' unwillingness to fight lead the kings to keep peace into summer; at Thionville the nobles swear the kingdom will be divided, Lothar choosing. The Moors invade Benevento; the Stellinga rise and are crushed. Charles weds Ermentrude, niece of Adalhard, who squandered public property under his father, to win the people. In 843 he leaves for Aquitaine in winter.

Cum autem, uti praefatum est, reversi quique regi suo
when moreover as said-before it-was having-returned each to-king his-own
quae invenerant nuntiassent, hinc inopia, hinc hieme
what they-had-found had-announced on-this-side want on-that-side winter
instante, hinc etiam, quod primores populi degustato
pressing on-this-side also that the-chief-men of-the-people tasted
semel periculo iterum praelium nolebant, ac per hoc, ut pax
once danger again battle were-unwilling and through this that peace
inter illos usque in vigesimo die post missam sancti Iohannis
between them up-to on the-twentieth day after the-mass of-saint John
firmaretur, assentiunt. Ad quam statuendam hinc inde
should-be-confirmed they-agree for which to-be-established hither thither
primates populi Teotonis-villam confluunt, iurant, ut ipsi
the-chief-men of-the-people to-Thionville stream-together they-swear that themselves
reges inter se interim mutuam pacem servare deberent,
the-kings between themselves meanwhile mutual peace to-keep ought
et ut nequaquam quolibet modo omitteretur, ne in eodem
and that by-no-means in-any way it-should-be-omitted that in the-same

conventu, ut aequius possent, omne regnum dividerent,
assembly as more-fairly they-could the-whole kingdom they-should-divide
essetque Lodharii, uti iuratum fuerat, partium electio
and-there-should-be Lothar's as sworn it-had-been of-the-parts the-choice
eiusdem regni. Hinc quique qua libuit discessit, et Lodharius
of-the-same kingdom hence each where it-pleased departed and Lothar
Aquis hiematum petiit, Lodhuvicus Baioariam, Karolus autem
to-Aachen to-winter sought Louis Bavaria Charles moreover
uxorem ducturus Carisiacum venit. Eodem tempore Mauri
a-wife about-to-marry to-Quierzy came at-the-same time the-Moors
a Sigenulfo fratre Sigihardi sibi causa subsidii inducti
by Siconulf the-brother of-Sicard to-himself for-the-sake of-support brought-in
Beneventum invadunt. Eodem etiam tempore Stellinga in
Benevento invade at-the-same also time the-Stellinga in
Saxonia contra dominos suos iterum rebellarunt, sed praelio
Saxony against lords their-own again rebelled but battle
commisso nimia cede prostrati sunt; ac sic auctoritate
joined with-excessive slaughter laid-low were and so by-authority
interiit, quod sine auctoritate surgere praesumpsit. Accepit
perished what without authority to-rise presumed took
quidem Karolus, uti praefatum est, in coniugio Hirmentrudem
indeed Charles as said-before it-was in marriage Ermentrude
Uodonis et Ingeltrudis filiam et neptem Adelardi. Dilexerat
of-Odo and of-Ingeltrud the-daughter and the-niece of-Adalhard had-loved
autem pater eius suo in tempore hunc Adelardum adeo,
moreover the-father of-him his-own in time this Adalhard so-much
[ut, quod] idem vellet in universo imperio, hoc pater
that what the-same wished in the-whole empire this the-father
faceret. Qui utilitati publicae minus prospiciens placere
did who for-the-good public less providing to-please
cuique intendit. Hinc libertates, hinc publica in propriis
each-one aimed hence freedoms hence public-property to private

usibus distribuere suasit ac, dum quod quique petebat, ut
uses to-distribute he-urged and while what each-one sought that
fieret, effecit, rem publicam penitus annullavit. Quo
it-be-done he-brought-about the-state public utterly he-annulled in-which
quidem modo effectum est, ut in hac tempestate populum
indeed way brought-about it-was that in this storm the-people
qua vellet facile devertere posset, et hac de re Karolus
where he-wished easily to-turn-aside he-could and this for reason Charles
praefatas nuptias maxime iniit, quia cum eo maximam
the-aforesaid marriage chiefly entered because with him the-greatest
partem plebis sibi vindicare posse putavit. Nuptiis
part of-the-people for-himself to-claim to-be-able he-thought the-wedding
quidem XVIIII. Kal. Ianuarii expletis natalem Domini ad
indeed on-the-nineteenth Kalends of-January completed the-birthday of-the-Lord at
Sanctum Quintinum celebre peregit, Valentianas quoque, qui
Saint Quentin solemnly he-spent at-Valenciennes also who
de fidelibus suis inter Mosam Sequanamque causa custodie
of faithful-men his-own between the-Meuse and-the-Seine for-the-sake of-guard
remanere deberent, ordinavit; idem vero partibus Aquitaniae
to-remain ought he-ordained he-the-same but to-the-parts of-Aquitaine
una [cum] coniuge anno DCCCXLIII. incarnationis
together with his-wife in-the-year eight-hundred-forty-three of-the-incarnation
Domini in hieme iter direxit. Fuit autem eadem hiemps
of-the-Lord in winter the-journey directed was moreover the-same winter
praefrigida nimis ac diuturna, langoribus insuper habundans
very-cold too-much and long with-sicknesses moreover abounding
nec non et agriculturae peccorique apibusque satis incongrua.
nor not also to-agriculture and-to-cattle and-to-bees quite unsuited

Nithard draws the lesson: neglect of the public good so offends the Creator that the very elements turn against men. In Charles the Great's time the people walked one road, and there was peace and abundance; now each goes his own way, and there are quarrels and want everywhere. An eclipse of the moon and a heavy snow that same night fill all with grief.

Hic quique colligat, qua dementia utilitatem publicam
here each-one may-gather with-what madness the-good public
neglegat, privatis ac propriis voluntatibus insaniat, dum ex
one-neglects with-private and his-own wishes one-raves while from
utrisque creatorem adeo offendat, ut etiam omnia elementa
both the-creator so he-offends that even all the-elements
eius vesaniae contraria reddat. Quodque huiuscemodi
of-him to-the-madness contrary he-renders and-which of-this-kind
exemplis pene adhuc omnibus notis praefacile probaturus
by-examples almost still to-all known very-easily about-to-prove
accedam. Nam temporibus bone recordationis Magni Karoli,
I-shall-proceed for in-the-times of-good memory of-the-Great Charles
qui evoluto iam pene anno XXX. decessit, quoniam hic
who passed already almost the-year thirtieth died since this
populus unam eandemque rectam ac per hoc viam Domini
people one and-the-same right and through this the-way of-the-Lord
publicam incedebat, pax illis atque concordia ubique erat,
public was-walking peace to-them and concord everywhere was
at nunc econtra, quoniam quique semitam quam cupit
but now on-the-contrary since each-one the-path which he-desires
incedit, ubique dissensiones et rixae sunt manifestae. Tunc
walks everywhere dissensions and quarrels are manifest then
ubique habundantia atque leticia, nunc ubique poenuria
everywhere abundance and gladness now everywhere want

atque mesticia. Ipsa elementa tunc cuique rei congrua,
and sadness the-very elements then for-each thing suitable
nunc autem omnibus ubique contraria, uti scriptura divino
now moreover to-all everywhere contrary as scripture by-divine
munere prolata testatur: Et pugnabit orbis terrarum contra
gift brought-forth testifies and will-fight the-circle of-the-lands against
insensatos. Per idem tempus eclypsis lunae XIII.
the-senseless through the-same time an-eclipse of-the-moon on-the-thirteenth
Kal. Aprilis contigit. Nix insuper multa eadem nocte
Kalends of-April happened snow moreover much on-the-same night
cecidit meroremque omnibus, uti praefatum est, iusto
fell and-grief on-all as said-before it-was by-the-just
Dei iuditio incussit. Id propterea inquam, quia hinc inde
of-God judgment struck this therefore I-say because hither thither
ubique rapinae et omnigena mala sese inserebant, illinc
everywhere plunderings and all-kinds-of evils themselves were-thrusting-in thence
aeris intemperies spem omnium bonorum eripiebat.
of-the-air the-intemperance the-hope of-all good-things was-snatching-away

NOTKER

De Gestis Karoli Imperatoris

The Deeds of Charlemagne

BOOK I

I · THE TWO IRISH SCHOLARS

God, who broke the feet of one wonderful statue among the Romans, raises the golden head of another through Charles among the Franks. When learning is nearly forgotten, two Irish scholars land in Gaul crying wisdom for sale. Summoned by Charles, they ask only for places, minds, food, and clothing. He keeps one, Clement, in Gaul to teach boys and sends the other to Pavia.

Omnipotens rerum dispositor ordinatorque regnorum et
the-almighty of-things disposer and-orderer of-kingdoms and
temporum, cum illius admirandae statuae pedes ferreos vel
of-times when of-that wonderful statue the-feet iron or
testaceos comminuisset in Romanis, alterius non minus
of-clay he-had-broken among the-Romans of-another not less
admirabilis statuae caput aureum per illustrem Karolum
wonderful statue the-head golden through the-illustrious Charles
erexit in Francis. Ipse enim cum in occiduis mundi
he-raised-up among the-Franks he-himself for when in the-western of-the-world
partibus solus regnare cepisset, et studia litterarum in omni
parts alone to-reign had-begun and the-studies of-letters in all
regno suo propemodum essent in oblivione ideoque verae
kingdom his-own almost were in oblivion and-therefore of-true
deitatis cultura teperet, contigit duos Scottos de
deity the-worship was-growing-lukewarm it-happened two Irishmen from
Hibernia cum mercatoribus Britannis ad litus Galliae devenire,
Ireland with merchants British to the-shore of-Gaul to-come
viros et in secularibus et in sacris scripturis incomparabiliter
men both in secular and in sacred scriptures incomparably
eruditos. Qui cottidie, cum nichil ostenderent venale, ad
learned who daily when nothing they-displayed for-sale to

convenientes emendi gratia turbas clamare solebant: Si
gathering of-buying for-the-sake the-crowds to-cry-out were-accustomed if
quis sapientiae cupidus est, veniat ad nos et accipiat
anyone of-wisdom desirous is let-him-come to us and receive
eam; nam venalis est apud nos. Quam tamen idcirco
it for for-sale it-is with us which yet for-this-reason
venalem se habere professi sunt, quoniam populum non
for-sale themselves to-have professed they-have since the-people not
gratuita sed venalia querere viderunt; ut vel sic sapientiae
free-things but things-for-sale to-seek they-saw that either thus to-wisdom
sicut ceteris rebus coemendis eos incitarent vel, sicut
as to-the-other things to-be-bought them they-might-incite or as
sequentia comprobant, per tale praeconium in admirationem
the-following prove through such proclamation into wonder
verterentur et stuporem. Denique tam diu conclamata sunt
they-might-be-turned and astonishment finally so long cried-out were
ista, donec ab admirantibus vel insanos illos putantibus
these-things until by those-wondering or mad them thinking
ad aures Karoli regis, semper amatoris et cupidissimi
to the-ears of-Charles the-king always a-lover and most-desirous
sapientiae, perlata fuissent. Qui sub omni celeritate ad suam
of-wisdom carried they-had-been who with all speed to his
eos praesentiam evocatos interrogavit, si veram quidem, ut
them presence summoned asked if true indeed as
fama ipse compererit, sapientiam secum haberent.
by-report he-himself had-learned wisdom with-themselves they-had
Qui dixerunt: Et habemus eam et in nomine Domini digne
who said both we-have it and in the-name of-the-Lord worthily
querentibus dare parati sumus. Qui cum inquisisset ab eis,
to-those-seeking to-give ready we-are who when he-had-inquired of them
quid pro ipsa precii peterent, responderunt: Non precium
what for it of-price they-asked they-answered not price

quidem, sed loca tantum oportuna et animas ingeniosas, o
indeed but places only suitable and minds gifted O
rex, petimus; et sine quibus ista peregrinatio transigi
king we-ask and without which this pilgrimage to-be-carried-through
non potest, alimenta quidem et quibus tegamur. Quo ille
not can food indeed and with-which we-may-be-clothed which he
ab eis responso percepto, ingenti gaudio repletus, primum
from them answer received with-huge joy filled first
quidem apud se utrumque parvo tempore tenuit. Postea
indeed with himself both for-a-short time kept afterward
vero, cum ad expeditiones bellicas urgeretur, unum eorum
but when to expeditions warlike he-was-pressed one of-them
nomine Clementem in Gallia residere fecit; cui et pueros
by-name Clement in Gaul to-reside he-caused to-whom also boys
nobilissimos mediocres et infimos satis multos commendavit,
most-noble middling and lowest quite many he-entrusted
et eis, prout necessarium habuerunt, victualia ministrari
and to-them as necessary they-held provisions to-be-supplied
praecepit, habitaculis oportunis ad meditandum deputatis.
he-commanded with-dwellings suitable for studying assigned
Alterum vero in Italiam direxit, cui et monasterium
the-other but into Italy he-sent to-whom also the-monastery
sancti Augustini iuxta Ticinensem urbem delegavit, ut illuc
of-saint Augustine near Pavia the-city he-assigned that there
ad eum, qui voluissent, ad discendum congregari potuissent.
to him who wished for learning to-be-gathered might-be-able

Hearing that the emperor welcomes learned men, Albinus, an Englishman and a disciple of Bede, comes to him by sea. Charles keeps him at his side for life and wishes to be called his pupil. He gives him the abbey of Saint Martin at Tours, and his teaching bears such fruit that the Gauls and Franks come to equal the ancient Romans and Athenians.

Audito autem Albinus quidam de natione Anglorum, quod
heard moreover Albinus a-certain of the-nation of-the-English that
gratanter sapientes viros religiosissimus imperator Karolus
gladly wise men the-most-religious emperor Charles
susciperet, conscensa navi venit ad eum. Ipse enim erat
received having-boarded a-ship came to him he-himself for was
in omnibus scripturis supra caeteros modernorum temporum
in all scriptures above the-others of-modern times
exercitatus, ut puta discipulus doctissimi Bedae presbiteri,
practiced as for-instance a-disciple of-the-most-learned Bede the-priest
peritissimi quidem post sanctum Gregorium in scripturis
the-most-skilled indeed after saint Gregory in scriptures
tractatoris. Quem benigne susceptum usque ad finem vitae
expounder whom kindly received all-the-way to the-end of-life
iugiter secum retinuit, nisi quando copiis ut solebat
continually with-himself he-kept except when with-forces as he-was-accustomed
ad ingentia bella processit; adeo ut semet discipulum eius
to huge wars he-went-forth so that himself the-disciple of-him
et ipsum magistrum suum appellari voluisset. Dedit
and him master his-own to-be-called he-would-have-wished he-gave
autem illi regimen abbatiae sancti Martini iuxta Turonicam
moreover to-him the-rule of-the-abbey of-saint Martin near Tours
civitatem; ut, quando ipse absens esset, illic requiesceret
the-city that when he-himself absent was there he-might-rest

et ad se confluentes doceret. Cuius in tantum doctrina
and to himself flocking might-teach whose to such-a-degree teaching
in discipulis suis fructificavit, ut moderni Galli sive Franci
in disciples his-own bore-fruit that the-modern Gauls or Franks
antiquis Romanis vel Atheniensibus equarentur.
to-the-ancient Romans or Athenians were-equaled

III · THE POOR BOYS AND THE NOBLE

Returning to Gaul, Charles has Clement's boys bring him their letters and poems. The boys of middling and low birth offer work seasoned with learning; the nobles' sons bring nonsense. Like the eternal judge, Charles sets the diligent on his right and promises them bishoprics. Then he thunders at the nobles that their birth means nothing to him: unless they mend, they will get nothing from Charles.

Cumque victoriosissimus Karolus post longum tempus in
and-when the-most-victorious Charles after long time into
Gallias reverteretur, praecepit ad se venire pueros, quos
the-Gauls was-returning he-commanded to himself to-come the-boys whom
Clementi commendaverat, et offerre sibi epistolas et
to-Clement he-had-entrusted and to-offer to-himself letters and
carmina sua. Mediocres igitur et infimi praeter spem
poems their-own the-middling therefore and lowest beyond hope
omnibus sapientiae condimentis dulcoratas obtulerunt; nobiles
with-all of-wisdom seasonings sweetened offered the-noble
vero omni fatuitate tepentes praesentarunt. Tunc sapientissimus
but with-all foolishness lukewarm presented then the-most-wise
Karolus, aeterni iudicis iusticiam imitatus, bene operatos
Charles of-the-eternal judge the-justice having-imitated well having-worked
ad dexteram segregatos his verbis alloquitur: Multas gratias
to the-right separated with-these words addresses many thanks

habete, filii, quoniam iussionem meam et utilitatem vestram
have sons since command my and advantage your
iuxta possibilitatem exequi intenti fuistis. Nunc ergo
according-to possibility to-carry-out intent you-have-been now therefore
ad perfectum attingere studete; et dabo vobis episcopia
to perfection to-attain strive and I-will-give to-you bishoprics
et monasteria permagnifica, et semper honorabiles eritis
and monasteries very-magnificent and always honorable you-will-be
in oculis meis. Deinde ad sinistros magna cum severitate
in the-eyes my then to the-left great with severity
vultum contorquens et flammante intuitu conscientias eorum
the-face twisting and with-flaming gaze the-consciences of-them
concutiens, yronice haec terribilia verba tonando potius quam
shaking ironically these terrible words thundering rather than
loquendo iaculatus est in illos: Vos nobiles, vos primorum filii,
speaking hurled he-has at them you nobles you of-the-chief-men sons
vos delicati et formosi, in natalibus vestris et possessionibus
you delicate and handsome on births your and possessions
confisi, mandatum meum et glorificationem vestram flocci
relying the-command my and the-glorification your at-a-straw
pendentes, litterarum studiis neglectis, luxuriae ludo et inerciae
valuing of-letters the-studies neglected to-luxury to-play and to-idleness
vel inanibus exercitiis indulsistis. Et his praemissis, sub
or to-empty exercises you-have-indulged and these-things said-first under
iuramento augustum caput et invictam dexteram ad caelos
oath the-august head and the-unconquered right-hand to the-heavens
convertens, sic in eos fulminavit: Per regem celorum! non ego
turning thus at them he-thundered by the-king of-heaven not I
magni pendo nobilitatem et pulchritudinem vestram, licet in
greatly value the-nobility and beauty your though in
his alii vos admirentur; et hoc pro certo scitote, quia,
these-things others you may-admire and this for certain know that

nisi cito priorem neglegentiam vigilanti studio recuperaveritis,
unless quickly the-former negligence by-watchful study you-shall-have-recovered
apud Karolum nunquam boni aliquid acquiretis.
with Charles never of-good anything you-will-acquire

IV · THE BOY AND THE BISHOPRIC

One of the poor boys becomes a clerk in the chapel. Hearing that a bishop died leaving two pounds for his soul, he calls it small provision for so long a journey. Charles hides him behind a curtain and refuses the courtiers lobbying for the see. When Queen Hildegard begs it for her cleric, the boy cries to the king to hold firm, and Charles makes him bishop.

De pauperibus ergo supra dictis quendam optimum
of the-poor therefore above mentioned a-certain excellent
dictatorem et scriptorem in capellam suam assumpsit;
composer and writer into chapel his-own he-took
quo nomine Francorum reges propter cappam sancti
by-which name of-the-Franks the-kings on-account-of the-cloak of-saint
Martini, quam secum propter sui tuicionem et
Martin which with-themselves for of-themselves protection and
hostium oppressionem iugiter ad bella portabant, sancta
of-the-enemies crushing constantly to wars they-carried holy-things
sua appellare solebant. Qui puer — cum providissimo
their-own to-call were-accustomed this boy when to-the-most-provident
regi Karolo quidam episcopus defunctus nunciaretur, et
king Charles a-certain bishop having-died was-announced and
ille interrogaret, utrum de rebus quas possedit pro anima
he asked whether of the-things which he-possessed for his-soul
donaverit aliqua, legatusque responderet: Domine, non
he-had-given anything and-the-messenger answered lord not

amplius quam duas libras de argento — suspirans et
more than two pounds of silver sighing and
vaporem mentis intra pectus continere non valens, audiente
the-steam of-his-mind within the-breast to-hold-in not being-able hearing
rege in hanc vocem prorupit dicens: Parvum viaticum
the-king into this utterance burst-forth saying small provision
ad iter longinquum et diuturnum. Cum moderatissimus
for a-journey distant and long when the-most-moderate
hominum Karolus secum deliberasset, dixit ad puerum:
of-men Charles with-himself had-deliberated he-said to the-boy
Putasne, quoniam, si episcopatum illum tu acceperis,
do-you-think that if bishopric that you shall-have-received
plura ad illud longum iter dirigere curabis? Ille
more for that long journey to-send-ahead you-will-take-care he
confestim, haec pendentia verba quasi praematuras uvas in
at-once these hanging words like premature grapes into
os hiantis decidentes devorans, cecidit ad pedes eius
the-mouth of-one-gaping falling devouring fell at the-feet of-him
et dixit: Domine, in Dei nutu et vestra potestate situm
and said lord in of-God nod and your power placed
est. Cui rex: Sta inquit post cortinam, quae pendet ad
it-is to-whom the-king stand he-says behind the-curtain which hangs at
dorsum meum; et ausculta, quot adiutores honoris istius
back my and listen how-many helpers of-honor that
habiturus sis. Audientes itaque palatini recessum episcopi,
about-to-have you-are hearing and-so the-palace-men the-death of-the-bishop
semper casibus aut certe mortibus aliorum insidiantes,
always on-the-misfortunes or at-least on-the-deaths of-others lying-in-wait
per familiares imperatori personas unus quisque, morarum
through intimate with-the-emperor persons one each of-delays
impatiens et alterutrum invidentes, sibimet episcopatum
impatient and each-other envying for-themselves the-bishopric

acquirere satagebant. Sed ille, in consilii sui immutabilitate
to-acquire were-busy but he in of-plan his-own unchangeableness
persistens, denegavit omnibus; dicens, se iuvenculo illi
persisting refused all saying himself to-the-youngster that
nolle mentiri. Tandem Hildigarda regina misit proceres
to-be-unwilling to-lie at-last Hildegard the-queen sent the-nobles
regni primum, postea vero per se ipsam accessit ad
of-the-kingdom first afterward but by her self approached to
regem, ut impetraret episcopium illud cuidam clerico suo.
the-king that she-might-obtain bishopric that for-a-certain cleric her-own
Cumque peticionem eius iocundissime susciperet dicens, se
and-when the-petition of-her most-pleasantly he-received saying himself
nihil ei velle aut posse denegare, nisi quod clericulum
nothing to-her to-wish or to-be-able to-refuse except that little-cleric
illum fallere dedignaretur, ut est omnium consuetudo
that to-deceive he-disdained as is of-all the-habit
feminarum, ut consilium suum et votum virorum decretis
of-women that the-counsel their-own and wish of-men over-the-decrees
praeponderare velint, dissimulata iracundia mente concepta et
to-outweigh they-wish dissembled the-anger in-mind conceived and
grossa voce in exilem conversa, gestibusque languidulis
with-her-thick voice into thin turned and-with-gestures languishing
inconvulsos imperatoris animos emollire conata, dixit ad
the-unshaken of-the-emperor mind to-soften having-tried she-said to
eum: Domine mi rex, quid puero illi episcopatus ille ad
him lord my king what to-boy that bishopric that for
perdendum? Sed obsecro, domine dulcissime, gloria mea et
wasting but I-beseech lord sweetest glory my and
refugium meum, ut detis illum famulo vestro fideli, clerico
refuge my that you-give it to-servant your faithful cleric
illi meo. Tunc adolescens ille, quem post cortinam, iuxta quam
that my then youth that whom behind the-curtain near which

rex consederat, stare praecepit, ut audiret quomodo
the-king had-sat-down to-stand he-commanded that he-might-hear how
singuli supplicarent, cum ipsa cortina eum circumplexus,
each-one pleaded with that-very curtain him having-embraced
in hos questus erupit: Domine rex, tene fortitudinem
into these complaints burst-out lord king hold strength
tuam, ne potestatem a Deo tibi collatam de manibus tuis
your lest the-power by God to-you conferred from hands your
quisquam extorqueat. Tunc vocavit eum in palam fortissimus
anyone wrest then he-called him into the-open the-bravest
veritatis amator, et dixit illi: Habeas illud volo episcopium;
of-truth lover and said to-him have it I-wish bishopric
et provideas diligenter, ut maiores expensas et viaticum ad
and provide diligently that greater expenses and provision for
illud iter longum et inrevocabile ante me et te praemittas.
that journey long and irrevocable before me and you you-send-ahead

V · THE NEW CANTOR

A newly named bishop feasts so heavily on the eve of Saint Martin that he misses the night office, where he is to sing a responsory. A despised cleric begins it at the emperor's word and, knowing no verse, sings the Lord's Prayer to its tune until the choir must answer. Charles takes the bishopric from the proud man and gives it to him.

Erat quidam clericus in comitatu regis vilis et
there-was a-certain cleric in the-retinue of-the-king worthless and
abiectus et scientia litterarum non satis instructus. Quem
abject and in-knowledge of-letters not sufficiently instructed whom
piissimus Karolus, paupertati eius compassus, licet omnes
the-most-pious Charles with-the-poverty of-him having-sympathized though all

eum odio haberent et expellere niterentur, nunquam
him in-hatred held and to-expel strove never
tamen ullius suasu abiecit vel a conspectu suo
yet of-anyone by-the-persuasion cast-off or from sight his-own
amovit. Accidit autem, ut in vigilia sancti Martini quidam
removed it-happened moreover that on the-eve of-saint Martin a-certain
episcopus imperatori nunciaretur defunctus. Qui vocavit ad
bishop to-the-emperor was-announced having-died who called to
se unum de clericis suis, nobilitate et doctrina non
himself one of clerics his-own with-nobility and learning not
mediocriter praeditum, et dedit illi episcopatum illum.
moderately endowed and gave to-him bishopric that
Qui, laeticia resolutus, convocavit ad mansionem suam multos
who with-joy dissolved called-together to lodging his-own many
de palatinis; plurimos etiam, de parrochia illa venientes ad
of the-palace-men very-many also from diocese that coming to
se, cum grandi fastu suscepit; et cunctis permagnificum
himself with great pomp received and for-all a-very-magnificent
fecit convivium. Dapibus igitur praegravatus, mero
made feast with-dishes therefore weighed-down with-unmixed-wine
ingurgitatus vinoque sepultus, nocte illa sanctissima ad
gorged and-in-wine buried on-night that most-holy to
nocturnas vigilias venire neglexit. Fuit autem consuetudo,
the-nocturnal vigils to-come he-neglected it-was moreover the-custom
ut magister scolae designaret pridie singulis, quod
that the-master of-the-school should-assign on-the-day-before to-each what
responsorium cantare deberent in nocte. Huic autem, qui
responsory to-sing they-ought in the-night to-this-one moreover who
iam episcopatum manu tenebat, responsorium: Domine, si
already the-bishopric in-hand held the-responsory Lord if
adhuc populo tuo sum necessarius erat iniunctum. Cum
still to-people your I-am necessary was enjoined when

ergo defuisset ille, et post lectionem diuturnum silentium
therefore had-been-absent he and after the-reading a-long silence
transiret, et ad sublevandum responsorium se alterutrum
passed and to raising the-responsory themselves each-other
cohortarentur, et alius atque alius se sibi traditum debere
were-urging and one and another himself to-himself assigned ought
cantare diceret responsorium, tandem imperator: Cantet ait
to-sing said the-responsory at-last the-emperor let-sing he-said
aliquis vestrum. Tunc abiectus ille, numine divino confortatus
one of-you then abject that by-power divine strengthened
et tali auctoritate roboratus, responsorium imposuit. Mox
and by-such authority emboldened the-responsory began soon
clementissimus rex, non sperans quod totum canere nosset,
the-most-merciful king not hoping that the-whole to-sing he-knew
iussit eum adiuvari. Cumque omnes instanter cantarent et
ordered him to-be-helped and-when all urgently sang and
ille miserabilis a nullo versum perdiscere potuisset, finito
he wretched from no-one the-verse to-learn-thoroughly had-been-able finished
responsorio, coepit orationem dominicam congrua modulatione
the-responsory he-began the-prayer Lord's with-fitting modulation
psallere. Omnibus autem illum tanquam fallentem impedire
to-chant all moreover him as-if blundering to-stop
volentibus, probare volens sapientissimus Karolus ad quem
wishing to-test wishing the-most-wise Charles to what
finem ille venturus esset, prohibuit, ne quis ei molestus
end he about-to-come was forbade lest anyone to-him troublesome
esset. Quo versum in haec verba concludente: Adveniat
should-be who the-verse into these words concluding may-come
regnum tuum, caeteri vellent nollent respondere coacti
kingdom your the-others whether-they-wished or-not to-respond compelled
sunt: Fiat voluntas tua. Finitis matutinis laudibus, cum
were let-be-done will your finished the-morning lauds when

rex ad palatium vel caminatam dormitoriam calefaciendi et
the-king to the-palace or chamber sleeping of-warming and
ornandi se gratia propter instantem festivitatis honorem
of-adorning himself for-the-sake on-account-of the-pressing of-the-festival honor
rediret, praecepit ad se venire illum abiectum famulum sed
returned he-commanded to himself to-come that abject servant but
novum cantorem, et ait illi: Quis te iussit responsorium illud
new cantor and said to-him who you ordered responsory that
cantare? Pavefactus ille respondit: Domine, vos praecepistis
to-sing terrified he answered lord you commanded
ut cantaret aliquis. Et dixit rex — quod nomen imperii
that should-sing someone and said the-king which the-name of-empire
veteribus in usu fuit—: Quis de his demonstravit tibi
to-the-ancients in use was who of these showed to-you
versum illum? Tunc ille verba, quibus eo tempore
verse that then he the-words with-which at-that time
superiores ab inferioribus honorari demulcerique vel adulari
superiors by inferiors to-be-honored and-to-be-soothed or to-be-flattered
solebant, instinctu Dei ut creditur animatus, hoc
were-accustomed at-the-prompting of-God as it-is-believed inspired in-this
modo labravit: Laete vir domine, laetifice rex, cum a nullo
way stammered glad man lord gladdening king since from no-one
versum alium exquirere potuissem, cogitavi in mente mea, si
verse other to-seek-out I-had-been-able I-thought in mind my if
aliquem incongruum arripuissem, offensam dominationis vestrae
some unfitting I-had-seized the-offense of-lordship your
incurrerem. Idcirco eum cantare disposui, cuius finis iuxta
I-should-incur therefore it to-sing I-arranged whose end according-to
consuetudinem penultimis conveniret responsorii. Tunc
custom with-the-penultimate-words should-suit of-the-responsory then
moderatissimus imperator, sensim arridens illi, pronunciavit
the-most-moderate emperor gently smiling-at him pronounced

coram principibus suis: Superbus ille, qui nec Deum
before princes his-own proud that-one who neither God
nec praecipuum eius amicum timuit nec honoravit, ut se
nor the-special his friend feared nor honored so-as himself
vel ad unam noctem a luxuria sua refrenaret, quatenus
even for one night from luxury his-own to-restrain so-that
responsorium, quod sicut audio debuit cantare, saltim incipere
the-responsory which as I-hear he-ought to-sing at-least to-begin
occurrisset, divino et meo iudicio careat episcopatu;
he-should-have-been-present by-divine and my judgment let-him-lack the-bishopric
et tu illum, Deo donante et me concedente, iuxta
and you it God granting and me conceding according-to
canonicam et apostolicam auctoritatem regere curato.
canonical and apostolic authority to-rule take-care

VI · THE AGILE BISHOP

When another bishop dies, Charles appoints a young man in his place. As he leaves, his servants bring a horse and a mounting block; offended at being treated as feeble, he leaps from the ground so hard that he nearly goes over the other side. Charles, watching from the palace, calls him back, praises his speed and agility, and keeps him in his own retinue for the wars, since he can mount his horse so quickly.

Defuncto quoque alio pontifice, quendam iuvenem in loco
having-died also another pontiff a-certain young-man in the-place
eius substituit imperator. Qui cum laetus ad abeundum exiret,
of-him substituted the-emperor who when glad to depart went-out
et ministri eius iuxta gravitatem episcopalem caballum
and the-attendants of-him according-to the-dignity episcopal a-horse
et ad ascensionem gradus adducerent, indignatus ille, quod
and for mounting steps brought indignant he that

quasi pro infirmo eum habere voluissent, de plana terra ita
as-if for infirm him to-hold they-had-wished from the-level ground so
super eum assiliit, ut vix se retineret in eo, ne in alteram
upon it leaped that scarcely himself he-kept on it lest to the-other
partem decideret. Quod per cancellos palatii rex
side he-should-fall-off which through the-lattices of-the-palace the-king
prospiciens, cito illum ad se vocari praecepit, et sic eum
looking-out quickly him to himself to-be-called commanded and thus him
allocutus est: Bone vir, celer es et agilis, pernix et praepes.
addressed has good man swift you-are and agile nimble and winged
Utique ipse nosti, multis bellorum turbinibus undique
surely yourself you-know by-many of-wars whirlwinds on-all-sides
serenitatem nostri imperii turbari. Idcirco opus habeo clerico
the-serenity of-our empire to-be-disturbed therefore need I-have of-a-cleric
tali in comitatu meo. Esto igitur interim socius laborum
such in retinue my be therefore meanwhile companion of-labors
nostrorum, dum tam celeriter ascendere potes caballum tuum.
our while so swiftly to-mount you-can horse your

VII · THE READINGS

No one in Charles's chapel is assigned the readings in advance; all prepare every lesson in case they are called on. Charles points to the reader with his finger or staff and marks the end with a sound in his throat, and the next reader begins exactly there, however awkward. So all in the palace become excellent readers.

Quod de ordinatione lectionum oblitus sum dicere, cum
what about the-ordering of-the-readings forgotten I-have to-say when
de responsoriorum dispositione narrarem, hic paucis
about of-the-responsories the-arrangement I-was-narrating here briefly
liceat absolvere. Nullus in basilica doctissimi Karoli
let-it-be-permitted to-finish no-one in the-basilica of-the-most-learned Charles

lectiones cuiquam recitandas iniunxit, nullus ad terminum
the-readings to-anyone to-be-recited enjoined no-one at the-end
vel ceram imposuit vel saltim unguibus quantulumcumque
either wax placed or at-least with-the-nails however-small
signum impressit; sed cuncti omnia, quae legenda erant,
a-mark impressed but all all-things which to-be-read were
ita sibi nota facere curaverunt, ut, quando inopinato
so to-themselves known to-make took-care that when unexpectedly
legere iuberentur, inreprehensibiles apud eum invenirentur.
to-read they-were-ordered blameless with him they-might-be-found
Digito autem vel baculo protento, vel ex latere suo
with-finger moreover or staff stretched-out or from side his-own
ad procul sedentes aliquo directo, demonstravit, quem
to far-off sitting someone sent he-indicated whom
legere voluisset. Finem vero lectionis sono gutturis
to-read he-wished the-end but of-the-reading with-a-sound of-the-throat
designavit. Ad quem universi ita intente suspensi sunt, ut,
he-marked on whom all so intently hung were that
sive finita sententia sive in media distinctione sive
whether at-the-finished sentence or at the-middle pause or
subdistinctione significaret, nullus sequentium superius aut
minor-pause he-signaled no-one of-the-following higher or
inferius incipere praesumeret, quantumcumque incongruum
lower to-begin presumed however-much unfitting
inicium vel finis videretur. Et hoc modo factum est, ut,
the-beginning or the-end seemed and in-this way done it-was that
etiamsi non intellegerent, omnes in palatio lectores optimi
even-if not they-understood all in the-palace readers excellent
fuissent. Nullus alienus, nullus etiam notus, non legere
had-been no-one stranger no-one even known not to-read
sciens et cantare, chorum eius ausus est intrare.
knowing and to-sing the-choir his dared has to-enter

VIII · THE WANDERING CLERIC

On a journey Charles comes to a great church where a wandering cleric, ignorant of the chant, stands mute in the choir. Threatened by the precentor's stick, he twists his neck and gapes, trying to imitate singing. Everyone else is choking with laughter, but the emperor waits out the mass as if he had noticed nothing. Afterward he calls the wretch, thanks him for his singing and his trouble, and orders him a pound of silver.

Cum autem itinerando venisset Karolus ad quandam grandem
when moreover in-traveling had-come Charles to a-certain great
basilicam, et quidam clericus de circumcellionibus ignarus
basilica and a-certain cleric of the-wandering-clerics ignorant
disciplinae Karoli chorum intraret et nihil unquam de
of-the-discipline of-Charles the-choir entered and nothing ever of
talibus omnino didicisset, in medio cantantium mutus et
such-things at-all had-learned in the-middle of-those-singing mute and
amens constitit. Ad quem paraphonista levato peniculo ictum
senseless he-stood at whom the-precentor raised the-stick a-blow
ei, nisi cantaret, minabatur. Tunc ille, nesciens quid ageret
to-him unless he-sang threatened then he not-knowing what he-should-do
quove se verteret, foras exire non ausus, cervicem
or-where himself he-should-turn outside to-go not having-dared the-neck
in modum circuli contorquens et dissolutis maxillis hians,
in the-manner of-a-circle twisting and with-loosened jaws gaping
cantandi qualitatem iuxta possibilitatem imitari conabatur.
of-singing the-quality according-to possibility to-imitate tried
Caeteris ergo risum tenere non valentibus, fortissimus
the-others therefore laughter to-hold not being-able the-bravest
imperator, qui ne ad magnas quidem res a statu mentis
emperor who not at great even things from the-state of-mind
suae moveretur, quasi gestum cantationis eius non adverteret,
his-own was-moved as-if the-gesture of-singing his not he-noticed

ordinatissime finem praestolabatur missae. Postea vero, vocato
most-orderly the-end awaited of-the-mass afterward but called
ad se misero illo, miseratus labores et angustias illius,
to himself wretch that having-pitied the-labors and distresses of-him
hoc modo consolatus est eum: Multas gratias habeas, bone
in-this way consoled has him many thanks have good
clerice, pro cantu et laboribus tuis. Tunc ad sublevandam
cleric for the-singing and labors your then for relieving
paupertatem eius iussit ei dari libram argenti.
the-poverty of-him he-ordered to-him to-be-given a-pound of-silver

IX · ALBINUS'S DISCIPLES

Every one of Albinus's disciples becomes a holy abbot or famous bishop, the Monk's lord Grimald among them; even two millers' sons govern Bobbio in turn. When Charles wishes for twelve clerics as learned as Jerome and Augustine, Albinus, alone daring to show his indignation, answers that the Creator himself had only two such, and Charles wants twelve.

Ne vero oblivisci vel neglegere videar de Albino, hoc vere
lest but to-forget or to-neglect I-should-seem about Albinus this truly
de industria vel meritis eius agnovi: quod de discipulis eius
about the-diligence or merits of-him I-have-learned that of disciples his
nullus remansit, qui non abba sanctissimus vel antistes extiterit
no-one remained who not abbot most-holy or bishop stood-out
clarissimus. Apud quem et domnus meus G(rimaldus) primo in
most-illustrious with whom also lord my Grimald first in
Gallia, post vero in Italia, liberalibus est disciplinis imbutus.
Gaul afterward but in Italy in-the-liberal was arts imbued
Set ne a scientibus rerum illarum arguar mendacii, quoniam
but lest by those-knowing of-things those I-be-accused of-a-lie since

nullum exceperim, fuerunt in scolis eius duo molinariorum
no-one I-have-excepted there-were in the-schools of-him two of-millers
filii de familia sancti Columbani, quos quia non congruit ad
sons of the-household of-saint Columban whom because not it-befits to
episcopiorum vel cenobiorum regimen sublevari, tamen, per
of-bishoprics or of-monasteries the-rule to-be-raised yet through
merita ut creditur magistri sui, praeposituram Bobiensis
the-merits as it-is-believed of-master their-own the-provostship of-the-Bobbio
monasterii unus post unum strennuissime gubernaverunt.
monastery one after one most-vigorously governed
Gloriosissimus itaque Karolus, per totum regnum suum
the-most-glorious and-so Charles through the-whole kingdom his-own
studia litterarum florere conspiciens sed ad maturitatem
the-studies of-letters to-flourish seeing but to the-ripeness
patrum praecedentium non pervenire dolens et plus quam
of-the-fathers preceding not to-attain grieving and more than
mortalis laborans, in hanc tediatus vocem erupit: O utinam
mortal laboring into this wearied utterance burst-out O would-that
haberem duodecim clericos tales, ita doctos et omni
I-had twelve clerics such so learned and in-all
sapientia tam perfecte instructos, ut fuerunt Hieronimus
wisdom so perfectly instructed as were Jerome
et Augustinus! Ad quod doctissimus Albinus, ex ipsorum
and Augustine at which the-most-learned Albinus from of-them
comparatione merito indoctissimum se iudicans, in quantum
comparison deservedly most-unlearned himself judging in as-much-as
nullus mortalium in conspectu terribilis Karoli audere
no-one of-mortals in the-sight of-the-terrible Charles to-dare
praesumeret, maxima indignatione concepta sed parumper
would-presume the-greatest indignation conceived but a-little

ostensa, respondit: Creator coeli et terrae similes illis
shown answered the-Creator of-heaven and earth like to-those
plures non habuit, et tu vis habere duodecim!
more not had and you wish to-have twelve

X · THE ROMAN CHANT

Grieved that the churches sing the chant differently, Charles obtains twelve Roman singers from Pope Stephen; in envy they teach it corruptly. When Charles notices, Pope Leo punishes them and secretly trains two of Charles's clerics. One goes to Metz, whose chant spreads through Francia. The other, Peter, Charles settles at Saint Gall, which he enriches with money, estates, and a golden reliquary.

Referendum hoc in loco videtur, quod tamen a nostri
to-be-related this in place it-seems what yet by of-our
temporis hominibus difficile credatur, cum et ego ipse,
time men with-difficulty may-be-believed since also I myself
qui scribo, propter nimiam dissimilitudinem nostrae et
who write on-account-of the-excessive unlikeness of-our and
Romanae cantilenae non satis adhuc credam, nisi quod
of-the-Roman chant not sufficiently still would-believe except that
patrum veritati plus credendum est quam modernae
of-the-fathers to-the-truth more to-be-believed is than of-modern
ignaviae falsitati. Igitur indefessus divinae servitutis amator
sloth to-the-falsehood therefore the-tireless of-divine service lover
Karolus, voti sui compotem se quantum fieri
Charles of-wish his-own possessed himself as-much-as to-be-done
potuit in litterarum scientia effectum esse gratulatus,
it-could in of-letters knowledge made to-have-been having-rejoiced
sed adhuc omnes provincias immo regiones vel civitates
but still all provinces nay regions or cities

in laudibus divinis, hoc est in cantilenae modulationibus,
in praises divine that is in of-chant the-modulations
ab invicem dissonare perdolens, a beatae memoriae
from each-other to-be-discordant grieving-deeply from of-blessed memory
Stephano papa — qui, deposito et decalvato ignavissimo
Stephen the-pope who deposed and shaved-bald the-most-slothful
Francorum rege Hilderico, se ad regni gubernacula
of-the-Franks king Childeric himself for of-the-kingdom the-helm
antiquorum more patrum perunxit — aliquos carminum
of-the-ancient in-the-manner fathers anointed some of-songs
divinorum peritissimos clericos impetrare curavit. Qui, bonae
divine most-skilled clerics to-obtain took-care who to-good
illius voluntati et studiis divinitus inspiratis assensum
that will and pursuits divinely inspired assent
praebens, secundum numerum duodecim apostolorum de
giving according-to the-number of-the-twelve apostles from
sede apostolica duodecim clericos doctissimos cantilenae ad
the-see apostolic twelve clerics most-learned in-chant to
eum in Franciam direxit. Franciam vero interdum cum
him into Francia sent Francia but sometimes when
nominavero, omnes cisalpinas provincias significo. Quia, sicut
I-shall-have-named all cisalpine provinces I-mean because as
scriptum est: In die illa apprehendent decem viri ex
written it-is in day that shall-take-hold ten men out-of
omnibus linguis gentium fimbriam viri Iudei, in illo
all languages of-the-nations the-hem of-a-man Jewish in that
tempore propter excellentiam gloriosissimi Karoli Galli
time on-account-of the-excellence of-the-most-glorious Charles the-Gauls
Aquitani Edui Hispani Alamanni Baioarii non parum se
Aquitanians Aeduans Spaniards Alamanni Bavarians not a-little themselves
insignitos gloriabantur, si vel nomine Francorum sevorum
distinguished boasted if even by-the-name of-Frankish serfs

censeri mererentur. Cum ergo supra dicti clerici
to-be-reckoned they-might-deserve when therefore the-above mentioned clerics
Roma digrederentur — ut semper omnes Graeci et Romani
from-Rome were-departing as always all Greeks and Romans
invidia Francorum gloriae carpebantur — consiliati sunt
by-envy of-the-Franks of-the-glory were-torn consulted they-have
inter se, quomodo ita cantum variare potuissent, ut
among themselves how so the-chant to-vary they-might-be-able that
nunquam unitate et consonantia eius in regno et provincia
never in-the-unity and harmony of-it in kingdom and province
sua letarentur. Venientes autem ad Karolum, honorifice
his-own they-should-rejoice coming moreover to Charles honorably
suscepti et ad praeminentissima loca sunt dispersi; et
received and to the-most-eminent places they-were scattered and
singuli in locis singulis diversissime, et quam corruptissime
each in places each most-diversely and as most-corruptly
excogitare poterant, et ipsi canere et sic alios docere
to-devise they-could both themselves to-sing and so others to-teach
laborabant. Cum vero ingeniosissimus Karolus quodam
labored when but the-most-ingenious Charles in-a-certain
anno festivitates nativitatis et apparitionis Domini apud
year the-festivals of-the-nativity and of-the-appearing of-the-Lord at
Treverense vel Metense oppidum celebrasset, et vigilantissime
the-Trier or Metz town had-celebrated and most-watchfully
immo acutissime vim carminum deprehendisset vel potius
nay most-keenly the-force of-the-songs had-grasped or rather
penetrasset, sequenti vero anno easdem solemnitates Parisius
had-penetrated in-the-following but year the-same solemnities at-Paris
vel Turonis ageret et nihil illius soni audisset, quem
or Tours he-was-keeping and nothing of-that sound heard which
priori anno in supradictis locis expertus fuerat, sed et
in-the-former year in the-above-mentioned places experienced he-had but also

illos quos ad alia loca disperserat cum tempore procedente ab
those whom to other places he-had-scattered when time going-on from
invicem discordare sentiret, sanctae recordationis Leoni papae,
each-other to-disagree he-perceived of-holy memory to-Leo the-pope
successori Stephani, rem detulit. Qui vocatos Romam vel
the-successor of-Stephen the-matter he-brought who called to-Rome either
exilio vel perpetuis damnavit ergastulis; et dixit illustri
to-exile or to-perpetual condemned prisons and said to-the-illustrious
Karolo: Si alios tibi praestitero, simili ut anteriores invidentia
Charles if others to-you I-shall-furnish with-like as the-former envy
caecati, non praetermittent illudere tibi. Sed hoc modo
blinded not they-will-fail to-mock you but in-this way
studiis tuis satisfacere curabo: Da mihi de latere tuo duos
pursuits your to-satisfy I-shall-take-care give to-me from side your two
ingeniosissimos clericos — ut non advertant, qui mecum
most-ingenious clerics so-that not they-may-notice who with-me
sunt, quod ad te pertineant — et perfectam scientiam, Deo
are that to you they-belong and perfect knowledge God
volente, in hac re quam postulas assequentur. Factumque
willing in this matter which you-ask they-will-attain and-done
est ita. Et ecce post modicum tempus optime instructos
it-was so and behold after a-short time excellently instructed
remisit ad Karolum. Qui unum secum retinuit; alterum
he-sent-back to Charles who one with-himself kept the-other
vero, petente filio suo, Truogone episcopo Metensi, ad
but asking son his-own Drogo bishop of-Metz to
ipsam direxit aecclesiam. Cuius industria non solum in
that-very he-sent church of-whom by-the-diligence not only in
eodem loco pollere sed etiam per totam Franciam in
the-same place to-flourish but also through all Francia to
tantum coepit propagari, ut nunc usque apud eos, qui
such-a-degree began to-be-spread that now still among those who

in his regionibus Latino sermone utuntur, aecclesiastica
in these regions the-Latin speech use the-ecclesiastical
cantilena dicatur Metensis, apud nos vero, qui Teutonica
chant is-called Metz-chant among us but who the-Teutonic
sive Teuthisca lingua loquimur, Mette, vel secundum Grecam
or Teuthisc language speak Mette or according-to the-Greek
dirivationem usitato vocabulo Mettisca nominetur. Sed et
derivation by-the-customary word Mettisca it-is-named but also
piissimus imperator cantorem illum sibi allatum, Petrum
the-most-pious emperor cantor that to-himself brought Peter
quidem nomine, Sancti Galli cenobio immorari aliquantisper
indeed by-name at-Saint Gall's monastery to-stay for-a-while
iusserat. Illic enim et cantarîam, sicut hodie est, cum
had-ordered there for both a-singing-school as today it-is with
autentico antiphonario locans, Romane cantari doceri
an-authentic antiphonary placing in-Roman-fashion to-be-sung to-be-taught
et discere, quoniam Sancti Galli fautor validissimus fuit,
and to-learn since of-Saint Gall a-patron most-powerful he-was
sollicite monuit. Cui etiam in denariis et praediis plura
carefully he-advised to-which also in money and estates many-things
contradidit, mâssilis quidem et raûtinis et alia quaedam;
he-gave with-farmsteads indeed and with-clearings and other certain-things
insignem quoque capsam cum reliquiis, quam ipsi Karoli
a-notable also casket with relics which they Charles's
vocant capellam, ex solido auro et gemmis conpactam.
call chapel from solid gold and gems made

In Lent Charles eats at the seventh hour, after mass and vespers. A bishop rebukes him for breaking the fast, and Charles orders him to eat nothing until the court's last servant has eaten. Kings serve Charles, and nobles the kings; then nobles, soldiers, officials, servants, and the servants' servants eat, the last at midnight. At Lent's end Charles says the bishop now sees why he dines early.

Religiosissimus et temperatissimus Karolus hanc consuetudinem
the-most-religious and most-temperate Charles this custom
habuit, ut in quadragesimae diebus septima hora diei,
had that in of-Lent the-days at-the-seventh hour of-the-day
missarum celebritate pariter cum vespertinis laudibus peracta,
of-the-masses the-celebration together with the-evening lauds completed
cibum sumeret, nec tamen idcirco ieiunium violaret, cum
food he-took nor yet for-that-reason the-fast he-violated since
secundum Domini praeceptum ab hora ad horam comederet.
according-to the-Lord's precept from hour to hour he-ate
Quod episcopus quidam, contra dictum sapientis viri multum
which a-bishop a-certain against the-saying of-the-wise man very
iustus et nimium stultus, improvide reprehendit. Sapientissimus
just and too foolish improvidently reproved the-most-wise
autem Karolus, indignatione dissimulata, admonitionem eius
moreover Charles the-indignation dissembled the-admonition of-him
humiliter suscepit, dicens: Bene monuisti, laete vir episcope;
humbly received saying well you-have-warned glad man bishop
ego autem tibi praecipio, ut nichil degustes, antequam extremi
I moreover to-you command that nothing you-taste before the-last
officiales, qui sunt in curte mea, reficiantur. Comedente autem
officials who are in court my be-refreshed eating moreover
Karolo, ministrabant duces et tiranni vel reges diversarum
Charles there-served dukes and rulers or kings of-diverse

gentium. Post cuius convivium cum illi comederent, serviebant
peoples after whose feast when they ate there-served
eis comites et praefecti vel diversarum dignitatum proceres.
them counts and prefects or of-diverse ranks nobles
Ipsis quoque manducandi finem facientibus, militares viri
they also of-eating an-end making the-military men
vel scolares alae reficiebantur. Post hos omnimodorum
or of-the-school the-companies were-refreshed after these of-all-kinds-of
officiorum magistri, deinde ministri, post inde vero eorundem
offices the-masters then the-servants after then but of-the-same
ministrorum ministri; ita ut ultimi ante noctis medium non
servants the-servants so that the-last before of-night the-middle not
manducarent. Cumque iam prope finita esset quadragesima,
ate and-when already almost finished was Lent
et praefatus episcopus in tali castigatione permansisset,
and the-aforesaid bishop in such chastisement had-remained
dixit ad illum clementissimus Karolus: Ut puto, probasti
said to him the-most-merciful Charles as I-think you-have-proved
episcope, quia non intemperate sed providentiae gratia ante
bishop that not intemperately but of-foresight for-the-sake before
vespertinam horam convivor in quadragesima.
the-evening hour I-dine in Lent

XII · THE BLESSING

When Charles asks another bishop for a blessing, the bishop signs the bread, takes some for himself first, and then offers it to the king. Charles tells him to keep the whole loaf, and so shames him and refuses his blessing.

Ab alio quoque episcopo cum benedictionem peteret, et ille,
from another also bishop when a-blessing he-asked and he
signato pane, primum sibi perciperet deinde honestissimo
the-signed bread first for-himself took then to-the-most-honorable
Karolo porrigere voluisset, dixit ei: Habeas tibi totum
Charles to-hold-out had-wished he-said to-him have for-yourself the-whole
panem illum. Et sic, eo confuso, benedictionem illius
bread that and so him confounded the-blessing of-him
accipere noluit.
to-receive he-refused

XIII · COUNTIES AND ABBEYS

Charles never gives a count more than one county, except on the frontiers, or a bishop an abbey or royal church, except for very good reasons, since with each estate he can win a faithful vassal. For good reasons, though, he gives much to some, such as Udalric, brother of Queen Hildegard. Udalric loses his honors after Hildegard's death, and when a jester cries that he has lost everything with his sister, Charles weeps and restores them.

Providentissimus Karolus nulli comitum, nisi his qui in
the-most-provident Charles to-none of-the-counts except to-those who on
confinio vel termino barbarorum constituti erant, plus quam
the-border or frontier of-the-barbarians stationed were more than
unum comitatum aliquando concessit; nulli episcoporum
one county ever granted to-none of-the-bishops

abbatiam vel aecclesias ad ius regium pertinentes nisi ex
an-abbey or churches to the-right royal belonging except for
certissimis causis unquam permisit. Cumque a consiliariis suis
most-certain reasons ever allowed and-when by counselors his-own
sive a familiaribus interrogaretur, cur ita faceret, respondit: Cum
or by intimates he-was-asked why so he-did he-answered with
illo fisco vel curte, illa abbatiola vel aecclesia, aeque bonum vel
that fiscal-land or estate that little-abbey or church equally good or
meliorem vasallum, quam ille comes aut episcopus sit, fidelem
better vassal than that count or bishop is faithful
mihi facio. Ex certis autem causis quibusdam plurima
to-me I-make for certain moreover reasons to-certain-men very-many-things
tribuit; ut puta Uodalrico, fratri magnae Hildigardae,
he-gave as for-instance to-Udalric the-brother of-the-great Hildegard
genitricis regum et imperatorum. De quo, cum post
mother of-kings and of-emperors about whom when after
obitum ipsius Hildigardae pro quodam commisso a Karolo
the-death of-that-very Hildegard for a-certain offense by Charles
viduaretur honoribus, quidam scurra in auribus misericordissimi
he-was-stripped of-honors a-certain buffoon in the-ears of-the-most-merciful
Karoli proclamavit: Nunc habet Uodalricus honores perditos
Charles cried-out now has Udalric honors lost
in oriente et occidente, defuncta sua sorore. Ad quae verba
in the-east and the-west having-died his sister at which words
illacrimatus, ille pristinos honores statim fecit illi restitui.
having-burst-into-tears he former honors at-once caused to-him to-be-restored
Ad sancta etiam loca, dictante iusticia, liberalissimas
to holy also places at-the-dictate-of justice most-generous
manus patenter aperuit; ut ex sequentibus apparebit.
hands openly he-opened as from the-following will-appear

XIV · THE SWEPT BISHOPRIC

A bishop whose see lies on Charles's road spends all he has on entertaining him. Once, when the emperor arrives unexpectedly, the bishop has even the streets swept. Charles remarks that he always has everything cleaned for their arrival; the bishop answers that it is right that all be cleaned out to the bottom. Charles says he knows how to empty and to fill, and gives the see an estate.

Erat quoddam episcopium itineranti Karolo nimis obvium
there-was a-certain bishopric to-the-traveling Charles very in-the-way
vel magis inevitabile. Episcopus vero loci illius, cupiens
or rather unavoidable the-bishop but of-place that wishing
semper satisfacere, cuncta quae habuit in eius obsequium
always to-satisfy all-things which he-had in his service
profligavit. Cum autem quodam tempore insperato imperator
squandered when moreover at-a-certain time unexpectedly the-emperor
veniret, tunc episcopus conturbatus, more hirundinis
was-coming then the-bishop thrown-into-confusion in-the-manner of-a-swallow
huc illucque discurrens et non solum basilicas vel domos
hither and-thither running-about and not only basilicas or houses
sed et curtes ipsasque plateas verri faciens et purgari,
but also courtyards and-the-very streets to-be-swept causing and to-be-cleaned
valde lassus et indignatus obviam illi processit. Quod cum
very tired and indignant to-meet him went-forth which when
piissimus adverteret Karolus, oculos in diversa iaciens
the-most-pious noticed Charles the-eyes in different-directions casting
et singula quaeque perlustrans, dixit ad antistitem: Semper,
and each thing surveying said to the-bishop always
hospes optime, bene omnia ad nostrum introitum facis
host best well all-things for our entry you-cause
emundari. Ille, quasi divinitus allocutus, conquiniscens et
to-be-cleaned he as-if divinely addressed bowing-down and

invictam dexteram complexus et deosculans, indignatione
the-unconquered right-hand having-embraced and kissing the-indignation
quantum potuit occultata, respondit: Iustum est, domine,
as-much-as he-could hidden answered just it-is lord
ut, quocumque veneritis vos, omnia expurgentur usque
that wherever you-have-come you all-things should-be-cleaned-out all-the-way
ad fundum. Tunc sapientissimus regum Karolus, de aliis
to the-bottom then the-most-wise of-kings Charles from some-things
alia intellegens, dixit ad eum: Si evacuare novi, et
other-things understanding said to him if to-empty I-know-how also
replere didici. Et adiecit: Habeas fiscum illum episcopio
to-fill-up I-have-learned and he-added have the-fiscal-land that to-bishopric
tuo proximum et omnes successores tui usque in seculum.
your next and all successors your up-to into eternity

XV · THE CHEESE

On a Friday Charles comes unannounced to a bishop who has no fish and serves him a rich white cheese. Charles cuts away the mold until the bishop tells him that is the best part. He tastes it and orders two cartloads of such cheeses sent to Aachen every year, telling the bishop how to choose them. In the third year he rewards the bishop's trouble with an estate.

In eadem quoque profectione inopinato venit ad quendam
on the-same also journey unexpectedly he-came to a-certain
episcopum in loco inevitabili constitutum. Cumque ipso
bishop in a-place unavoidable situated and-when on-that-very
die carnes quadrupedum aut volatilium comedere noluisset,
day the-flesh of-four-footed-beasts or of-birds to-eat he-was-unwilling
quia sexta esset feria, pontifex ille iuxta facultatem
because the-sixth it-was day bishop that according-to the-resources

loci ipsius, cum repente pisces invenire nequisset, optimum
of-the-place itself when suddenly fish to-find he-could-not excellent
illi caseum et ex pinguedine canum iussit apponi.
to-him cheese and from the-richness white he-ordered to-be-set-before
Moderatissimus autem Karolus ubique et in omnibus
the-most-moderate moreover Charles everywhere and in all-things
institutus, verecundiae praesulis parcens, nihil aliud requisivit;
trained the-embarrassment of-the-bishop sparing nothing else asked
sed assumpto cultello, abhominabili ut sibi videbatur erugine
but taken a-little-knife the-abominable as to-himself it-seemed mold
proiecta, albore casei vescebatur. Episcopus autem, qui
thrown-away on-the-white of-the-cheese ate the-bishop moreover who
more famulorum propter astabat, propius accedens dixit:
in-the-manner of-servants nearby stood nearer approaching said
Cur ita facis, domne imperator? Nam, quod proicis, illud
why so do-you-do lord emperor for what you-throw-away that
optimum est. Tunc ille, qui fallere nesciret et a nullo
best is then he who to-deceive did-not-know-how and by no-one
se falli posse putasset, iuxta suadelam episcopi
himself to-be-deceived to-be-able had-thought according-to the-persuasion of-the-bishop
eruginis illius partem in os proiecit et sensim masticans
of-mold that part into the-mouth threw and gently chewing
in modum butyri deglutivit. Et episcopi consilium probans,
in the-manner of-butter swallowed and the-bishop's counsel approving
dixit: Verum, bone hospes, dixisti; addiditque: Omnibus
said true good host you-have-said and-he-added every
annis duas carradas talibus caseis plenas ad Aquasgrani mihi
year two cartloads with-such cheeses full to Aachen to-me
dirigere ne praetermittas. Ad cuius impossibilitatem rei
to-send not you-omit at whose impossibility of-the-thing
consternatus, episcopus, quasi in periculo status et
dismayed the-bishop as-if in danger of-the-standing and

ministerii sui constitutus, ei suggessit: Domine, caseos
of-the-office his-own placed to-him suggested lord cheeses
acquirere possum; sed nescio, qui eiusmodi sunt, qui vero
to-acquire I-can but I-do-not-know which of-this-kind are which but
aliter. Et timeo, ne reprehensibilis inveniar apud vos. Tum
otherwise and I-fear lest blameworthy I-be-found with you then
Karolus, quem insueta atque incognita nequaquam fugere vel
Charles whom unusual and unknown-things by-no-means to-escape or
latere potuissent, dixit episcopo, in talibus enutrito et
to-be-hidden-from could said to-the-bishop in such-things brought-up and
adhuc earundem rerum nescio: Incide omnes per medium;
still of-the-same things ignorant cut all through the-middle
et quos tales perspexeris, acuminato ligno coniunge
and which such you-shall-have-perceived with-a-sharpened stick join
et in cubam missos dirige mihi; alios autem tibi et
and into a-vat put send to-me the-others moreover for-yourself and
clero vel familiae tuae reserva. Quod dum per duos annos
the-clergy or household your keep which when through two years
factum fuisset, et rex talia munera dissimulanter accipi
done had-been and the-king such gifts without-remark to-be-received
iuberet, tercio anno iam venit episcopus et per se
ordered in-the-third year now came the-bishop and through himself
ipsum tanto labore et tam longe adducta repraesentare
self with-so-great labor and so far brought to-present
curavit. Tunc equissimus Karolus, curis et laboribus
took-care then the-most-fair Charles with-the-cares and labors
eius compassus, dedit ad eundem episcopatum optimam
of-him having-sympathized gave to the-same bishopric an-excellent
curtem, unde frumentum et vinum ad suas et suorum
estate whence grain and wine for his-own and his-men's
necessitates ipse et successores eius habere potuissent.
needs he-himself and successors of-him to-have could

XVI · THE SPICED MOUSE

To humble a vain and greedy bishop, Charles has a Jewish merchant sell him a mouse stuffed with spices as a rare animal from Judea. The bishop bids three pounds of silver, then ten, then twenty, and at last a bushel. Charles displays the silver before the assembled bishops, rebukes their greed, and tells how one of them paid it for a spiced mouse. The bishop begs pardon.

Quia retulimus, quomodo sapientissimus Karolus humiles
because we-have-related how the-most-wise Charles the-humble
exaltaverit, referamus etiam, qualiter superbos humiliaverit.
exalted let-us-relate also how the-proud he-humbled
Fuit quidam episcopus, vanae gloriae et inanium rerum
there-was a-certain bishop of-vain glory and of-empty things
valde cupidus. Quod sagacissimus Karolus deprehendens,
very desirous which the-most-shrewd Charles detecting
praecepit cuidam Iudeo mercatori, qui terram repromissionis
commanded a-certain Jew merchant who the-land of-promise
sepius adire et inde ad cismarinas provincias multa preciosa
often to-visit and from-there to the-cismarine provinces many precious
et incognita solitus erat afferre, ut eundem episcopum
and unknown-things accustomed was to-bring that the-same bishop
quolibet modo deciperet aut illuderet. Qui, comprehendens
in-any way he-should-deceive or make-a-fool-of who catching
unum murem domesticum, diversis aromatibus condivit et
one mouse domestic with-diverse spices seasoned and
praefato episcopo venalem apportavit; dicens, se de Iudea
to-the-aforesaid bishop for-sale brought saying himself from Judea
illud preciosissimum animal et ante non visum adtulisse.
that most-precious animal and before not seen to-have-brought
Ille, ad rem tantam gaudio repletus, optulit ei tres libras
he at a-thing so-great with-joy filled offered to-him three pounds

de argento, ut carissimum illud munus deberet accipere. Tunc
of silver that very-dear that gift he-should to-receive then
dixit Iudeus: Quam decorum precium pro tam caro munere!
said the-Jew how fine a-price for so dear a-gift
Prius hoc in profundum maris proicio, quam quilibet
sooner this into the-depth of-the-sea I-throw than any
hominum tam vili et turpissimo precio illud acquirat. Ille,
of-men for-so cheap and most-shameful a-price it should-acquire he
qui multa habebat et nichil pauperibus unquam praebuerat,
who much had and nothing to-the-poor ever had-furnished
promisit ei decem libras, ut incomparabilem illam rem
promised to-him ten pounds that the-incomparable that thing
posset accipere. Tunc astutus homo ille, indignatione
he-might-be-able to-receive then cunning man that with-indignation
simulata, dixit: Nolit Deus Abraham, ut ita perdam
feigned said may-not-will God of-Abraham that so I-should-lose
laborem meum et subvectionem meam. Tunc avarus ille
labor my and transport my then greedy that
episcopus, tam carum munus inhians, proposuit ei viginti
bishop so dear a-gift gaping-after proposed to-him twenty
libras. Iudeus ergo turbidus, murem preciosissimo serico
pounds the-Jew therefore angry the-mouse in-most-precious silk
involvens, cepit abire. Episcopus vero, quasi deceptus sed vere
wrapping began to-go-away the-bishop but as-if deceived but truly
decipiendus, revocavit eum et dedit ei plenum modium de
to-be-deceived called-back him and gave to-him a-full bushel of
argento, ut preciosissimo illo munere potiri potuisset.
silver that of-the-most-precious that gift to-become-master he-might-be-able
Tandem igitur mercator ille, multis precibus ambitus, vix
at-last therefore merchant that with-many prayers solicited scarcely
concessit; et acceptum argentum imperatori pertulit et omnia
yielded and the-received silver to-the-emperor carried and all-things

supra dicta narravit. Post dies autem non multos convocavit
above mentioned narrated after days moreover not many summoned
rex omnes episcopos et proceres eiusdem provinciae
the-king all the-bishops and nobles of-the-same province
ad colloquium suum; et post multa tractata necessaria
to conference his-own and after many-things discussed necessary
praecepit afferri totum illud argentum et in medio
he-commanded to-be-brought all that silver and in the-middle
palacio poni. Tunc sic pronuntians ait: Vos, patres et
of-the-palace to-be-placed then thus pronouncing he-said you fathers and
provisores nostri episcopi, pauperibus immo Christo in ipsis
providers our bishops the-poor nay Christ in them
debuistis ministrare, non inanibus rebus inhiare. Nunc autem,
you-ought to-serve not empty things to-gape-after now moreover
in contrarium cuncta vertentes, cenodoxiae vel avariciae super
into the-contrary all-things turning vainglory or avarice above
omnes mortales intenditis. Et adiecit: Unus vestrum tantum
all mortals you-pursue and he-added one of-you so-much
argenti pro mure uno domestico pigmentato cuidam dedit
of-silver for a-mouse one domestic spiced to-a-certain gave
Iudeo. Ille autem, qui tanto flagicio deceptus erat, ad
Jew he moreover who by-so-great a-disgrace deceived was at
pedes eius corruens, veniam pro commisso precabatur. Quem
the-feet of-him falling pardon for the-offense begged whom
ipse, digna invectione coercitum, confusum permisit abire.
he with-fitting reproof restrained confounded allowed to-go-away

The same bishop is left to guard Queen Hildegard while Charles fights the Huns, and covets Charles's golden scepter as a crozier. The queen promises in mockery to plead for him. Before an assembly from almost all Europe, Charles declares that bishops ought to despise the world, yet one wants the king's scepter for a crozier. The bishop admits his guilt and is pardoned.

Idem quoque episcopus, cum bellicosissimus Karolus in bello
the-same also bishop when the-most-warlike Charles in war
contra Hunos esset occupatus, ad custodiam gloriosissimae
against the-Huns was occupied for the-guarding of-the-most-glorious
Hildigardae relictus est. Qui cum familiaritate illius animari
Hildegard left was who when by-the-intimacy of-her to-be-emboldened
coepisset, in tantam progressus est proterviam, ut virgam
he-began into such gone-forward has impudence that the-rod
auream incomparabilis Karoli, quam ad statum suum fieri
golden of-the-incomparable Charles which for stature his-own to-be-made
iussit, feriatis diebus vice baculi ferendam pro episcopali
he-ordered on-feast days instead of-a-staff to-be-carried for the-episcopal
ferula improbus ambiret. Quae, illum callide deludens, dixit,
crozier shamelessly he-coveted who him cleverly mocking said
non audere se eam cuilibet homini dare, sed tamen fidam
not to-dare herself it to-any man to-give but yet faithful
se adlegationem eius causae apud regem fore. Veniente
herself the-pleader of-his cause with the-king about-to-be coming
autem eo, suggessit illa ioculariter, quae amens postulavit
moreover him suggested she jestingly what mad asked
episcopus. Cuius peticioni iocundissime rex assentiens,
the-bishop whose to-petition most-pleasantly the-king assenting
promisit etiam, se plus facturum quam illa peteret.
promised even himself more about-to-do than she asked

Cum autem cuncta pene Europa ad triumphatorem tantae
when moreover all almost Europe to the-triumpher-over so-great
gentis Karolum convenisset, pronuntiavit haec in auribus
a-people Charles had-gathered he-pronounced these-things in the-ears
maiorum et minorum: Episcopi contemptores huius mundi
of-the-greater and lesser the-bishops despisers of-this world
debuerunt esse et alios exemplo sui ad appetenda
ought to-be and others by-the-example of-themselves to things-to-be-sought
celestia provocare. Nunc vero prae caeteris mortalibus
heavenly to-incite now but beyond the-other mortals
tanta ambitione corrupti sunt, ut quidam ex eis,
with-so-great ambition corrupted they-were that a-certain-one of them
non contentus episcopatu, quem in prima sede Germaniae
not content with-the-bishopric which in the-first see of-Germany
retinet, sceptrum nostrum, quod pro significatione regiminis
he-holds the-scepter our which for the-signifying of-rule
nostri aureum ferre solemus, pro pastorali baculo, nobis
our golden to-carry we-are-accustomed for the-pastoral staff with-us
ignorantibus, sibi vendicare voluisset. Reus, reatum
not-knowing for-himself to-claim would-have-wished the-culprit guilt
suum cognoscens, indulgentia percepta, recessit.
his-own recognizing pardon received withdrew

The author fears offending the clergy by carrying out the emperor's command. When Charles orders every bishop to preach or lose his see, the vain bishop calls two palace nobles to a feast day, has a poor red-haired man dragged forward for covering his head with a boot, and proclaims him a sluggard. He feasts the nobles and bribes them to praise him, but Charles, learning the truth, lets him keep the see.

Nimium pertimesco, o domne imperator Karole, ne, dum
too-much I-am-afraid O lord emperor Charles lest while
iussionem vestram implere cupio, omnium professionum et
the-command your to-fulfill I-desire of-all professions and
maxime summorum sacerdotum offensionem incurram. Sed
chiefly of-the-highest priests the-offense I-incur but
tamen de his omnibus non grandis mihi cura est, si
yet about these all not great to-me care is if
tantum vestra defensione non destituar.
only by-your defense not I-be-abandoned
Precepit aliquando religiosissimus Karolus imperator, ut omnes
commanded once the-most-religious Charles emperor that all
episcopi per latissimum regnum suum aut ante praefinitum
bishops through the-very-broad kingdom his-own either before the-predetermined
diem, quem ipse constituerat, in aecclesiasticae sedis basilica
day which he-himself had-appointed in of-the-episcopal see the-basilica
praedicarent aut, quicumque non faceret, episcopatus honore
should-preach or whoever not did of-the-bishopric of-the-honor
careret. Sed quid dico: honore? cum apostolus protestetur: Si
should-lack but why do-I-say honor when the-apostle declares if
quis episcopatum desiderat, bonum opus desiderat. Sed vere
anyone a-bishopric desires a-good work he-desires but truly
vobis, serenissime regum, occulte fateor: quia magnus honor
to-you most-serene of-kings secretly I-confess that great honor

in eo; opus vero bonum nec minimum requiritur in illo.
in it work but good nor the-least is-required in it
Supra dictus igitur episcopus, primo ad tale praeceptum
the-above mentioned therefore bishop first at such a-command
conterritus, cum nichil aliud sciret nisi deliciis affluere et
terrified since nothing else he-knew except in-luxuries to-abound and
superbia, timens autem, ne, si episcopatu careret, luxuria
in-pride fearing moreover lest if of-the-bishopric he-were-deprived of-the-luxury
sua pariter viduaretur, vocavit duos de primoribus palatinis
his-own equally should-be-bereft called two of the-chief palace-men
ad diem festum, et post lectionem euangelii ascendit in
to a-day festal and after the-reading of-the-gospel ascended onto
gradus, quasi ad alloquendum illum populum. Cumque ad
the-steps as-if for addressing that people and-when at
tam inopinatam rem omnes admirati concurrerent, excepto
so unexpected a-thing all having-wondered ran-together except
uno pauperculo valde rufo, gallicula, quia pilleum non
one poor-little-man very red-haired with-a-boot because a-cap not
habuit et de colore suo nimium erubuit, caput induto,
he-had and of color his-own too-much blushed the-head covered
tunc dixit — nominetenus non re vera episcopus —
then said in-name not in-reality true bishop
ad hostiarium vel scarionem suum, cuius dignitatis aut
to doorkeeper or steward his-own of-which rank or
ministerii viri apud antiquos Romanos ediliciorum nomine
office men among the-ancient Romans of-aediles by-the-name
censebantur: Voca ait ad me pilleatum illum hominem,
were-reckoned call he-said to me capped that man
qui stat iuxta ostium ecclesiae. Festinans ille mandatum
who stands near the-door of-the-church hastening he the-command
domini implere, apprehendens miserum, coepit trahere illum
of-the-lord to-fulfill seizing the-wretch began to-drag him

ad episcopum. Qui timens, ne gravi multaretur vindicta,
to the-bishop who fearing lest with-heavy he-be-punished vengeance
quod tecto capite stare in domo Dei praesumeret, totis
because with-covered head to-stand in the-house of-God he-presumed with-all
viribus coepit reniti, ne quasi ad tribunal severissimi iudicis
strength began to-resist lest as-if to the-tribunal of-a-most-severe judge
traheretur. Tunc episcopus, de eminentioribus prospiciens
he-be-dragged then the-bishop from the-higher-place looking-out
et nunc vasallum suum alloquens nunc illum misellum
and now vassal his-own addressing now that wretch
increpitans, excelsa voce clamando praedicavit: Attrahe illum
rebuking in-a-lofty voice shouting preached drag him
huc; cave ne dimittas! Velis nolis, huc debes venire.
hither take-care not you-let-go whether-you-will or-not hither you-must to-come
Cum ergo aut vi aut metu devictus appropinquaret,
when therefore either by-force or by-fear overcome he-approached
dixit episcopus: Accede propius; appropinqua etiam! Atque
said the-bishop come nearer approach even and
deinde apprehensum capitis tegmen abstraxit, et ad plebem
then seized of-the-head the-covering pulled-off and to the-people
proclamavit: Ecce videtis o populi; rufus iste ignavus
proclaimed behold you-see O peoples red-head this a-sluggard
est. Et reversus ad altare, solemnia consecravit vel
is and having-returned to the-altar the-solemnities consecrated or
se consecrare simulavit. Talibus ergo missis ad finem
himself to-consecrate pretended such therefore masses to the-end
perductis, ingrediuntur in aulam, variis tapetibus et
brought they-enter into the-hall with-various carpets and
omnigenis ornatam palliis; ubi oppipare illud convivium,
with-all-kinds-of adorned hangings where sumptuously that feast
auro vel argento sive gemmeis vasis innisum, fastidio
with-gold or silver or jeweled vessels resting with-loathing

vel nausea laborantes in sui desiderium possit allicere.
or with-nausea those-laboring into of-itself desire could to-allure
Sedebat autem ipse super mollissimas plumas, preciosissimo
sat moreover he-himself upon softest feathers in-most-precious
serico vestitus, imperatoria purpura indutus, ita ut nichil
silk clothed with-imperial purple dressed so that nothing
illi nisi sceptrum et nomen regium deesset; ditissimorum
to-him except the-scepter and the-name royal was-lacking of-the-richest
militum cohortibus septus, in quorum comparatione illi
soldiers by-cohorts surrounded in whose comparison those
palatini, hoc est invictissimi Karoli proceres, vilissimi
palace-men that is of-the-most-unconquered Charles the-nobles most-worthless
sibimet ipsis viderentur. Qui cum post admirabile illud
to-themselves selves seemed who when after admirable that
et regibus inusitatum convivium licentiam abeundi peterent,
and to-kings unusual feast leave of-departing they-asked
ille, ut eis magnificentiam suam et gloriam manifestius
he that to-them magnificence his-own and glory more-manifestly
ostenderet, iussit procedere peritissimos cantandi magistros
he-might-show ordered to-come-forth the-most-skilled of-singing masters
cum omnibus organis musicorum, de quorum vocibus et
with all instruments of-musicians of whose voices and
sonitu fortissima quoque corda mollescerent et liquidissima
sound the-strongest also hearts would-soften and the-most-liquid
Reni fluenta durescerent. Potuum vero diversissima genera,
of-the-Rhine streams would-harden of-drinks but most-diverse kinds
variis pigmentis aut medicaminibus contemperata, herbis
with-various spices or drugs blended with-herbs
et floribus, gemmarum vel auri fulgorem in se
and flowers of-gems or of-gold the-gleam into themselves
trahentibus suumque ruborem illis infundentibus, coronata,
drawing and-their-own redness on-them pouring crowned

restagnantibus iam stomachis, tepebant in manibus. Interea
with-overflowing already stomachs grew-warm in hands meanwhile
vero pistores, lanii, coqui et fartores plenis ventribus
but bakers butchers cooks and sausage-makers with-full bellies
omnimoda gulae irritamenta exquisitis artibus praeparabant,
all-kinds-of of-gluttony incitements with-exquisite arts prepared
qualis nunquam coena magno Karolo composita est.
such-as never a-dinner for-the-great Charles composed was
Mane autem facto, cum aliquantisper ad sobrietatem rediret
morning moreover come when somewhat to sobriety returned
episcopus et luxum, quem pridie coram satellitibus
the-bishop and the-luxury which the-day-before before the-attendants
imperatoris expenderat, perhorresceret, iussit eos adduci
of-the-emperor he-had-spent shuddered-at he-ordered them to-be-brought
ad se; et regiis muneribus honoratos adiuravit: ut de
to himself and with-royal gifts honored adjured that about
se bona et modesta apud terribilem Karolum narrare
himself good and modest-things before the-terrible Charles to-tell
dignarentur et quia publice in aecclesia ipsis audientibus
they-would-deign and that publicly in the-church them hearing
praedicaret. Quos cum reversos imperator interrogaret, cur
he-preached whom when returned the-emperor asked why
eos episcopus ille vocaret, procidentes ad eius pedes dixerunt:
them bishop that called falling at his feet they-said
Domine, ut nos in vestro nomine supra mediocritatem
lord that us in your name beyond middling-station
nostram honoraret. Et adiecerunt: Fidelissimus vobis est
our he-might-honor and they-added most-faithful to-you is
et omnibus vestris optimus ille episcopus summoque
and to-all yours excellent that bishop and-of-the-highest
sacerdotio dignissimus. Nam si nostrae vilitati credere
priesthood most-worthy for if our lowliness to-believe

dignamini, fatemur sublimitati vestrae, quoniam declamatorie
you-deign we-confess to-highness your that declamatorily
audivimus illum praedicare. Cumque imperator, imperitiae
we-heard him preach and-when the-emperor of-the-unskill
illius non ignarus, de modo praedicationis interrogaret, illi,
of-him not ignorant about the-manner of-the-preaching asked they
fallere non audentes, omnia per ordinem retexuerunt. Tunc
to-deceive not daring all-things in order unfolded then
intellegens, timoris sui causa magis aliquid illum loqui
understanding of-fear his-own for-the-sake more something him to-say
conatum quam praeceptum suum praetermittere ausum,
to-have-tried than command his-own to-neglect to-have-dared
licet indignum, retinere permisit episcopatum.
though unworthy to-keep he-allowed the-bishopric

XIX · THE ALLELUIA

When a young kinsman of the king sings the Alleluia beautifully on a feast day, Charles remarks to the same bishop how well their cleric has sung. Not knowing who the singer is, the bishop jokes that any rustic can drone like that to his plowing oxen. The emperor turns such a thunderous glare on him that he falls to the ground.

Post tempus vero non longum cum quidam iuvenis, cognatus
after a-time but not long when a-certain youth a-kinsman
regis, optime in quadam festivitate caneret Alleluia, dixit
of-the-king excellently on a-certain festival was-singing Alleluia said
imperator ad eundem episcopum: Bene cantavit modo ille
the-emperor to the-same bishop well has-sung just-now that
noster clericus. Qui, iuxta stulticiam suam ioculariter illa
our cleric who according-to foolishness his-own jestingly those
verba suscipiens, et illum imperatoris cognatum esse nesciens,
words taking and him of-the-emperor a-kinsman to-be not-knowing

respondit: Sic omnes perriparii possunt bubus agricolantibus
answered so all rustics can to-oxen plowing
veternare. Ad quod responsum improbissimum fulmineas in
to-drone at which answer most-shameless lightning-like on
eum acies imperator intorquens attonitum terrae prostravit.
him glances the-emperor hurling thunderstruck to-the-earth laid-low

XX · THE FOX

A bishop of a tiny city wants to be honored as a saint in his lifetime. A vassal who can win no kind word from him sets his dogs on a fox, rescues it alive, and brings it as a gift, swearing he stopped it in the name of his lord Recho. The bishop declares that his holiness is now plain, and from then on loves the man he hated.

Fuit alius episcopus parvissimae civitatulae, qui se, dum
there-was another bishop of-a-very-small little-city who himself while
adhuc in carne viveret, non apostolorum et martyrum
still in the-flesh he-lived not of-the-apostles and martyrs
more intercessorem ad Deum haberi sed ipse divinis
in-the-manner an-intercessor to God to-be-held but himself with-divine
cultibus voluit honorari. Sed talem superbiam hoc modo
worship wished to-be-honored but such pride in-this way
statuit occultare, ut sanctus Dei diceretur, ne omnibus
he-decided to-conceal that holy of-God he-might-be-called lest to-all
abominabilis cum idolis gentium reputaretur. Hic habuit
abominable with the-idols of-the-heathens he-be-reckoned he had
unum vasallum, non ignobilem civium suorum, valde
one vassal not low-born of-citizens his-own very
strennuum et industrium; cui tamen ille, non dicam
vigorous and diligent to-whom yet he not I-will-say
aliquod beneficium, sed ne ullum quidem aliquando blandum
any benefit but not any even ever flattering

sermonem impendit. Qui, nesciens quid agere posset ut
speech bestowed who not-knowing what to-do he-could that
immites eius animos placaret, excogitavit, ut, si aliquod
the-harsh his mind he-might-appease devised that if some
signum in nomine illius se fecisse comprobaret, ad gratiam
miracle in the-name of-him himself to-have-done he-proved to the-favor
ipsius pervenire valeret. Cum ergo de domo sua
of-him to-come he-might-be-able when therefore from house his-own
ad episcopum venire disponeret, assumpsit duas caniculas
to the-bishop to-come he-was-arranging he-took two little-dogs
in manu sua, quas Gallica lingua veltres nuncupat, quae,
in hand his-own which the-Gallic language veltres calls which
agilitate sua vulpes et ceteras minores bestiolas facillime
by-agility their-own foxes and the-other smaller little-beasts most-easily
capientes, caras etiam et alia volatilia ascensu celeriore sepe
catching cara-birds also and other birds by-a-leap swifter often
deciperent. Et dum in via vulpem muribus insidiantem
would-ensnare and when on the-way a-fox for-mice lying-in-wait
videret, ex improviso canes illi tacitus immisit. Quae,
he-saw from the-unforeseen the-dogs at-it silently he-let-loose which
volatu rapidissimo ruentes post illam, intra iactum sagittae
with-flight most-swift rushing after it within the-cast of-an-arrow
comprehenderunt. Ipse quoque cursu praepeti subsecutus,
seized he-himself also at-pace swift having-followed-after
vivam et sanam dentibus canum et unguibus excussit.
alive and sound from-the-teeth of-the-dogs and claws shook-out
Canes autem ubi potuit abscondens, tripudians cum illo
the-dogs moreover where he-could hiding dancing-with-joy with that
munere ad dominum suum introivit; et suppliciter infit: Ecce,
gift to lord his-own he-went-in and humbly begins behold
domine, quale munus ego pauperculus acquirere potui.
lord what-sort-of a-gift I poor-little to-acquire have-been-able

Tunc episcopus, parum arridens, interrogavit, quomodo illam
then the-bishop a-little smiling asked how it
ita sanam comprehenderet. At ille, propius accedens et per
so sound he-caught but he nearer approaching and by
salutem ipsius domini sui iurans quod veritatem non
the-salvation of-that-very lord his-own swearing that the-truth not
celaret, intulit: Domine, per campum istum caballicans, et
he-would-hide declared lord through field that riding and
vulpem istam non longinquam aspiciens, laxis habenis post
fox that not distant seeing with-loose reins after
illam tendere coepi. Porro, cum ipsa tam perniciter aufugeret,
it to-press-on I-began further when she so swiftly fled
ut vix eam videre iam potuissem, elevata manu adiuravi
that scarcely her to-see now I-could raised the-hand I-adjured
illam dicens: „In nomine domini mei Rechonis sta et non
her saying in the-name of-lord my Recho stand and not
movearis ultra“. Et ecce quasi catenis obligata stetit in
be-moved further and behold as-if with-chains bound she-stood in
loco fixa, donec eam quasi ovem derelictam tollerem. Tunc
the-place fixed until her like a-sheep abandoned I-took-up then
ille, inani gestione perflatus, dixit coram omnibus: Nunc
he with-empty exultation puffed-up said before all now
apparet sanctitas mea, nunc scio quis sim, nunc agnosco
appears holiness my now I-know who I-am now I-recognize
quid futurus sim. Ex illo die exosum illum hominem super
what about-to-be I-am from that day hated that man above
omnes familiares suos miro coluit amore.
all intimates his-own with-wonderful he-cherished love

Tempted by the devil to crave meat in Lent, a holy bishop eats a little and despairs. To atone he fasts and on Holy Saturday bathes and shaves the needy. At the church the devil meets him as a foul leper. He shaves the leper, but the hair regrows and an eye opens in its throat; the bishop crosses himself, and the devil vanishes, saying the eye watched him eat meat.

Hec, quia ita se obtulit occasio, extrinsecus cum
these-things because so itself offered the-occasion from-outside although
sint inserta, non ab re videtur, etiam caetera,
they-are inserted not from the-matter it-seems also the-other-things
quae hisdem temporibus memoria digna sunt gesta, stili
which in-the-same times of-memory worthy were done of-the-pen
officio religare. Erat quidam episcopus in Francia nova
by-the-service to-bind there-was a-certain bishop in Francia new
mirae sanctitatis et abstinentiae, incomparabilis etiam
of-wonderful holiness and abstinence incomparable also
liberalitatis et misericordiae. Cuius bonitate invidus omnis
of-liberality and mercy whose by-goodness envious of-all
iusticiae hostis antiquus nimium exasperatus tale illi
justice the-enemy ancient too-much exasperated such on-him
desiderium edendae carnis in diebus quadragesimae inmisit, ut
a-desire of-eating of-flesh in the-days of-Lent cast that
absque recrastinatione se moriturum putaret, nisi eiusmodi
without postponement himself about-to-die he-thought unless with-such
recrearetur edulio. Consilio tamen multorum sanctorum et
he-were-refreshed food by-the-counsel yet of-many holy and
venerabilium patrum et sacerdotum roboratus, ut carnes pro
venerable fathers and priests strengthened that flesh for
recuperatione sanitatis acciperet et postea per totum annum
the-recovery of-health he-should-take and afterward through the-whole year

more solito se maceraret, ne ipsis inoboediens et
in-the-manner accustomed himself should-mortify lest to-them disobedient and
vitae suae perditor inveniretur, eorum cedens auctoritati et
of-life his-own a-destroyer he-should-be-found of-them yielding to-the-authority and
ultima necessitate coactus, parum quid de quadrupedante
by-the-last necessity compelled a-little something of four-footed
carne misit in buccam. Quod cum masticare coepisset et
flesh he-put into the-mouth which when to-chew he-had-begun and
gustum illius sensu palati tenuissime percepisset, tanto
the-taste of-it with-the-sense of-the-palate most-faintly had-perceived with-such
mox fastidio vel odio non solum carnium seu caeterarum
soon loathing or hatred not only of-meats or of-the-other
escarum sed et lucis ipsius et vitae praesentis cum salutis
foods but also of-light itself and of-life present with of-salvation
suae desperatione correptus est, ut ultra nec manducare
his-own despair seized he-was that further neither to-eat
vellet nec bibere, aut spem suam in salvatore perditorum
he-wished nor to-drink or hope his-own in the-savior of-the-lost
ponere confideret. Cum autem haec prima ebdomada
to-place dared when moreover these-things in-the-first week
quadragesimae gererentur, suggerebant ei praefati patres,
of-Lent were-being-done suggested to-him the-aforesaid fathers
ut, quoniam diabolica se illusione deceptum cognosceret,
that since by-diabolical himself illusion deceived he-knew
acrioribus ieiuniis et contricione cordis elemosinarumque
by-sharper fasts and contrition of-heart and-of-alms
largitate momentaneum illud peccatum superducere extenuare
by-the-largess momentary that sin to-cover-over to-lessen
vel abluere niteretur. Qui — ut erat optime institutus
or to-wash-away he-should-strive who as he-was excellently trained
cunctis, eorum consilio parens, ut et diaboli maliciam
in-all-things of-them to-the-counsel obeying that both of-the-devil the-malice

confunderet et apud innocentiae restitutorem commissi
he-might-confound and with of-innocence the-restorer for-the-offense
veniam impetraret, biduanis vel triduanis ieiuniis se affligens,
pardon he-might-obtain with-two-day or three-day fasts himself afflicting
somni quietem fugiens, pauperibus et peregrinis per se
of-sleep the-rest fleeing to-the-poor and pilgrims through himself
ipsum cottidie ministrans eorumque pedes abluens, vestesque
self daily ministering and-their feet washing and-garments
et pecunias iuxta facultatem illis offerens et ultra
and money according-to his-means to-them offering and further
etiam impendere volens — die sancto sabbati paschalis
even to-spend wishing on-the-day holy of-Saturday of-Easter
plurima dolia de tota civitate postulavit, et calidas balneas
very-many casks from the-whole city he-asked-for and hot baths
a mane usque ad vesperam cunctis indigentibus exhibere
from morning all-the-way to evening for-all the-needy to-furnish
curavit, et colla singulorum ipse manu sua rasit, et
took-care and the-necks of-each he-himself with-hand his-own shaved and
purulentas scabies et hirsutorum corporum vepres unguibus
the-festering scabs and of-the-hairy bodies thorns with-his-nails
extraxit, et ungentis delibutos candidis vestibus quasi modo
drew-out and with-ointments anointed in-white garments as-if just-now
regeneratos induit. Cum autem sol appropinquaret occasui,
reborn he-clothed when moreover the-sun was-approaching its-setting
et nullus iam maneret qui talibus indigeret obsequiis,
and no-one now remained who such needed services
intravit ipse in balneum; et exiens, mundata conscientia,
entered he-himself into the-bath and going-out cleansed in-conscience
mundissimis opertus est lineis, ut iudicio sanctorum
in-most-clean covered was linens that by-the-judgment of-the-holy
episcoporum solemnia populo celebraret. Cumque iam
bishops the-solemnities for-the-people he-might-celebrate and-when already

ad aecclesiam procederet, callidus adversarius — propositum
to the-church he-was-proceeding the-crafty adversary the-purpose
illius violare cupiens, quasi contra votum suum aliquem
of-him to-violate wishing as-if against vow his-own some
pauperem non lotum episcopus dimitteret — assumpta
poor-man not washed the-bishop had-dismissed taken
specie foedissimi luridissimique leprosi, sanie fluvidi,
the-appearance of-a-most-foul and-most-sallow leper with-pus flowing
tabo pannis rigentibus amicti, gressu tremente nutabundi,
with-gore in-rags stiff clothed with-step trembling tottering
nimia raucedine miserandi, ante limen aecclesiae se
with-excessive hoarseness pitiable before the-threshold of-the-church himself
illi obvium tulit. Tunc sanctus antistes, instinctu
to-him to-meet brought then the-holy bishop at-the-prompting
divino regressus, ut cognosceret, quali nuper inimico
divine having-returned that he-might-know to-what-sort-of lately enemy
succumberet, extractis albis, aquam sine mora calefieri
he-was-submitting drawn-off the-white-vestments water without delay to-be-heated
et ipsum misellum in ipsam fecit imponi. Assumptaque
and the-very wretch into it he-caused to-be-placed and-taken
novacula, turpissimum collum eius coepit radere. Cumque
a-razor the-most-foul neck of-him he-began to-shave and-when
ab una aure usque ad medias derasisset arterias, coepit
from one ear all-the-way to the-middle he-had-shaved-off of-the-arteries he-began
ab alia, ut ad eundem locum rasuram perduceret. Illuc
from the-other that to the-same place the-shaving he-might-bring there
autem rasorio perveniens, setas longiores quam absciderat,
moreover with-the-razor arriving bristles longer than he-had-cut-off
mira dictu, renatas invenit. Et cum hoc sepe fieret, et
wonderful to-say grown-again he-found and when this often happened and
ille radere non cessaret, ecce inter manus radentis episcopi
he to-shave not ceased behold between the-hands of-the-shaving bishop

— horresco referens — oculus mirae magnitudinis in
I-shudder relating an-eye of-wonderful size in
arteriarum medio coepit apparere. Tunc ille pavefactus
of-the-arteries the-middle began to-appear then he terrified
a tali monstro prosiluit et se in Christi nomine
from such a-monster leaped-back and himself in Christ's name
cum ingenti clamore consignavit. Ante cuius invocationem
with huge shouting signed before whose invocation
fraudulentus hostis, ultra fallaciam suam abscondere non
the-deceitful enemy further deception his-own to-hide not
valens, ceu fumus evanuit; et abscedens dixit: Iste oculus
able like smoke vanished and departing said this eye
vigilanter intendit, quando tu carnem in ieiunio comedisti.
watchfully attended when you flesh in the-fast ate

XXII · THE FALLEN BISHOP

Another holy bishop lets young nuns lodge with him for study. After the Easter vigil, warmed by Alsatian wine, he defiles a beautiful woman. Next morning he freezes at the altar, lays down his vestments, and confesses to the people, weeping. The people insist that he alone celebrate the feast, and after almost three hours God gives him back the courage to celebrate.

In eadem quoque regione fuit alius episcopus incomparabilis
in the-same also region there-was another bishop of-incomparable
sanctitatis. Qui incauta securitate, iam quasi ignarus
holiness who with-incautious security now as-if ignorant
feminei sexus, sanctimoniales iuvenculas non minus quam
of-the-female sex nuns young no less than
grandevos sacerdotes discendi gratia diversari permisit
aged priests of-learning for-the-sake to-lodge allowed

secum. Cum autem in ipsa festivitate paschali post
with-himself when moreover on the-very festival Easter after
officium divinum, quod super mediam noctem protraxit,
the-office divine which beyond the-middle of-night he-prolonged
Alasatiensi illo Sigultario se licentius indulsisset, et simul
with-Alsatian that Sigolsheimer himself too-freely had-indulged and together
cum illo fortiori Falerno cuiusdam venustissimae feminae
with that stronger Falernian of-a-certain most-beautiful woman
vultus et meretricios gestus heu nimis enerviter in se
the-face and harlot's gestures alas too weakly into himself
pertraxisset, recedentibus caeteris, illam ad lectum suum
had-drawn withdrawing the-others her to bed his-own
vocatam lugubriter stupravit. Mane vero rutilante, citus
called mournfully he-defiled morning but reddening quickly
exurgens et iuxta gentiles noctem flumine purgans, ante
rising and according-to the-heathen the-night in-the-river cleansing before
inevitabiles verae deitatis oculos maculata conscientia processit.
the-inescapable of-true deity eyes with-stained conscience he-went-forth
Cumque, praemissis melodiis, ipse iuxta ministerium
and-when the-preceding melodies he-himself according-to office
suum imponere debuisset ymnum angelicum, pavefactus
his-own to-begin had-been-due the-hymn angelic terrified
obstupuit; et sacri ministerii vestes super altare
he-was-struck-dumb and of-the-sacred office the-vestments upon the-altar
posuit atque, ad populum conversus, reatum suum confessus
placed and to the-people turned guilt his-own confessed
est. Deinde corruens ad crepidinem altaris, inaestimabilibus
has then falling at the-step of-the-altar with-inestimable
ablutus est lacrimarum fluentis. Populo vero instante, ut
bathed he-was of-tears streams the-people but pressing that
exurgeret, et se terribilibus sacramentis astringente, quod
he-should-rise and themselves by-terrible oaths binding that

illa praecipua die non sibi ab alio aliquo quam ab
on-that special day not for-themselves by another anyone than by
ipso pastore sacra missarum celebrari paterentur, et
the-very shepherd the-sacred-rites of-the-masses to-be-celebrated they-would-allow and
ille loco moveri non posset, atque haec concertatio
he from-the-place to-be-moved not could and this contest
per trium fere horarum spacia transiret; tandem clementia
through of-three almost hours the-space passed at-last the-clemency
Conditoris, et vota devoti populi et contritum cor
of-the-Creator both the-prayers of-the-devout people and the-contrite heart
episcopi miserata, sic in pavimento iacentem revestivit et,
of-the-bishop having-pitied thus on the-pavement lying reclothed and
de sua certioratum indulgentia, ad contrectanda coelestia
of his-own assured pardon to handling the-heavenly
et metuenda misteria — in exemplum verae poenitentiae
and to-be-feared mysteries as an-example of-true penitence
vel cautelam nusquam et nunquam in hoc seculo tutae sed
or a-warning nowhere and never in this world safe but
semper et ubique vanae securitatis — misericorditer animavit.
always and everywhere vain of-security mercifully emboldened

XXIII · THE LARVA

In a famine a miserly bishop sells his grain dear. A hobgoblin who plays with a smith's hammers by night promises the smith a full cup every day, and steals wine from the bishop's cellar. The bishop seals the cellar with holy water and the cross, and the goblin, caught there in human form, is beaten as a thief. The tale shows how much God's name avails.

In Francia quoque quae antiqua dicitur fuit alius
in Francia also which old is-called there-was another
episcopus supra modum tenacitate constrictus. Cum autem
bishop beyond measure by-stinginess bound when moreover
sterilitas omnium terrae proventuum quodam anno insolito
a-barrenness of-all of-the-earth produce in-a-certain year unusual
orbem depopularetur universum, tunc avarus ille negotiator,
the-world was-ravaging whole then greedy that trader
omnium mortalium immo iam morientium ultima necessitate
of-all mortals nay already dying in-the-last necessity
gavisus, repositoria sua praecepit aperire, nimium care
having-rejoiced storehouses his-own he-commanded to-open too dearly
venundanda. Tunc demon qui dicitur larva, cui curae est
to-be-sold then the-demon who is-called larva to-whom for-care it-is
ludicris hominum vel illusionibus vacare, fecit consuetudinem
to-the-sports of-men or to-the-illusions to-attend made a-custom
ad cuiusdam fabri ferrarii domum venire et per noctes
to of-a-certain smith iron-working the-house to-come and through the-nights
malleis et incudibus ludere. Cumque pater ille familias
with-hammers and anvils to-play and-when father that of-the-household
signo salutiferae crucis se suaque munire conaretur,
by-the-sign of-the-saving cross himself and-his-own to-protect tried
respondit pilosus: Mi compater, si non vetaveris me in
answered the-hairy-one my gossip if not you-shall-forbid me in

officina tua ioculari, appone hic poticulam tuam; et cottidie
workshop your to-play put here little-cup your and daily
plenam invenies illam. Tunc miser ille, plus penuriam
full you-will-find it then wretched that-one more want
metuens corporalem quam aeternam animae perditionem,
fearing bodily than eternal of-the-soul perdition
fecit iuxta suasionem adversarii. Qui, assumpto pergrandi
did according-to the-persuasion of-the-adversary who taken a-very-large
flascone, cellarium Bromii vel Ditis illius sepius irrumpens,
flask the-cellar of-Bromius or of-Dis that often breaking-into
rapina perpetrata, reliqua in pavimentum fluere permisit.
the-robbery perpetrated the-rest onto the-pavement to-flow allowed
Cumque iam tali modo plurimae cuppe exinanitae fuissent,
and-when already in-such way very-many casks emptied had-been
animadvertens episcopus, quoniam daemonum fraude tanta
noticing the-bishop that of-demons by-the-fraud so-much
perissent, benedicta aqua cellam aspersit et invictae
had-perished with-blessed water the-cellar sprinkled and of-the-unconquered
crucis signaculo tutavit. Nocte autem facta, iterum larva cum
cross by-the-sign protected night moreover come again the-larva with
flascone venit, et cum vinaria vasa propter impressionem
the-flask came and when the-wine vessels on-account-of the-impression
sanctae crucis non auderet attingere neque ei liceret
of-the-holy cross not he-dared to-touch nor to-him was-it-permitted
exire, in humana specie repertus et a custode domus
to-go-out in human appearance found and by the-keeper of-the-house
alligatus, pro fure ad publicum ductus et ad palam cesus,
bound for a-thief to the-public led and in open beaten
inter cedendum hoc solum proclamavit: Ve mihi, quia
amid being-beaten this only he-cried-out woe to-me because
poticulam compatris mei perdidi! Hoc, licet historia sit
the-little-cup of-gossip my I-have-lost this although a-story it-be

verum, iccirco protulerim, ut sciatur: cui proveniant
true for-this-reason I-have-brought-forward that it-be-known to-whom come
abiurata et in diebus necessitatis abstrusa; et quantum valeat
things-forsworn and in days of-necessity hidden and how-much avails
divini nominis invocatio, etiam per non bonos adhibita.
of-the-divine name the-invocation even by not good-men applied

XXIV · THE DEVIL AS A MULE

In Italy the devil offers a poor, greedy man riches: he will become a splendid mule for the man to sell dear to a bishop who loves fine things. The bishop pays a fortune, rides the mule proudly through the city at midday, and takes it to the river to cool. The mule plunges into a whirlpool with him, and fishermen barely pull him out.

Dum autem oculos ad Francorum caput intendo eiusque
while moreover the-eyes to of-the-Franks the-head I-direct and-its
membra perlustro, reliquarum gentium summos et infimos
limbs I-survey of-the-remaining peoples the-highest and lowest
post tergum reliqui. Sed iam ad vicinos nostros Italos, una
behind the-back I-have-left but now to neighbors our the-Italians by-one
tantummodo macheria divisos, veniendum est. Erat ibi
only wall divided to-be-come it-is there-was there
quidam episcopus, inanium rerum valde cupidissimus. Quod
a-certain bishop of-empty things very most-desirous which
diabolus advertens cuidam pauperculo avaritia tamen habundo
the-devil noticing to-a-certain poor-little-man in-avarice yet abounding
in humana se obvium tulit specie, pollicitus: non
in human himself to-meet brought form having-promised not
mediocriter illum esse ditandum, si societatis vinculo in
moderately him to-be to-be-enriched if by-the-bond of-partnership for
perpetuum sibi delegisset adnecti. Quod cum miser
ever to-himself he-should-have-chosen to-be-bound which when the-wretch

profiteri non abnueret, dixit hostis callidus: Converto me in
to-profess not refused said the-enemy crafty I-turn myself into
mulum praestantissimum; tu vero ascende super me, et perge
a-mule most-excellent you but mount upon me and go
ad curtim episcopi. Cum autem ille ad mulum illum emendum
to the-court of-the-bishop when moreover he for mule that to-be-bought
ceperit inhiare, tu rem protrahe, differ, abnue, precium
shall-have-begun to-gape you the-matter drag-out delay refuse the-price
exaggera, indignationemque simulans, recedere para. Tum
exaggerate and-indignation feigning to-withdraw prepare then
necesse est, ut ille mittat post te et plurima promittat.
necessary it-is that he send after you and very-much promise
Tandem, precibus exoratus et infinita pecunia cumulatus,
at-last by-prayers prevailed-upon and with-boundless money heaped
quasi non libenter et coacte mulum illi trade; et
as-if not willingly and under-compulsion the-mule to-him hand-over and
concitus aufugiens latibulum quacumque require. Quod cum
swiftly fleeing a-hiding-place wherever seek which when
factum fuisset, et episcopus, usque ad sequentem diem
done had-been and the-bishop all-the-way to the-following day
expectare non sustinens, in ipso fervore meridiano sonipedem
to-wait not enduring in the-very heat of-midday the-steed
ascendens, per urbem superbiens equitaret, in campum
mounting through the-city proudly was-riding into the-field
volitaturus exibat, ad fluvium refrigerandi gratia properabat.
about-to-fly went-out to the-river of-cooling for-the-sake was-hastening
In cuius favorem omnis sequebatur aetas, ambulationem
in whose favor every was-following age the-gait
volubilissimam, cursum rapidissimum, natatumque delfinis
most-nimble the-run most-swift and-the-swimming to-dolphins
simillimum cernere gestiens. Et ecce antiquus ille Belial, velut
most-like to-see eager and behold the-ancient that Belial as-if

chami frenique inpatiens, et verae gehennae ignibus
of-the-muzzle and-of-the-bridle impatient and of-true Gehenna with-the-fires
aestuans, in profundum gurgitis sese demergere et
burning into the-depth of-the-whirlpool himself to-plunge and
secum episcopum trahere coepit; ita ut vix militari manu
with-himself the-bishop to-drag began so that scarcely by-soldierly hand
et industria piscatorum, qui prope navigabant, extraheretur.
and by-the-diligence of-fishermen who nearby were-sailing he-was-drawn-out

XXV · THE PRIEST AND THE COLD SPRING

A priest is accused of fornication, and when the rumor reaches Charles, he sends two palace men to make the priest say mass for them at dawn. Having sinned that very night, and fearing men more than God, the priest bathes in an ice-cold spring to cleanse himself before the sacrament. He is seized by such a chill and fever that no physician can help him, and he dies by the judgment of God.

Insidiarum etenim peritus adversarius, in via qua
of-snares for skilled the-adversary in the-way in-which
ambulamus laqueos nobis abscondere solitus, alium quidem
we-walk traps for-us to-hide accustomed one indeed
hoc alium vero alio vicio subplantare non desistit. Cuiusdam
by-this another but by-another vice to-trip not ceases of-a-certain
episcopi sacerdoti — nomen in tali re supprimendum
bishop to-the-priest the-name in such a-matter to-be-suppressed
est — fornicationis crimen imponebatur. Cumque hoc iam
is of-fornication the-charge was-imputed and-when this already
ita in noticiam populorum devenisset, ut a referentibus
so into the-knowledge of-the-peoples had-come that by those-reporting
etiam episcoporum episcopo, religiosissimo Karolo, notissimum
even of-bishops to-the-bishop the-most-religious Charles very-well-known

fieret et ille sapientissimus, aliquandiu rem dissimulans,
it-became and he most-wise for-some-time the-matter dissembling
frivolis verbis fidem accommodare noluisset, sed
to-frivolous words belief to-lend had-been-unwilling but

Fama malum, quo non velocius ullum
rumor an-evil than-which not swifter any
Mobilitate viget,
by-motion thrives

de minima meisa super aquilarum magnitudinem excresceret,
from the-smallest gnat beyond of-eagles the-size grew
ut nequaquam iam celari potuisset, districtissimus
so-that by-no-means now to-be-hidden it-could the-strictest
iusticiae inquisitor Karolus misit duos de palatinis; qui, ad
of-justice inquirer Charles sent two of the-palace-men who to
proximum civitati locum vespere divertentes, mane primo
the-nearest to-the-city place at-evening turning-aside at-morning first
ad sacerdotem inopinato venirent et ipsum sibi missam
to the-priest unexpectedly should-come and him for-themselves the-mass
celebrare postularent; et si nimis abnueret, illi ex suo nomine
to-celebrate should-ask and if too-much he-refused they from his name
constringerent eum, quatinus per se ipsum sacrosancta
should-compel him so-that through himself self the-sacrosanct
misteria celebraret. Qui nesciens quid ageret, quoniam et
mysteries he-should-celebrate who not-knowing what he-should-do since both
ante superni spectatoris oculos ipsa nocte peccasset et
before of-the-heavenly beholder the-eyes on-that-very night he-had-sinned and
illos offendere non auderet, plus tamen homines quam Deum
them to-offend not he-dared more yet men than God
metuens, frigidissimo fonte estuantia membra baptizans, ad
fearing in-a-very-cold spring the-burning limbs baptizing for

afferenda terribilia sacramenta processit. Et ecce, vel conscientia
bringing the-terrible sacraments went-forward and behold either the-conscience
cor quatiente vel aqua venas penetrante, tanto frigore
the-heart shaking or the-water the-veins penetrating by-such cold
correptus est, ut nullo medicorum adminiculo posset adiuvari,
seized he-was that by-no of-physicians help he-could to-be-helped
sed immanissima febrium valitudine perductus ad mortem,
but by-the-most-monstrous of-fevers sickness brought to death
districti et aeterni iudicis decreto animam reddere cogeretur.
of-the-strict and eternal judge by-the-decree the-soul to-give-back he-was-compelled

XXVI · POPE LEO AND THE IMPERIAL TITLE

Some Romans try to blind Pope Leo but only slash his eyes. Refused help by Constantinople, Leo summons Charles. Leo clears himself by oath on the Gospel; the conspirators, made to swear at Saint Pancras's tomb, stiffen or go mad, and Charles punishes them. Then the pope proclaims Charles emperor, and he accepts unwillingly, fearing Greek envy. God restores Leo's eyes, leaving only a fine scar.

Sed caeteris mortalibus his et huiuscemodi fraudibus a
but the-other mortals by-these and of-this-kind frauds by
diabolo vel satellitibus eius illusis, libet intueri sententiam
the-devil or the-attendants of-him deceived it-pleases to-consider the-sentence
Domini, qua firmissimam sancti Petri confessionem
of-the-Lord by-which the-most-firm of-saint Peter confession
remunerans ait: Quia tu es Petrus, et super hanc
rewarding he-says that you are Peter and upon this
petram aedificabo ecclesiam meam, et portae inferi non
rock I-will-build church my and the-gates of-hell not
praevalebunt adversus eam. Quam videlicet ecclesiam in his
shall-prevail against it which namely church in these

etiam periculosissimis et nequissimis diebus inconcussam
even most-dangerous and most-wicked days unshaken
immobilemque dedit permanere. Nam ut inter emulos semper
and-immovable he-granted to-remain for as among rivals always
bachatur invidia, sollemne Romanis et consuetudinarium
rages envy customary for-the-Romans and habitual
fuit, ut omnes papatibus alicuius momenti ad sedem
it-was that all to-popes of-any importance to the-see
apostolicam per tempora subrogatis iugiter essent
apostolic through the-times appointed continually they-should-be
infensi vel potius infesti. Unde contigit, ut quidam illorum,
hostile or rather dangerous whence it-happened that certain-ones of-them
invidia cecati, sanctae recordationis Leoni papae, cuius supra
by-envy blinded of-holy memory to-Leo the-pope of-whom above
mentionem fecimus, mortiferum crimen imponentes, eum
mention we-made a-deadly crime imputing him
cecare fuissent aggressi. Sed divino nutu conterriti sunt et
to-blind had attempted but by-divine nod terrified they-were and
retracti, ut nequaquam oculos eius eruerent, sed rasoriis
drawn-back so-that by-no-means the-eyes of-him they-tore-out but with-razors
per medios inciderent. Quod cum clanculo per familiares
through the-middle they-cut which when secretly through intimates
suos Michahelo imperatori Constantinopoleos indicari
his-own to-Michael the-emperor of-Constantinople to-be-made-known
fecisset, et omne ille auxilium abnueret dicens: Ille papa
he-had-caused and all he help refused saying that pope
regnum habet per se, et nostro praestantius; ipse per
a-kingdom has by himself and than-ours more-excellent he-himself through
se se vindicet de adversariis suis, tunc sanctus ille
himself himself let-him-avenge on adversaries his-own then holy that-man
— divinam constitutionem secutus: ut, qui iam re
the-divine dispensation having-followed that he-who already in-fact

ipsa rector et imperator plurimarum erat nationum, nomen
itself the-ruler and emperor of-very-many was nations the-name
quoque imperatoris caesaris et augusti apostolica auctoritate
also of-emperor of-caesar and of-augustus by-apostolic authority
gloriosus assequeretur — invictum Karolum Romam venire
glorious might-attain the-unconquered Charles to-Rome to-come
postulavit. Qui, ut semper in expeditione et praecinctu
asked who as always on campaign and in-girded-readiness
bellico erat, statim cum apparitoribus et scola tyronum,
warlike he-was at-once with attendants and the-school of-recruits
causae vocationis suae penitus ignarus, ipse caput
of-the-cause of-summons his-own utterly ignorant he-himself the-head
orbis ad quondam caput orbis absque mora perrexit.
of-the-world to the-former head of-the-world without delay proceeded
Cumque perditissimi populi inopinatum illius comperissent
and-when the-most-abandoned people the-unexpected his had-learned
adventum, quasi passeres a conspectu domini sui
arrival as-if sparrows from the-sight of-the-lord their-own
cognomine nuncupati solent celari, ita per diversa latibula
by-surname named are-wont to-hide so through various hiding-places
criptas et profugia sunt abstrusi. Sed cum industriam
crypts and refuges they-were thrust-away but when the-diligence
eius et sagacitatem sub coelo non possent evitare, ad
of-him and shrewdness under heaven not could to-escape to
basilicam sancti Petri capti et catenati sunt perducti. Illic
the-basilica of-saint Peter captured and chained they-were brought there
intemeratus pater Leo, assumens euangelium domini nostri
the-inviolate father Leo taking the-gospel of-the-Lord our
Iesu Christi posuit super caput suum et in conspectu Karoli
Jesus Christ placed upon head his-own and in the-sight of-Charles
eiusque militum, assistentibus quoque persecutoribus suis,
and-of-his soldiers standing-by also the-persecutors his-own

in haec verba iuravit: Sic in die magni iudicii sim
in these words swore so in the-day of-the-great judgment may-I-be
particeps euangelii, sicut immunis sum criminis, falso mihi ab
a-sharer of-the-gospel as innocent I-am of-the-crime falsely to-me by
istis obiecti. Erant autem plurimi inter vinctos, qui, se
these charged there-were moreover very-many among the-bound who themselves
immunes huius criminis esse, in lecto sancti Petri se
innocent of-this crime to-be on the-tomb of-saint Peter themselves
iurare rogabant permitti. Sed papa, levitatem illorum non
to-swear asked to-be-permitted but the-pope the-levity of-them not
ignorans, Karolo dixit: Ne, queso, invicte Dei, eorum
ignorant-of to-Charles said do-not I-beg unconquered-one of-God of-them
assenseris calliditati; ipsi enim sanctum Petrum ad veniam
assent to-the-cunning they for saint Peter to pardon
sciunt maxime flexibilem. Queratur ergo inter tumulos
know most flexible let-there-be-sought therefore among the-tombs
martyrum titulus, cui trecennis puer inscriptus sit
of-the-martyrs the-inscription on-which as-a-thirteen-year-old boy inscribed is
Pancratius; in eo enim si tibi iuraverint, securos habeto.
Pancras on it for if to-you they-shall-have-sworn secure have-them
Factum est autem, ut papa voluerat. Plurimo autem populo
done it-was moreover as the-pope had-wished very-many moreover people
fiducialiter accedente, quidam ipsorum supini riguerant,
confidently approaching certain-ones of-them on-their-backs stiffened
quidam satana arrepti insaniebant. Mox terribilis Karolus
certain-ones by-Satan seized went-mad soon the-terrible Charles
dixit ad suos: Cavete, ne quisquam de illis evadat. Omnes
said to his-men beware lest anyone of them escape all
itaque comprehensos vel diversis mortibus vel inremeabilibus
and-so seized either to-various deaths or to-irrevocable
dampnavit exiliis. Cum autem ibidem aliquot diebus reparandi
he-condemned exiles when moreover there for-some days of-refitting

exercitus gratia moraretur, convocavit antistes apostolicus
the-army for-the-sake he-was-staying summoned the-bishop apostolic
de vicinis partibus, quoscumque potuit, et coram
from the-neighboring parts whomever he-could and before
positis illis et invictis Karoli gloriosissimi comitibus,
placed them and the-unconquered of-Charles the-most-glorious companions
nichil minus suspicantem ipsum pronunciavit imperatorem
nothing less suspecting him he-proclaimed emperor
defensoremque ecclesiae Romanae. Quod cum ille non
and-defender of-the-church Roman which since he not
potuisset abnuere, quia divinitus sic praedestinatum crederet,
could to-refuse because divinely so predestined he-believed
non tamen gratanter suscepit; pro eo quod putaret: Grecos,
not yet gladly he-accepted for that that he-thought the-Greeks
maiore succensos invidia, aliquid incommodi regno
by-greater inflamed envy something of-harm against-the-kingdom
Francorum machinaturos; immo potiori cautela provisuros,
of-the-Franks about-to-contrive nay with-stronger caution about-to-provide
ne, sicut tunc fama ferebat, Karolus insperato veniens
lest as then rumor carried Charles unexpectedly coming
regnum illorum suo subiugaret imperio; et maxime,
the-kingdom of-them to-his-own should-subjugate empire and chiefly
quia pridem magnanimus Karolus, cum legati regis
because formerly the-great-souled Charles when the-envoys of-the-king
Bizantini venirent ad se et de domino suo illi
of-Byzantium came to himself and about lord their-own to-him
suggererent, quia fidelis ipsi amicus esse voluisset et, si
suggested that faithful to-him a-friend to-be he-wished and if
viciniores essent, eum filii loco nutrire et paupertatem
nearer they-were him of-a-son in-the-place to-bring-up and the-poverty
illius relevare decrevisset, ferventissimo igne se intra pectus
of-him to-relieve he-had-decided the-most-burning fire itself within the-breast

retinere non queunte, in haec verba prorupit: O utinam non
to-hold not being-able in these words burst-out O would-that not
esset ille gurgitulus inter nos; forsitan divitias orientales aut
were that little-whirlpool between us perhaps the-riches eastern either
partiremur aut pariter participando communiter haberemus.
we-would-divide or equally sharing in-common we-would-have
Quod ignari paupertatis Africanae solent de Afrorum
which those-ignorant of-the-poverty African are-wont of the-Africans'
rege narrare. Innocentiam vero beati Leonis papae ita
king to-tell the-innocence but of-blessed Leo the-pope so
donator et restitutor sanitatis approbavit Dominus, ut
the-giver and restorer of-health approved the-Lord that
post illam poenalem et crudelissimam incisionem clariores
after that penal and most-cruel cutting brighter
quam ante fuerint ei donaverit oculos; excepto, quod
than before they-had-been to-him he-gave eyes except that
in signum virtutis illius pulcherrima cicatrix in modum
as a-sign of-the-virtue of-him a-most-beautiful scar in the-manner
fili tenuissimi turturinas acies niveo candore decorabat.
of-a-thread most-fine the-dove-like eyes with-snowy whiteness adorned

Lest the unlearned doubt that a sea separated the Franks from the Greeks, the Monk explains that the Huns, the Bulgars, and other peoples then blocked the land route, until Charles leveled the Slavs and Bulgars and destroyed the Huns. Before telling of those wars, he will say a little about the buildings Charles raised at Aachen, after Solomon's example, for God, himself, and his guests.

Ne vero ab imperitis arguar imperitiae, quia mare, quod
lest but by the-unskilled I-be-accused of-unskill because the-sea which
nomine gurgituli maximus appellavit imperator, inter nos
by-the-name of-little-whirlpool the-greatest called emperor between us
et Grecos ex eius ore situm retulerim, noverint qui
and the-Greeks from his mouth situated I-have-reported let-them-know who
volunt: adhuc Hunos et Bulgares et plures alias immanissimas
wish still the-Huns and the-Bulgars and several other most-monstrous
gentes intactas et integras iter ad Greciam terrestre negare.
peoples untouched and unimpaired the-route to Greece by-land to-deny
Quas tamen postea bellicosissimus Karolus vel terrae
which yet afterward the-most-warlike Charles either to-the-ground
coaequavit, ut omne Sclavorum genus et Bulgarum, vel
leveled as all of-the-Slavs the-race and of-the-Bulgars or
penitus eradicavit, ut ferreorum adamantinorumve progeniem
utterly uprooted as of-the-iron or-adamantine the-offspring
et nomen Hunorum. De quibus mox docebo, si prius
and name of-the-Huns about whom soon I-will-teach if first
de edificiis, quae cesar augustus imperator Karolus apud
about the-buildings which caesar augustus emperor Charles at
Aquasgrani iuxta sapientissimi Salemonis exemplum Deo
Aachen according-to of-the-most-wise Solomon the-example for-God
vel sibi vel omnibus episcopis abbatibus comitibus et
or for-himself or for-all bishops abbots counts and

cunctis de toto orbe venientibus hospitibus mirifice
all from the-whole world coming guests wonderfully
construxit, iuxta pauca satis et minima commemorem.
built according-to a-few-things enough and very-small I-recall

XXVIII · THE ABBOT AND THE BASILICA

Charles builds on his native soil a basilica finer than the works of the Romans, with craftsmen from every land. The abbot he sets over the work takes bribes and drives the workers as the Egyptians drove the Israelites, amassing treasure. When his house catches fire, he rushes in for his chests, and a burning beam falls on him. So divine judgment keeps watch for Charles.

Cum strennuissimus imperator Karolus aliquam requiem habere
when the-most-vigorous emperor Charles some rest to-have
potuit, non ocio torpere sed divinis servitiis voluit
could not in-idleness to-be-sluggish but over-divine services he-wished
insudare; adeo ut, in genitali solo basilicam, antiquis
to-sweat so that on native soil a-basilica than-the-ancient
Romanorum operibus praestantiorem, fabricare propria
of-the-Romans works more-excellent to-build by-his-own
dispositione molitus, in brevi se compotem voti sui
arrangement having-undertaken in short-time himself possessed of-wish his-own
gauderet. Ad cuius fabricam de omnibus cismarinis regionibus
he-rejoiced for whose building from all cismarine regions
magistros et opifices omnium id genus artium advocavit.
masters and workmen of-all that kind of-arts he-summoned
Super quos quendam abbatem cunctorum peritissimum ad
over whom a-certain abbot of-all most-skilled for
executionem operis, ignarus eius fraudium, constituit. Qui,
the-carrying-out of-the-work ignorant of-his frauds he-appointed who

mox ut augustus quoquam secessit, precio accepto, quos volebat
as-soon as the-augustus somewhere withdrew a-price received whom he-wished
ad propria remisit. Qui vero se redimere nequiverunt vel
to their-own sent-back who but themselves to-buy-off could-not or
a dominis suis absoluti non sunt, sicut quondam Egyptii
by lords their-own released not were as once the-Egyptians
populum Dei iniquis operibus afflixerunt, ita inmensis
the-people of-God with-wicked works afflicted so with-immense
laboribus oppressit, ut nunquam eos aliquantulum requiescere
labors he-oppressed that never them a-little to-rest
pateretur. De tali igitur fraudulentia cum infinitum pondus
he-allowed from such therefore fraud when a-boundless weight
auri vel argenti sericorumque palliorum congregasset et,
of-gold or of-silver and-of-silk cloaks he-had-gathered and
viliora queque suspendens in camera, preciosiora queque
the-cheaper every-thing hanging in the-chamber the-more-precious every-thing
in archis vel in scriniis absconsa concluderet, ecce repente
in chests or in coffers hidden he-shut-up behold suddenly
domus eius inflammata a referentibus est illi nunciata.
the-house of-him set-on-fire by those-reporting was to-him announced
Qui, concitus accurrens et per medios flammarum globos
who swiftly running-up and through the-middle of-the-flames balls
in conclave, quo scrinia auro plena servabantur, irrumpens
into the-room where the-coffers with-gold full were-kept bursting-in
et cum uno tantum exire nolens, singula singulis humeris
and with one only to-go-out unwilling one on-each shoulder
imposuit et exire cepit. Inter ea trabes una pergrandis
placed and to-go-out began among these a-beam one very-large
ignibus evicta cecidit super eum, et corpus quidem materiali
by-the-fires overcome fell upon him and the-body indeed with-material
combussit incendio, anima vero ad inextinguibilem transiit
burned fire the-soul but to the-inextinguishable passed

ignem. Ita divinum iudicium pro religiosissimo Karolo vigilavit,
fire so the-divine judgment for the-most-religious Charles kept-watch
ubi ipse, regni negotiis occupatus, minus intendit.
where he-himself of-the-kingdom with-the-affairs occupied less attended

XXIX · THE BELLFOUNDER

A master bronze-worker offers to cast Charles a bell far better than Tancho's, if given copper and a hundred pounds of silver instead of tin. He keeps the silver, uses tin, and presents the bell. When no one can make it ring, he pulls the rope himself, and the clapper falls on his head and kills him. Charles has the silver distributed among the poor of the palace.

Erat ibidem alius opifex, in omni opere aeris et
there-was in-the-same-place another craftsman in every work of-bronze and
vitri cunctis excellentior. Cumque Tancho, quondam monachus
of-glass than-all more-excellent and-when Tancho once monk
Sancti Galli, campanum optimum conflaret et eius sonitum
of-Saint Gall a-bell excellent was-casting and its sound
imperator non mediocriter miraretur, dixit ille praestantissimus
the-emperor not moderately admired said that most-outstanding
sed infelicissimus in aere magister: Domne imperator, iube
but most-unhappy in bronze master lord emperor order
mihi cuprum multum afferri, ut excoquam illud ad purum;
to-me copper much to-be-brought that I-may-refine it to pure
et in vice stagni fac mihi, quantum opus est, de argento
and in place of-tin cause to-me as-much-as need is of silver
dari saltem centum libras; et fundo tibi tale campanum,
to-be-given at-least a-hundred pounds and I-cast for-you such a-bell
ut istud in eius comparatione sit mutum. Tunc liberalissimus
that that-one in its comparison be dumb then the-most-generous

regum Karolus — cui licet affluerent diviciae, cor tamen
of-kings Charles who though abounded riches the-heart yet
non apposuit — facile iussit omnia quae petebat exhibere.
not set easily ordered all-things which he-asked to-furnish
Quae miser ille assumens laetus exiit. Et aes quidem
which wretch that taking glad went-out and the-bronze indeed
conflans et emundans, in locum argenti vero purgatissimum
melting and cleansing in place of-silver but most-purified
stagnum subiciens, multo melius approbato illo de
tin substituting much better than-the-approved that-one from
adulterato metallo campanum in brevi tempore perfecit,
the-adulterated metal a-bell in short time he-completed
probatissimumque cesari praesentavit. Quod ille propter
and-most-tested to-the-caesar presented which he on-account-of
incomparabilem conformationem satis admiratus, immisso
the-incomparable shape quite having-admired put-in
pulsatorio ferro, iussit in campanario suspendi. Quod cum
the-striking iron ordered in the-bell-tower to-be-hung which when
sine mora factum fuisset, et custos aecclesiae vel reliqui
without delay done had-been and the-keeper of-the-church or the-other
capellani nec non et erronei tyrones, alii aliis succedentes,
chaplains nor not also the-wandering recruits some to-others succeeding
illud ad sonitum perducere niterentur et nichil efficere
it to sound to-bring strove and nothing to-accomplish
potuissent, tandem indignatus auctor operis et commentor
had-been-able at-last indignant the-author of-the-work and contriver
inauditae fraudis apprehenso fune attraxit aeramentum.
of-an-unheard-of fraud seized the-rope pulled the-bronze
Et ecce ferrum de medio lapsum in verticem ipsius
and behold the-iron from the-middle slipped onto the-crown of-him
cum iniquitate sua descendit et, per cadaver iam iamque
with iniquity his-own came-down and through the-corpse now and-now

defunctum transiens, ad terram cum intestinis et virilibus
having-died passing to the-ground with the-entrails and the-genitals
venit. Memoratum autem pondus argenti repertum praecepit
came the-mentioned moreover weight of-silver found commanded
iustissimus Karolus inter indigentes palatinos distribui.
the-most-just Charles among the-needy palace-men to-be-distributed

XXX · PUBLIC WORKS

Lesser works such as bridges and roads fall to the counts' deputies, but great new works are the duty of every bishop, duke, count, and abbot, as the bridge at Mainz was built by all Europe. At Aachen the houses stand around the palace so that Charles sees from his gallery all who come and go; the nobles' houses are raised to shelter all.

Fuit consuetudo in illis temporibus, ut, ubicumque aliquod
there-was a-custom in those times that wherever some
opus ex imperiali praecepto faciendum esset — siquidem
work from imperial command to-be-done was indeed
pontes vel naves aut traiecti sive purgatio seu stramentum vel
bridges or ships or ferries or the-cleaning or the-paving or
impletio coenosorum itinerum — ea comites per vicarios
the-filling of-muddy roads these the-counts through deputies
et officiales suos exequerentur, in minoribus dumtaxat
and officials their-own carried-out in lesser only
laboribus; a maioribus autem, et maxime noviter exstruendis,
labors from greater moreover and chiefly newly to-be-built
nullus ducum vel comitum, nullus episcoporum vel abbatum
no-one of-the-dukes or of-the-counts no-one of-the-bishops or of-the-abbots
excusaretur aliquo modo. Cuius rei testes adhuc sunt arcae
was-excused in-any way of-which thing witnesses still are the-piers

pontis Magontiacensis; quem tota Europa communi quidem
of-the-bridge of-Mainz which all Europe by-common indeed
sed ordinatissimae participationis opere perfecit, fraudulentia
but of-most-orderly of-participation by-the-work completed the-fraud
vero quorundam malivolorum et de navium subvectione
but of-certain malicious-men and from of-ships the-transport
mercedes iniquissimas compilare volentium consumpsit. Si
wages most-wicked to-scrape-together wishing consumed if
vero essent ecclesiae, ad ius regium proprie pertinentes,
but there-were churches to the-right royal properly belonging
laquearibus vel muralibus adornandae picturis, id a vicinis
with-ceilings or with-wall to-be-adorned paintings this by neighboring
episcopis aut abbatibus curabatur. Quodsi novae fuissent
bishops or abbots was-taken-care-of but-if new had-been
instituendae, omnes episcopi duces et comites, abbates etiam
to-be-founded all bishops dukes and counts abbots also
vel quicumque regalibus ecclesiis praesidentes cum universis,
or whoever over-royal churches presiding with all
qui publica consecuti sunt beneficia, a fundamentis usque
who public obtained have benefices from the-foundations all-the-way
ad culmen instantissimo labore perduxerunt; sicut adhuc probat
to the-roof with-most-urgent labor brought as still proves
non solum basilica illa divina sed et humana apud Aquasgrani
not only basilica that divine but also human at Aachen
et mansiones omnium cuiusquam dignitatis hominum, quae
and the-dwellings of-all of-any rank men which
ita circa palatium peritissimi Karoli eius dispositione
so around the-palace of-the-most-skilled Charles of-him by-the-arrangement
constructae sunt, ut ipse per cancellos solarii sui
built were that he-himself through the-lattices of-the-upper-room his-own
cuncta posset videre, quaecumque ab intrantibus vel exeuntibus
all-things could to-see whatever by those-entering or going-out

quasi latenter fierent. Sed et ita omnia procerum habitacula
as-if secretly might-be-done but also so all of-the-nobles the-dwellings
a terra erant in sublime suspensa, ut sub eis non
from the-ground were into the-height raised that under them not
solum militum milites et eorum servitores sed omne genus
only of-soldiers the-soldiers and their servants but every kind
hominum ab iniuriis imbrium vel nivium, gelu vel caumatis
of-men from the-injuries of-rains or of-snows of-frost or of-heat
possent defendi, et nequaquam tamen ab oculis acutissimi
could to-be-defended and by-no-means yet from the-eyes of-the-most-keen
Karoli valerent abscondi. Cuius edificii descriptionem ego
Charles could to-be-hidden of-which building the-description I
inclusus absolutis cancellariis vestris relinquens, ad iudicium
a-recluse to-the-released chancellors your leaving to the-judgment
Dei, quod circa illud factum est, explicandum revertor.
of-God which about it done was to-be-unfolded I-return

XXXI · LIUTFRID'S TREASURE

Charles has his steward Liutfrid feed and clothe the craftsmen from abroad, but Liutfrid grows rich on their sufferings. A cleric dozing before the morning office dreams of a giant leading a laden camel to Liutfrid's house to drag him to hell. Just then word comes that Liutfrid has died in the privy, and Charles has his treasure given to the workmen and the poor.

Providentissimus igitur Karolus quibuscumque primoribus in
the-most-provident therefore Charles to-whatever chief-men in
proximo constitutis praecepit, ut opifices a se directos
the-neighborhood stationed commanded that the-workmen by himself sent
omni industria sustentare et cuncta ad opus illud necessaria
with-all diligence to-support and all-things for work that necessary

subministrare curarent. Qui vero ex longinquis partibus
to-supply they-should-take-care who but from distant parts
advenissent, commendavit eos praeposito domus suae nomine
had-come he-entrusted them to-the-steward of-house his-own by-name
Liutfrido; ut eos de publicis rebus aleret et vestiret,
Liutfrid that them from public resources he-should-feed and clothe
sed et cuncta, quae ad constructionem illam pertinerent,
but also all-things which to construction that pertained
sedulus impendere semper instaret. Quod cum, illo in
diligent to-spend always he-should-press which when he in
eodem loco sedente, aliquantulum faceret, recedente vero
the-same place sitting somewhat did withdrawing but
omnimodo cessaret, tantas pecunias idem praepositus de
altogether ceased such sums the-same steward from
miserorum illorum cruciatibus aggregavit, ut eas mammonas
of-wretches those the-tortures amassed that them riches
Pluto atque Dis non aliter quam vehiculo cameli possent
Pluto and Dis not otherwise than by-the-vehicle of-a-camel could
ad inferna perducere. Quod et ita mortalibus compertum
to the-underworld to-bring which also so to-mortals discovered
est: Gloriosissimus Karolus ad nocturnas laudes pendulo et
was the-most-glorious Charles for the-nocturnal lauds with-a-hanging and
profundissimo pallio, cuius iam usus et nomen recessit,
very-deep cloak of-which now the-use and name has-gone-away
utebatur; expletis vero ymnis matutinalibus, ad caminatam
used finished but the-hymns of-matins to the-chamber
reversus, imperialibus vestimentis pro tempore ornabatur.
having-returned in-imperial garments according-to the-season was-adorned
Clerici vero cuncti ita parati ad antelucana veniebant officia,
the-clerics but all so prepared to the-before-dawn came offices
ut vel in ecclesia vel in porticu, que tunc curticula
that either in the-church or in the-portico which then little-court

dicebatur, imperatorem ad missarum sollempnia processurum
was-called the-emperor to of-the-masses the-solemnities about-to-proceed
vigilantes expectarent aut, qui opus haberet, in sinu comparis
watching they-might-await or who need had on the-lap of-companion
sui caput paululum reclinaret. Quidam ergo pauperculus
his-own the-head a-little might-lean a-certain-one therefore poor-little-man
ex eis, qui domum supradicti Liutfridi abluendarum
of them who the-house of-the-above-mentioned Liutfrid to-be-washed
seu resarciendarum, sicut exiguis opus est palatinis, vestium
or to-be-mended as for-meager need is palace-men of-garments
vel potius pannorum causa frequentare solebat, super
or rather of-rags for-the-sake to-frequent was-accustomed upon
genua socii sui dormiens, vidit gigantem Antoniano
the-knees of-companion his-own sleeping saw a-giant than-Anthony's
illo adversario proceriorem de curte regia super rivulum
that adversary taller from the-court royal over brook
illum per traiectum ad domum illius properantem et
that by the-ferry to the-house of-him hastening and
camelum immanissimum, inaestimabili sarcina praegravatum,
a-camel most-monstrous with-an-inestimable load weighed-down
ad ulteriora trahentem. Et obstupefactus in somnio quesivit
to the-farther-side dragging and astonished in the-dream he-asked
ab eo, de qua regione veniret aut quo tendere voluisset.
of him from what region he-came or whither to-make-for he-wished
Qui respondit: De domo regis ad domum Liutfridi pergo;
who answered from the-house of-the-king to the-house of-Liutfrid I-go
et eum super hos fasces imponam et pariter in infernum
and him upon these bundles I-will-place and together into hell
cum eis dimergam. Ad quam visionem expergefactus clericus
with them I-will-plunge at which vision awakened the-cleric
et maiore metu conterritus, ne eum terribilis Karolus
and by-greater fear terrified lest him the-terrible Charles

dormientem reperiret, mox caput elevans et caeteros ad
sleeping should-find soon the-head raising and the-others to
vigilandum provocans, in haec verba prorupit: Si vultis, audite
waking calling into these words burst-forth if you-wish hear
somnium meum. Videbar mihi videre Poliphemum illum, qui
dream my I-seemed to-myself to-see Polyphemus that-one who
in terra gradiens alta pulsat sydera et in medio Ionio
on the-earth walking the-high strikes stars and in the-middle-of the-Ionian
latera non tinguit ardua, de hac curte regia ad domum
his-sides not wets lofty from this court royal to the-house
Liutfridi cum onerario properantem camelo. Cumque
of-Liutfrid with a-burden-bearing hastening camel and-when
causam itineris eius inquisissem, dixit ille: „Liutfridum
the-cause of-the-journey of-him I-had-asked said he Liutfrid
super haec onera ponere et ad infernum contendo perducere".
upon these burdens to-place and to hell I-strive to-bring
Hac relatione nondum expleta, venit puella de domo eius,
this report not-yet completed came a-girl from the-house of-him
omnibus notissima, et ante pedes eorum procidit, implorans,
to-all best-known and before the-feet of-them fell imploring
ut memoriam amici sui Liutfridi dignarentur habere.
that the-memory of-friend their-own Liutfrid they-would-deign to-have
Illis autem interrogantibus, quid causae haberet, dixit illa:
they moreover asking what of-cause she-had said she
Domini mei, sanus ad latrinam exiit; et dum diutius
lords my healthy to the-privy went-out and while longer
ibi moraretur, egredientes defunctum invenimus illum. Cuius
there he-stayed going-out having-died we-found him whose
cum subitanea mors imperatori comperta fuisset, et ab
when sudden death to-the-emperor discovered had-been and by
opificibus et reliqua familia tenacia vel avaritia illius
the-workmen and the-remaining household the-stinginess or avarice of-him

iam libere proderetur, iussit thesauros eius perquiri.
now freely was-disclosed he-ordered the-treasures of-him to-be-searched-out
Qui cum inaestimabiles invenirentur sciretque iudex post
which when inestimable they-were-found and-he-knew the-judge after
Deum iustissimus, de quali iniquitate congregati fuissent,
God most-just from what-sort-of iniquity gathered they-had-been
publice pronunciavit: Non potest aliquid ex his, quae
publicly he-pronounced not can anything of these-things which
ipse iniuste fraudavit, ad liberationem illius miseri proficere.
he-himself unjustly defrauded for the-liberation of-that wretch avail
Dividantur itaque inter operarios huius aedificii nostri et
let-them-be-divided therefore among the-workers of-this building our and
tenuiores palacii nostri.
the-poorer-men of-palace our

XXXII · THE SPIDER

A vain deacon, shaven and polished, presumes to read the Gospel before Charles with a polluted conscience. A spider drops from the ceiling and stings his head, two and three times; Charles sees it and lets it happen, and the deacon dares not brush it away. After the office he swells up and dies within an hour, and Charles does public penance for his death.

Duo sunt adhuc referenda, quae in eodem loco contigerunt.
two are still to-be-related which in the-same place happened
Quidam diaconus, iuxta consuetudinem cisalpinorum contra
a-certain deacon according-to the-custom of-the-cisalpines against
naturam pugnare solitus, balneas intrans et caput suum
nature to-fight accustomed the-baths entering and head his-own
pressissime radi faciens, cutem expoliavit, ungues murcavit
very-closely to-be-shaved causing the-skin polished the-nails trimmed

capillosque brevissimos quasi ad circinum tornando decurtavit,
and-the-hair very-short as-if to compasses turning cut-short
lineas et camisiam candidissimam induit, et quia vicem
linens and a-shirt most-white put-on and because turn
suam devitare non potuit, quin potius ut per hoc gloriosior
his-own to-avoid not he-could nay rather that through this more-glorious
appareret, sponte coram summo Deo et sanctis
he-might-appear of-his-own-accord before the-highest God and the-holy
angelis et in conspectu severissimi regis et procerum eius
angels and in the-sight of-the-most-severe king and of-the-nobles of-him
euangelium, ut in consequentibus patuit polluta conscientia,
the-gospel as in the-following was-plain with-polluted conscience
legere praesumpsit. Tunc inter legendum aranea, de laqueari per
to-read presumed then during reading a-spider from the-ceiling by
fila sua subito descendens, caput eius aculeo infecit et
threads its-own suddenly descending the-head of-him with-its-sting infected and
se celerrime ad superiora retraxit. Quod cum districtissimus
itself most-swiftly to the-upper-parts drew-back which when the-most-strict
Karolus secundo ac tercio videret et dissimulando id
Charles a-second-time and a-third-time saw and by-dissembling this
fieri pateretur, clericus vero propter praesentiam illius
to-happen allowed the-cleric but on-account-of the-presence of-that
aspectus se manu defendere non auderet, maxime
gaze himself with-the-hand to-defend not dared chiefly
cum non araneam se impetere sed muscas inquietare
since not a-spider himself to-attack but flies to-bother
putaret, euangelica lectione perlecta, reliquum etiam complevit
he-thought the-gospel reading read-through the-remaining also he-completed
officium. Egressus autem de basilica, mox intumuit;
office having-gone-out moreover from the-basilica soon he-swelled-up
et infra unius horae spacium defecit. Religiosissimus vero
and within of-one hour the-space failed the-most-religious but

Karolus, quia causam periculi eius vidit et non prohibuit,
Charles because the-cause of-the-danger of-him he-saw and not prevented
quasi homicidii reum, publica se ipsum poenitentia multavit.
as-if of-homicide guilty by-public himself self penance punished

XXXIII · THE VANISHED CLERIC

Charles has a cleric who surpasses everyone in learning, in sacred and secular song, in composition, and in the sweetness of his voice. Unlike the saints, who knew where their gifts came from and gave thanks, he never thanks their giver. As he stands beside the emperor, he suddenly vanishes. Charles crosses himself and finds on the spot only something like a black coal, newly extinguished.

Habuit gloriosissimus Karolus quendam in comitatu
had the-most-glorious Charles a-certain in the-retinue
incomparabilem clericum in omnibus. De quo illud ferebatur
incomparable cleric in all-things of whom this was-said
quod nunquam de ullo mortalium: quia videlicet et
which never of any of-mortals that namely both
scientia litterarum secularium atque divinarum cantileneque
in-knowledge of-letters secular and divine and-of-chant
ecclesiasticae vel iocularis, novaque carminum compositione
ecclesiastical or jocular and-in-new of-songs composition
sive modulatione, insuper et vocis dulcissima plenitudine
or modulation moreover also of-voice in-the-sweetest fullness
inestimabilique delectatione cunctos praecelleret; cum et ipse
and-inestimable delight all he-surpassed although also himself
legislator ex instructione divina sapientissimus de gracilitate
the-lawgiver from instruction divine most-wise of the-thinness
vocis vel dispendio linguae tardioris causetur et discipulum,
of-voice or the-loss of-tongue slower complains and the-disciple

ex auctoritate inhabitantis in se Dei elementis celestibus
from the-authority of-indwelling in himself God the-elements heavenly
imperantem, mittat ad consulta Eleazari; dominus noster
commanding sends to the-counsels of-Eleazar Lord our
Christus eum, quo inter natos mulierum maiorem non
Christ him than-whom among the-born of-women greater not
surrexisse testatur, nullum in corpore signum operari concesserit;
to-have-arisen he-testifies no in the-body sign to-work granted
et eum, quem paterna revelatione se ipsum agnoscere
and him whom by-paternal revelation himself self to-recognize
voluit clavibusque regni celorum donavit, Pauli sapientiam
he-wished and-with-the-keys of-the-kingdom of-heaven endowed Paul's wisdom
mirari voluerit, discipulumque plus caeteris dilectum in
to-admire wished and-the-disciple more than-the-others loved into
tantam cadere trepidationem permiserit, ut in locum sepulchri
such to-fall trepidation allowed that into the-place of-the-tomb
eius ingredi non praesumpserit, cum illud inbecilles mulieres
of-him to-enter not he-dared though it weak women
sepius frequentarent. Sed illi, sicut scriptum est: Omni
often frequented but they as written it-is to-every-one
habenti dabitur, scientes a quo haberent, etiam, quae
having it-shall-be-given knowing from whom they-had even what-things
minus habuere, consecuti sunt; iste vero, nesciens unde
less they-had obtained have this-one but not-knowing whence
haberet vel sciens, auctori donorum dignas gratias non egit,
he-had or knowing to-the-author of-the-gifts worthy thanks not gave
unde pariter cuncta amisit. Nam cum veluti familiarissimus
whence equally all-things lost for when as-if most-intimate
iuxta gloriosissimum caesarem constitisset, subito non
beside the-most-glorious caesar he-had-stood suddenly not
comparuit. Cumque ad tam inauditam et incredibilem rem
he-appeared and-when at so unheard-of and incredible a-thing

invictissimus Karolus imperator obstupefactus fuisset et se
the-most-unconquered Charles emperor astonished had-been and himself
cruce Domini consignaret, invenit in eodem loco, in quo
with-the-cross of-the-Lord signed he-found in the-same place in which
steterat ille, quasi carbonem teterrimum et noviter extinctum.
had-stood he as-if a-coal most-black and newly extinguished

XXXIV · FRANKISH DRESS

The Monk describes the old Frankish dress: gilded shoes with long laces, scarlet leg bands over linen leggings, a sword, a white or blue cloak, and an applewood staff, as he saw the head of the Franks wear it at Saint Gall. When the Frisians sell the Gauls' short striped cloaks as dear as long ones, Charles bans it. Werinbert has died, and his account ends here.

Nocturnum illud atque pendulum augusti pallium adhuc nos
nocturnal that and hanging of-the-augustus cloak still us
a bellico procinctu retrahit. Erat antiquorum ornatus
from the-warlike readiness draws-back there-was of-the-ancient the-adornment
vel paratura Francorum: calciamenta forinsecus aurata, corrigiis
or equipment of-the-Franks shoes on-the-outside gilded with-laces
tricubitalibus insignita, fasciolae crurales vermiculatae; et
three-cubit distinguished bands for-the-legs scarlet and
subtus eas tibialia vel coxalia linea, quamvis ex eodem colore
under them leggings or thigh-coverings linen although of the-same color
tamen opere artificiosissimo variata. Super quae et fasciolas
yet with-work most-artful varied over which also the-bands
in crucis modum, intrinsecus et extrinsecus, ante et retro,
in of-a-cross the-manner inside and outside in-front and behind
longissimae illae corrigiae tendebantur. Deinde camisia clizana;
very-long those laces were-stretched then a-shirt of-glossy-linen

post haec balteus spate colligatus. Quae spata primum
after these a-belt to-the-sword bound which sword first
vagina, secundo corio qualicunque, tercio lintheamine
with-a-scabbard second with-leather of-some-kind third with-a-linen-wrapping
candidissimo cera lucidissima roborato ita cingebatur, ut
most-white with-wax most-shining strengthened so was-girt that
per medium cruciculis eminentibus ad peremptionem
through the-middle with-little-crosses projecting for the-slaughter
gentilium duraretur. Ultimum habitus eorum erat pallium
of-the-heathens it-was-hardened the-last of-the-dress of-them was a-cloak
canum vel saphirinum, quadrangulum duplex; sic formatum, ut,
white or sapphire four-cornered double so shaped that
cum imponeretur humeris, ante et retro pedes tangeret, de
when it-was-placed on-the-shoulders in-front and behind the-feet it-touched at
lateribus vero vix genua contegeret. Tunc baculus de arbore
the-sides but scarcely the-knees it-covered then a-staff from the-tree
malo, nodis paribus admirabilis, rigidus et terribilis, cuspide
apple with-knots equal admirable stiff and terrible with-a-point
manuali ex auro vel argento cum celaturis insignibus praefixo,
hand-shaped of gold or silver with carvings notable fixed-at-the-tip
portabatur in dextera. Quo habitu lentus ego et testudine
was-carried in the-right-hand in-which dress slow I and than-a-tortoise
tardior, cum in Franciam nunquam venirem, vidi caput
slower since into Francia never I-came I-saw the-head
Francorum in monasterio sancti Galli praefulgens, duosque
of-the-Franks in the-monastery of-saint Gall shining-forth and-two
flores auricomos ex eius femoribus progressos; quorum
flowers golden-haired from his thighs having-come-forth of-which
qui prior egressus est, proceritatem illius adaequabat,
the-one-who first came-out has the-height of-him equaled
posterior autem, paulatim excrescens, verticem stipitis sui
the-later moreover gradually growing the-top of-stock his-own

summa gloria decoravit et transcendendo contexit. Sed
with-the-highest glory adorned and by-surpassing covered but
ut se mos humani habet ingenii, cum inter Gallos Franci
as itself the-way of-human has nature when among the-Gauls the-Franks
militantes virgatis eos sagulis lucere conspicerent, novitate
serving with-striped them little-cloaks to-shine they-saw in-the-novelty
gaudentes, antiquam consuetudinem dimiserunt et eos imitari
rejoicing the-ancient custom they-dropped and them to-imitate
coeperunt. Quod interim rigidissimus imperator idcirco non
began which meanwhile the-most-rigid emperor for-this-reason not
prohibuit, quia bellicis rebus aptior ille videretur habitus.
forbade because for-warlike affairs more-suitable that seemed dress
Sed cum Fresones hac licentia abutentes adverteret et
but when the-Frisians this license abusing he-noticed and
brevissima illa palliola sicut prius maxima vendere comperisset,
very-short those little-cloaks as before the-largest to-sell he-had-found
praecepit: ut nullus ab eis nisi grandia latissimaque illa
he-commanded that no-one from them except large and-very-broad those
longissima pallia consuetudinario precio coemeret; adiciens:
very-long cloaks at-the-customary price should-buy adding
Quid prosunt illa pittaciola? In lecto non possum eis
what are-of-use those little-rags in bed not I-can with-them
cooperiri; caballicans contra ventos et pluvias nequeo defendi;
to-be-covered riding against winds and rains I-cannot to-be-protected
ad necessaria naturae secedens, tibiarum congelatione deficio.
for the-necessities of-nature withdrawing of-the-legs by-the-freezing I-fail
In praefatione huius opusculi tres tantum auctores me
in the-preface of-this little-work three only authors myself
secuturum spopondi. Sed quia praecipuus eorum Werinbertus
about-to-follow I-pledged but because the-chief of-them Werinbert
septimo die de hac vita recessit, et debemus hodie id
on-the-seventh day from this life withdrew and we-ought today that

est 3 die Kal. Iunii commemorationem illius —
is on-the-third day Kalends of-June the-commemoration of-him
orbi filii discipulique — agere, hic fiat terminus libelli
bereaved sons and-disciples to-hold here let-there-be the-end of-book
istius, qui ex sacerdotis eiusdem ore de religiositate et
this which from of-the-priest the-same the-mouth about the-religiousness and
aecclesiastica domni Karoli cura processit. Sequens vero de
the-ecclesiastical of-lord Charles care proceeded the-following but about
bellicis rebus acerrimi Karoli ex narratione Adalberti,
the-warlike affairs of-the-most-fierce Charles from the-narration of-Adalbert
patris eiusdem Werinberti, cudatur; qui cum domino
the-father of-the-same Werinbert let-it-be-forged who with lord
suo Keroldo et Hunisco et Saxonico vel Sclavico bello
his-own Gerold both in-the-Hunnish and Saxon and Slavic war
interfuit et, cum valde senior parvulum me nutriret,
took-part and when very old a-little-one me he-was-bringing-up
renitentem et sepius effugientem, vi tandem coactum
resisting and often running-away by-force at-last compelled
de his instruere solebat.
about these-things to-instruct he-was-accustomed

BOOK II

I · THE RING OF THE HUNS

After Julian's death the western provinces fall from Rome, and the Huns plunder Francia and Spain. Adalbert tells the Monk that their land is girded by nine rings, each a rampart of stakes, stones, and clay twenty feet wide and high, with villages within earshot inside. There the Huns hoard the wealth of the West for two hundred years, until Charles crushes them in eight.

Ex relatione secularis hominis et in scripturis minus eruditi
from the-account of-a-secular man and in scriptures less learned
sermonem hunc facturi, non ab re credimus, si
discourse this about-to-make not from the-matter we-believe if
iuxta scriptorum fidem pauca de superioribus ad
according-to of-writers the-faith a-few-things about earlier-times to
memoriam revocemus. Cum Deo odibilis Iulianus in Persico
memory we-recall when by-God hateful Julian in the-Persian
bello celitus fuisset interemptus, et a Romanorum
war from-heaven had-been slain and from of-the-Romans
regno non solum transmarinae provinciae sed et proxima
realm not only the-overseas provinces but also nearby
Pannonia Noricus Recia vel Germania Francique vel Galli
Pannonia Noricum Raetia or Germany and-the-Franks or the-Gauls
defecissent, ipsique reges Gallorum vel Francorum propter
had-fallen-away and-the-very kings of-the-Gauls or of-the-Franks on-account-of
interfectionem sancti Desiderii Viennensis episcopi et
the-killing of-saint Desiderius of-Vienne bishop and
expulsionem sanctissimorum advenarum Columbani et Galli
the-expulsion of-the-most-holy strangers Columban and Gall
retro labi cepissent, gens Hunorum, prius per Franciam
backward to-slide had-begun the-people of-the-Huns before through Francia

et Equitaniam vel Gallias sive Hispanias latrocinari solita,
and Aquitaine or the-Gauls or the-Spains to-plunder accustomed
tota simul egressa quasi latissimum incendium cuncta
all at-once having-gone-out like a-very-broad fire all-things
devastans, reliquias, quae remanere poterant, ad tutissima
laying-waste the-remains which to-remain could to the-safest
latibula comportavit. Quae huiusmodi fuerunt, sicut praefatus
hiding-places carried which of-this-kind were as the-aforesaid
Adalbertus mihi narrare consueverat: Terra inquiens Hunorum
Adalbert to-me to-tell was-accustomed the-land saying of-the-Huns
novem circulis cingebatur. Et cum ego, alios circulos nisi
with-nine circles was-girded and when I other circles except
vimineos cogitare nescius, interrogarem: Quid illud miraculi
of-wicker to-imagine not-knowing asked what that of-a-marvel
fuit, domine? respondit: Novem hegin muniebatur. Cumque
was lord he-answered with-nine hedges it-was-fortified and-when
et illos alterius generis esse nescirem, nisi quales segetibus
also those of-another kind to-be I-did-not-know except such-as before-crops
solent praetendi, inquisitus etiam de hoc, dixit: Tam latus
are-wont to-be-set asked also about this he-said so broad
fuit unus circulus, hoc est tantum intra se comprehendit,
was one circle that is so-much within itself it-enclosed
quantum spacium est de castro Turico ad Constantiam;
as-much-as the-distance is from the-fort of-Zurich to Constance
ita stipitibus quernis faginis vel abiegnis exstructus, ut de
so with-stakes of-oak of-beech or of-fir built that from
margine ad marginem 20 pedes tenderetur in latum, et
edge to edge twenty feet it-stretched in breadth and
totidem subrigeretur in altum; cavitas autem universa aut
as-many it-was-raised in height the-hollow moreover whole either
durissimis lapidibus aut creta tenacissima repleretur; porro
with-the-hardest stones or with-clay most-tenacious was-filled further

superficies vallorum eorundem integerrimis cespitibus
the-surface of-the-ramparts the-same with-the-most-unbroken turfs
tegeretur. Inter quorum confinia plantabantur arbusculae,
was-covered between whose borders were-planted little-trees
quae, ut cernere solemus, abscisae atque proiectae comas
which as to-see we-are-wont cut-off and thrown-down hair
caudicum foliorumque proferunt. Inter hos igitur aggeres
of-shoots and-of-leaves put-forth between these therefore mounds
ita vici et villae erant locatae, ut de aliis ad alias
so villages and estates were placed that from some to others
vox humana posset audiri. Contra eadem vero aedificia
the-voice human could to-be-heard opposite the-same but buildings
inter inexpugnabiles illos muros portae non satis amplae
in the-impregnable those walls gates not sufficiently ample
et latae erant constitutae; per quas latrocinandi gratia
and broad were set through which of-plundering for-the-sake
non solum exteriores sed etiam interiores exire solebant.
not only the-outer but also the-inner to-go-out were-accustomed
Item de secundo circulo, qui similiter ut primus erat
likewise from the-second circle which likewise as the-first was
exstructus, 20 miliaria Theutonica, quae sunt 40 Italica,
built twenty miles German which are forty Italian
ad tercium usque tendebantur; similiter usque ad nonum;
to the-third all-the-way they-stretched likewise all-the-way to the-ninth
quamvis ipsi circuli alius alio multo contractiores
although the-very circles one than-another much narrower
fuerint. De circulo quoque ad circulum sic erant possessiones
were from circle also to circle so were the-estates
et habitacula undique ordinata, ut clangor tubarum inter
and dwellings on-all-sides arranged that the-blast of-trumpets between
singula posset cuiusque rei significativus adverti. Ad
each could of-every thing as-a-signal to-be-perceived to

has ergo munitiones per ducentos et eo amplius
these therefore fortifications through two-hundred and than-that more
annos qualescunque omnium occidentalium divitias Huni
years whatever of-all the-westerners riches the-Huns
congregantes, cum et Gothi et Wandali quietem mortalium
gathering since both the-Goths and the-Vandals the-rest of-mortals
perturbarent, orbem occiduum pene vacuum dimiserunt. Quos
disturbed the-world western almost empty left whom
tamen invictissimus Karolus ita in annis octo perdomuit,
yet the-most-unconquered Charles so in years eight thoroughly-subdued
ut de eis ne minimas quidem reliquias remanere permiserit.
that of them not smallest even remains to-remain he-allowed
A Bulgaribus vero ideo manum retraxit, quia, videlicet
from the-Bulgars but for-this-reason the-hand he-withdrew because namely
Hunis exstinctis, regno Francorum nichil nocituri
the-Huns destroyed to-the-kingdom of-the-Franks nothing about-to-harm
viderentur. Porro praedam in Pannonia repertam per
they-seemed further the-plunder in Pannonia found among
episcopia vel monasteria liberalissima divisione distribuit.
bishoprics or monasteries with-most-generous division he-distributed

II · THE TWO SOLDIERS

In the Saxon war two private soldiers, whose names the Monk withholds, destroy the walls of a strong city under a tortoise of shields. Charles makes the first prefect between the Rhine and the Alps, with his lord Gerold's consent, and enriches the other with estates.

In bello autem Saxonico, cum per semet ipsum aliquando
in the-war moreover Saxon when by himself self once
fuisset occupatus, duo quidam privati homines, quorum
he-had-been occupied two certain private men whose

etiam nomina designarem nisi notam arrogantiae vitarem,
also the-names I-would-indicate unless the-mark of-arrogance I-should-avoid
testudine facta, muros firmissimae civitatis vel aggeris acerrime
a-tortoise made the-walls of-a-most-strong city or rampart most-fiercely
destruebant. Quod videns, iustissimus Karolus primum illorum
were-destroying which seeing the-most-just Charles the-first of-them
cum consensu domini sui Keroldi praefectum inter Renum
with the-consent of-lord his-own Gerold prefect between the-Rhine
et alpes Italicas instituit, alterum praediis admodum ditavit.
and the-Alps Italian he-established the-other with-estates very enriched

III · THE DRUNKEN GUARDS

The sons of two dukes, set to guard the king's tent, lie drunk as the dead. Charles, making his rounds as usual, returns unrecognized. In the morning he asks his nobles what a man deserves who has betrayed the Franks' head into the enemy's hands. The dukes, not knowing, condemn such a man to death; Charles rebukes their sons harshly and lets them go unharmed.

Ibidem vero cum duorum ducum filii ad tentorium
in-the-same-place but when of-two dukes the-sons at the-tent
regis excubare deberent et potibus ingurgitati iacerent
of-the-king to-keep-watch ought and with-drinks gorged lay
ut mortui, porro ille, iuxta consuetudinem suam sepius
as-if dead further he according-to custom his-own often
evigilans et castra circuiens, sensim et pene nullo
waking and the-camp going-around gently and almost no-one
cognoscente ad tabernaculum regressus est. Mane autem facto,
recognizing to the-tent returned has morning moreover come
convocatis ad se cunctis regni primoribus, interrogavit,
summoned to himself all of-the-kingdom the-chief-men he-asked

qua poena dignus esset, qui caput Francorum in manus
of-what penalty worthy would-be one-who the-head of-the-Franks into the-hands
hostium tradidisset. Tunc praefati duces, earundem
of-the-enemies should-have-betrayed then the-aforesaid dukes of-the-same
rerum penitus ignari, eiusmodi hominem condempnaverunt ad
things utterly ignorant such a-man condemned to
mortem. Ipso vero durissimis verbis coercitos dimisit inlesos.
death he-himself but with-very-harsh words restrained dismissed unharmed

IV · THE TWO BASTARDS

Two bastards born in the women's workshop of Colmar fight bravely in the Saxon war. Charles calls them to his tent and says he wants them to serve him in his chamber. Concealing their indignation, they wait until he sleeps, ride out to the enemy camp, and wash away the stain of servitude in their own and the enemy's blood.

Erant quoque ibi duo nothi, de genicio Columbrensi
there-were also there two bastards from the-women's-workshop of-Colmar
procreati. Qui cum fortissime in bello dimicarent, requisivit
begotten who when most-bravely in battle they-fought asked
imperator ab illis, qui et unde nati essent. Quo comperto,
the-emperor of them who and whence born they-were which learned
meridiano tempore eos ad tabernaculum suum vocatos sic
at-midday time them to tent his-own called thus
allocutus est: Boni iuvenes, volo ut mihi non alii serviatis.
addressed has good youths I-wish that me not another you-serve
Qui cum se ad hoc venisse testarentur, ut vel ultimi
who when themselves for this to-have-come testified that even the-last
in eius essent obsequio, dixit ille: Ad cameram meam
in his they-might-be service said he in chamber my

servire debetis. Quod etiam dum indignatione dissimulata
to-serve you-ought which also while with-indignation dissembled
libenter se facturos esse faterentur, captato tempore quo
gladly themselves about-to-do to-be professed seized the-time when
imperator somno quiescere coepisset, exierunt ad castra
the-emperor in-sleep to-rest had-begun they-went-out to the-camp
adversariorum et, tumultu concitato, suo vel hostium
of-the-adversaries and an-uproar stirred-up with-their-own and of-the-enemies
sanguine servitutis notam diluerunt.
blood of-servitude the-mark washed-away

V · THE EMPEROR AT CONSTANTINOPLE

Amid his wars Charles keeps sending letters and gifts to distant kings. When his envoy tells the emperor at Constantinople that Charles's kingdom is at peace except for the Saxons' raids, the emperor, sluggish with idleness, asks why his son labors against so few and feeble enemies, and gives the envoy that people. When the envoy reports this, Charles smiles and says the emperor would have done better to give him a pair of linen drawers for the journey.

Inter huiusmodi tamen occupationes nullo modo magnanimus
among of-this-kind yet occupations in-no way the-great-souled
praetermisit imperator, quin ad longinquissimarum partium
omitted emperor but-that to of-the-most-distant parts
reges alios atque alios dirigeret litterarum vel munerum
kings other and other he-sent of-letters or of-gifts
portitores; a quibus illi omnium provinciarum sunt
bearers from whom to-him of-all provinces were
honores directi. Cum igitur de sede Saxonici belli legatos
honors sent when therefore from the-seat of-the-Saxon war envoys
ad regem Constantinopoleos destinaret, interrogavit ille:
to the-king of-Constantinople he-dispatched asked he

utrum pacatum esset regnum filii sui Karoli vel si a
whether at-peace was the-kingdom of-son his-own Charles or if by
finitimis gentibus incursaretur. Cumque missorum primus
neighboring peoples it-was-attacked and-when of-the-envoys the-first
alias omnia pacata referret, nisi quod gens quaedam,
otherwise all-things peaceful reported except that a-people a-certain
qui Saxones vocitantur, creberrimis latrociniis Francorum
which Saxons are-called with-very-frequent raids of-the-Franks
fines inquietarent, dixit homo torpens ocio nec utilis
the-borders harassed said the-man torpid with-idleness nor useful
belli negocio: Hiû, quare laborat filius meus contra hostes
of-war for-the-business ah why labors son my against enemies
paucissimos nullius nominis nulliusque virtutis? Habeas tu
very-few of-no name and-of-no valor have you
gentem illam cum omnibus ad eam pertinentibus. Quod
people that with all-things to it belonging which
cum reversus bellicosissimo Karolo nuntiaret, arridens ille
when having-returned to-the-most-warlike Charles he-announced smiling he
dixit ei: Multo melius tibi rex ille consuluisset, si
said to-him much better for-you king that would-have-provided if
unum lineum femorale ad tantum iter tibi tribuisset.
one linen pair-of-drawers for so-long a-journey to-you he-had-given

Charles's envoy, starved by a bishop, tells the Greek emperor the bishop is as holy as one can be without God; condemned for turning a fish, he escapes by a trick. Heito, ill used by the Greeks, makes their envoys bow to one official after another until they see Charles and fall senseless.

Non videtur occultanda sapientia, quam sapienti Greciae
not it-seems to-be-hidden the-wisdom which to-wise Greece
idem missus aperuit. Cum autumnali tempore ad urbem
the-same envoy disclosed when in-autumn time to the-city
quondam regiam cum sociis venisset, aliis alio
formerly royal with companions he-had-come others to-another-place
divisis, ipse cuidam episcopo commendatus est. Qui, cum
divided he-himself to-a-certain bishop entrusted was who since
ieiuniis et orationibus incessanter incumberet, legatum illum
to-fasts and prayers unceasingly he-applied-himself envoy that
pene continua mortificavit inedia; vernali autem temperie
almost with-continual put-to-death fasting vernal moreover the-mildness
iam aliquantulum arridente, praesentavit eum regi. Qui
now somewhat smiling he-presented him to-the-king who
interrogavit eum, qualis sibi idem videretur episcopus. At
asked him what-sort to-him the-same seemed bishop but
ille, ex imis praecordiis alta suspiria trahens: Sanctissimus
he from the-deepest heart deep sighs drawing most-holy
est ait ille vester episcopus, quantum sine Deo possibile
is he-said that your bishop as-far-as without God possible
est. Ad quod stupefactus rex: Quomodo inquit sine Deo
it-is at which astounded the-king how he-says without God

aliquis sanctus esse potest? Tum ille: Scriptum est inquit
anyone holy to-be can then he written it-is he-says
„Deus caritas est"; qua iste vacuus est.
God love is of-which this-one empty is
Tunc rex vocavit eum ad convivium suum et inter medios
then the-king called him to feast his-own and among the-midst-of
proceres collocavit. A quibus talis lex constituta erat: ut
nobles placed by whom such a-law established was that
nullus in mensa regis, indigena sive advena, aliquod animal
no-one at the-table of-the-king native or stranger any animal
vel corpus animalis in partem aliam converteret; sed ita
or body of-an-animal onto side other should-turn but so
tantum, ut positum erat, de superiori parte manducaret.
only as placed it-was from the-upper side should-eat
Allatus est autem piscis fluvialis et pigmentis infusus, in
brought was moreover a-fish of-the-river and with-spices steeped on
disco positus. Cumque hospes idem, consuetudinis illius
a-dish placed and-when guest the-same of-custom that
ignarus, piscem illum in partem alteram giraret, exurgentes
ignorant fish that onto side other turned rising
omnes dixerunt ad regem: Domine, ita estis inhonorati,
all said to the-king lord so you-are dishonored
sicut nunquam anteriores vestri. At ille ingemiscens dixit
as never predecessors your but he groaning said
ad legatum illum: Obstare non possum istis, quin morti
to envoy that To-withstand not I-can these but-that to-death
continuo tradaris. Aliud pete, quodcunque volueris;
at-once you-be-handed-over something-else ask whatever you-may-wish
et complebo. Tunc, parumper deliberans, cunctis audientibus
and I-will-fulfill then for-a-little deliberating all hearing
in haec verba prorupit: Obsecro, domne imperator, ut
into these words burst-out I-beseech lord emperor that

secundum promissionem vestram concedatis mihi unam
according-to promise your you-grant to-me one
peticionem parvulam. Et rex ait: Postula, quodcunque
petition little and the-king said ask whatever
volueris, et impetrabis; praeter quod contra legem Grecorum
you-may-wish and you-will-obtain except that against the-law of-the-Greeks
vitam tibi concedere non possum. Tum ille: Hoc inquit
life to-you to-grant not I-can then he this he-says
unum moriturus flagito: ut, quicunque me piscem illum girare
one about-to-die I-demand that whoever me the-fish that to-turn
conspexit, oculorum lumine privetur. Obstupefactus rex ad
saw of-the-eyes of-the-light be-deprived astounded the-king at
talem conditionem, iuravit per Christum, quod ipse hoc
such a-condition swore by Christ that he-himself this
non videret sed tantum narrantibus crederet. Deinde regina
not saw but only to-those-telling believed then the-queen
ita se coepit excusare: Per laetificam theotocon, sanctam
so herself began to-excuse by the-gladdening God-bearer holy
Mariam, ego illud non adverti. Post reliqui proceres,
Mary I it not noticed afterward the-remaining nobles
alius ante alium tali se periculo exuere cupientes, hic
one before another from-such themselves danger to-free desiring this-one
per clavigerum coeli, ille per doctorem gentium, reliqui
by the-key-bearer of-heaven that-one by the-teacher of-the-nations the-rest
per virtutes angelicas sanctorumque omnium turbas ab hac
by the-virtues angelic and-of-the-saints all the-crowds from this
se noxa terribilibus sacramentis absolvere conabantur. Tum
themselves guilt with-terrible oaths to-absolve tried then
sapiens ille Francigena, vanissima Hellade in suis sedibus
wise that Frank most-vain Hellas in its-own seats
exsuperata, victor et sanus in patriam suam reversus est.
overcome victor and safe into homeland his-own returned has

Post annos autem aliquot direxit illuc indefessus Karolus
after years moreover some sent thither the-tireless Charles
quendam episcopum, praecellentissimum mente et corpore
a-certain bishop most-excellent in-mind and body
virum, adiuncto ei comite nobilissimo duce Hugone.
a-man joined to-him as-companion the-most-noble duke Hugh
Qui, diutissime protracti, tandem ad praesentiam regis
who very-long delayed at-last to the-presence of-the-king
perducti et indigne habiti, per diversissima sunt loca
brought and unworthily treated through most-diverse were places
divisi. Tandem vero aliquando dimissi, cum magno navis
divided at-last but at-some-time dismissed with great of-ship
et rerum dispendio redierunt.
and of-goods loss they-returned
Non post multum autem direxit idem rex legatarios suos
not after much moreover sent the-same king envoys his-own
ad gloriosissimum Karolum. Forte vero contigit, ut tunc
to the-most-glorious Charles by-chance but it-happened that then
idem episcopus cum duce praefato apud imperatorem
the-same bishop with the-duke aforesaid with the-emperor
fuissent. Nunciatis igitur legatis venturis, dederunt consilium
had-been announced therefore the-envoys about-to-come they-gave counsel
sapientissimo Karolo: ut circumducerentur per alpes et
to-the-most-wise Charles that they-should-be-led-around through the-Alps and
invia, donec, attritis omnibus et consumptis, ingenti
pathless-places until worn-down all and consumed by-huge
penuria confecti ad conspectum illius venire cogerentur.
want exhausted to the-sight of-him to-come they-should-be-compelled
Cumque tandem venissent, fecit idem episcopus vel socius
and-when at-last they-had-come caused the-same bishop or companion
eius comitem stabuli in medio subiectorum suorum
his the-count of-the-stable in the-middle of-subordinates his-own

sublimi throno considere, ut nequaquam alius quam
on-a-lofty throne to-sit that by-no-means other than
imperator credi potuisset. Quem ut legati viderunt,
the-emperor to-be-believed he-could-have whom when the-envoys saw
corruentes in terram adorare voluerunt. Sed a ministris
falling to the-ground to-adore they-wished but by the-attendants
repulsi, ad anteriora progredi sunt compulsi. Quo cum
pushed-back to the-farther-parts to-advance they-were compelled whither when
venirent, videntes comitem palatii in medio procerum
they-came seeing the-count of-the-palace in the-midst-of the-nobles
concionantem, imperatorem suspicati, terratenus sunt
haranguing the-emperor having-suspected to-the-ground they-were
prostrati. Cumque et inde colaphis propellerentur, dicentibus
prostrated and-when also thence with-blows they-were-driven saying
qui aderant: Non hic est imperator, in ulteriora
those-who were-present not here is the-emperor into the-farther-parts
progressi et invenientes magistrum mensae regiae cum
having-advanced and finding the-master of-the-table royal with
ministris ornatissimis, putantes imperatorem, devoluti sunt
attendants most-adorned thinking the-emperor rolled-down they-were
in humum. Indeque repulsi, reppererunt in consistorio
onto the-ground and-thence pushed-back they-found in the-consistory
cubicularios imperatoris circa magistrum suum, de quo non
the-chamberlains of-the-emperor around master their-own of whom not
videretur dubium, quin ille princeps posset esse mortalium.
it-seemed doubtful but-that he the-prince could to-be of-mortals
Qui, cum se quod non erat abnegaret, pollicebatur tamen,
who when himself what not he-was denied he-promised yet
quod cum primoribus palacii moliretur, quatinus, si fieri
that with the-chief-men of-the-palace he-would-strive so-that if to-be-done
potuisset, in praesentiam imperatoris augustissimi pervenire
it-could into the-presence of-the-emperor most-august to-come

deberent. Tunc ex latere caesaris directi sunt, qui
they-should then from the-side of-the-caesar sent were men-who
eos honorifice introducerent. Stabat autem gloriosissimus
them honorably should-bring-in stood moreover the-most-glorious
regum Karolus iuxta fenestram lucidissimam, radians sicut
of-kings Charles beside a-window most-bright radiant as
sol in ortu suo, gemmis et auro conspicuus, innixus
the-sun in rising its-own with-gems and gold conspicuous leaning
super Heittonem; hoc quippe nomen erat episcopi ad
upon Heito this indeed the-name was of-the-bishop to
Constantinopolim quondam destinati. In cuius undique circuitu
Constantinople formerly sent in whose on-all-sides circuit
consistebat instar militiae coelestis, tres videlicet iuvenes
stood like the-army heavenly three namely youths
filii eius, iam regni participes effecti, filiaeque cum
sons of-him already of-the-kingdom sharers made and-the-daughters with
matre non minus sapientia vel pulchritudine quam monilibus
the-mother no less with-wisdom or beauty than with-necklaces
ornatae, pontifices forma et virtutibus incomparabiles,
adorned bishops in-the-form and virtues incomparable
praestantissimique nobilitate simul et sanctitate abbates; duces
and-most-outstanding in-nobility together and holiness abbots dukes
vero tales, qualis quondam apparuit Iosue in castris Galgalae;
but such as once appeared Joshua in the-camp of-Gilgal
exercitus vero talis, qualis de Samaria Siros cum Assiriis
the-army but such as from Samaria the-Syrians with the-Assyrians
effugavit; ut, si David medius esset, haec non inmerito
put-to-flight so-that if David in-the-middle were these-things not undeservedly
praecinuisset: Reges terrae et omnes populi, principes
he-would-have-sung kings of-the-earth and all peoples princes
et omnes iudices terrae, iuvenes et virgines, senes cum
and all judges of-the-earth young-men and maidens old-men with

iunioribus laudent nomen Domini. Tunc consternati missi
the-younger let-them-praise the-name of-the-Lord then dismayed the-envoys
Grecorum, deficiente spiritu et consilio perdito, muti et
of-the-Greeks failing with-breath and with-counsel lost dumb and
exanimes in pavimentum deciderunt. Quos benignissimus
lifeless onto the-pavement fell whom the-most-kind
imperator elevatos consolatoriis allocutionibus animare conatus
emperor raised with-consoling addresses to-revive tried
est. Tandem itaque recreato spiritu, cum exosum quondam
has at-last and-so recovered the-breath when hated formerly
et abiectum a se Heittonem in tali gloria vidissent,
and cast-off by themselves Heito in such glory they-had-seen
iterum pavefacti tam diu volutabantur humi, donec eis
again terrified so long they-were-rolling on-the-ground until to-them
rex per regem coelorum iuraret, nihil se illis mali in
the-king by the-king of-heaven swore nothing himself to-them of-evil in
nullo aliquo facturum. Qua sponsione roborati, aliquantulum
nothing whatever about-to-do by-which pledge strengthened somewhat
fiducialius agere coeperunt. Patriamque reversi, non
more-confidently to-act they-began and-to-their-homeland having-returned not
sunt ulterius ad nostra progressi.
they-have further to our-parts advanced
Hic replicandum videtur, quam sapientissimos homines
here to-be-unfolded it-seems how most-wise men
praeclarissimus Karolus habuerit in omnibus.
the-most-illustrious Charles had in all-things

When the Greek envoys sing antiphons in their own language at the octave of the Theophany, Charles has a chaplain who knows Greek translate them into Latin, a syllable for each note, which is why they share one tone. The envoys also bring instruments, which Charles's craftsmen copy, above all an organ with bronze casks and bellows that roars like thunder and chatters like a lyre; how it was lost is not for this place.

Cum igitur Greci post matutinas laudes imperatori
when therefore the-Greeks after the-morning lauds for-the-emperor
celebratas in octava die theophaniae secreto in sua lingua
celebrated on the-octave day of-the-Theophany secretly in their-own language
Deo psallerent antiphonas eius melodiae et materiae, cuius
to-God were-chanting antiphons of-that melody and matter of-which
sunt: Veterem hominem cum sequentibus, precepit imperator
are the-old man with the-following commanded the-emperor
capellano cuidam suo Grecismi perito: ut ipsam materiam
to-a-chaplain a-certain his-own of-Greek skilled that the-very matter
in eadem modulatione Latinis redderet, et singulis eius
in the-same modulation into-Latin he-should-render and to-the-single of-its
modulaminis motibus singulas syllabas dare sollicite curaret,
tune movements single syllables to-give carefully take-care
ne, quantum natura sineret, in illo dissimiles forent.
lest as-far-as nature allowed in that unlike they-should-be
Inde est, quod omnes eiusdem sunt toni, et quod in
from-this it-is that all of-the-same are tone and that in
una ipsarum pro contrivit „conteruit" positum invenitur.
one of-them for contrivit conteruit placed is-found
Adduxerunt etiam idem praefati Grecorum missi omne genus
brought also the-same aforesaid of-the-Greeks envoys every kind
organorum sed et variarum rerum secum. Quae cuncta
of-instruments but also of-various things with-themselves which all

ab opificibus sagacissimi Karoli, quasi dissimulanter aspecta,
by the-craftsmen of-the-most-shrewd Charles as-if without-remark looked-at
accuratissime sunt in opus conversa; et praecipue illud
most-carefully were into work turned and especially that
musicorum organum praestantissimum, quod, doliis ex aere
of-the-musicians organ most-excellent which with-casks from bronze
conflatis follibusque taurinis per fistulas aereas mire
cast and-bellows of-bull's-hide through pipes bronze wonderfully
perflantibus, rugitum quidem tonitrui boatu, garrulitatem vero
blowing the-roar indeed of-thunder in-booming the-chatter but
lyrae vel cymbali dulcedine coaequabat. Quod ubi positum
of-the-lyre or of-the-cymbal in-sweetness equaled which where placed
fuerit quamdiuque duraverit et quomodo inter alia rei
it-was and-how-long it-lasted and how among other of-the-state
publicae damna perierit, non est huius loci vel temporis enarrare.
public losses it-perished not is of-this place or time to-relate

VIII · THE PERSIAN ENVOYS

Persian envoys find Charles at Aachen at Easter and say they have seen earthen men before and now see golden ones. When a beast grazes Charles's leg on the hunt, the disgraced Isambard kills it, and the queen wins back his honors. The envoys bring gifts, say the East fears Charles more than Harun, and complain of his nobles, whom Charles strips and fines.

Per idem tempus etiam legati Persarum ad eum directi
through the-same time also envoys of-the-Persians to him sent
sunt. Qui, situm Franciae nescientes, pro magno duxerunt,
were who the-position of-Francia not-knowing for great held-it
si litus Italiae propter famositatem Romae, cui
if the-shore of-Italy on-account-of the-fame of-Rome over-which

tunc illum imperare cognoverant, apprehendere valuissent.
then him to-rule they-had-learned to-reach they-had-been-able
Cumque episcopis Campaniae vel Tusciae, Emiliae vel Liguriae
and-when to-the-bishops of-Campania or of-Tuscany of-Emilia or of-Liguria
Burgundiaeque sive Galliae, simul et abbatibus vel comitibus
and-of-Burgundy or of-Gaul together and to-the-abbots or counts
causam adventus sui indicassent, dissimulanterque ab
the-cause of-the-coming their-own they-had-indicated and-without-remark by
eisdem suscepti vel repulsi fuissent, tandem post anni
the-same received or repulsed they-had-been at-last after of-a-year
revolutum circulum apud Aquasgrani famosissimum virtutibus
the-revolved circle at Aachen most-famous for-virtues
Karolum, defessi et nimio defecti circuitu, reppererunt.
Charles tired and by-excessive worn-out circuit they-found
Venerunt autem illuc in maioris quadragesimae ebdomada
they-came moreover thither in of-the-greater Lent the-week
maiori. Nuntiatique imperatori, dilati sunt ab eius
greater and-announced to-the-emperor put-off they-were from his
conspectu usque in vigiliam paschae. Cumque in festivitate
sight up-to into the-vigil of-Easter and-when on the-festival
praecipua incomparabilis ille incomparabiliter adornatus
chief incomparable that-one incomparably adorned
fuisset, iussit introduci personas eius gentis, quae cuncto
had-been he-ordered to-be-brought-in the-persons of-that people which to-the-whole
quondam esset orbi terribilis. Quibus tamen excellentissimus
formerly was world terrifying to-whom yet the-most-excellent
Karolus ita terrificus videbatur prae omnibus, quasi nunquam
Charles so terrifying seemed beyond all as-if never
regem vel imperatorem prius vidissent. Quos ille blande
a-king or emperor before they-had-seen whom he kindly
susceptos hoc munere ditavit: ut, quasi unus de filiis eius,
received with-this gift enriched that as-if one of the-sons of-him

ubicunque vellent ambulandi et singula quaeque perspiciendi
wherever they-wished of-walking and each thing of-viewing
et quaecunque rogandi vel interrogandi licentiam haberent.
and whatever of-asking or of-inquiring license they-should-have
Quo tripudio gestientes, ipsi adherere, ipsum inspicere
at-which joy exulting to-him to-cling him to-look-at
ipsumque admirari cunctis orientalibus praeposuere divitiis.
and-him to-admire to-all eastern they-preferred riches
Ascendentesque in solarium, quod ambit aedem basilicae,
and-ascending into the-gallery which surrounds the-building of-the-basilica
et inde despectantes clerum vel exercitum, iterumque ad
and thence looking-down-on the-clergy or the-army and-again to
imperatorem regredientes, propterque leticiae magnitudinem
the-emperor returning and-because-of of-joy the-greatness
risum retinere nequeuntes, complosis manibus aiebant: Prius
laughter to-hold not-being-able with-clapped hands they-said before
terreos tantum homines vidimus, nunc autem aureos. Deinde
earthen only men we-saw now moreover golden then
ad singulos procerum accedentes, novitatemque vestimentorum
to each of-the-nobles approaching and-the-novelty of-the-garments
sive armorum admirati, ad mirabiliorem sunt augustum
or of-the-arms having-admired to the-more-wonderful they-have augustus
regressi. Quod cum eadem nocte et sequenti dominica
returned which when on-the-same night and on-the-following Sunday
pasce iugiter in ecclesia facerent, in ipsa sacrosancta die
of-Easter continually in the-church they-did on that-very sacrosanct day
ad opipare convivium opulentissimi Karoli cum Franciae
to the-sumptuous feast of-the-most-opulent Charles with of-Francia

Europaeque proceribus sunt invitati. Inde vero insolitarum
and-of-Europe the-nobles they-were invited thence but of-unusual
rerum miraculo perculsi, propemodum exsurrexere ieiuni.
things by-the-wonder struck almost they-rose fasting

Postera Phebea spargebat lampade terras,
the-next with-Phoebean was-sprinkling lamp the-lands
Titoni croceum linquens Aurora cubile,
of-Tithonus the-saffron leaving Dawn bed

cum ecce quietis et otii impatientissimus Karolus ad
when behold of-quiet and of-leisure most-impatient Charles to
venatum bissontium vel urorum in nemus ire et Persarum
the-hunting of-bison or of-aurochs into the-forest to-go and of-the-Persians
nuncios secum parat educere. Qui cum ingentia illa viderent
the-envoys with-himself prepares to-lead-out who when huge those they-saw
animalia, nimio pavore perculsi, in fugam conversi sunt.
animals with-excessive fear struck into flight turned were
At non territus heros Karolus, ut in equo sedebat acerrimo,
but not terrified the-hero Charles as on the-horse he-sat most-spirited
appropinquans uni eorum, extracta spata cervicem eius
approaching one of-them drawn the-sword the-neck of-it
abscidere conabatur. Sed frustrato ictu, galliculam regis
to-cut-off tried but frustrated the-blow the-boot of-the-king
et fasciolam ferus immanissimus disrumpens tibiamque illius
and band the-beast most-monstrous tearing and-the-leg of-him
summo licet cornu perstringens, paulo tardiorem reddidit;
with-the-tip although of-the-horn grazing a-little slower rendered
et in convallem tutissimam, lignis et lapidibus asperatam,
and into a-valley most-safe with-trees and stones made-rough
casso vulnere irritatus aufugit. Cumque ad obsequium domini
with-vain wound irritated fled and-when to the-service of-the-lord

cuncti pene hossas suas vellent extrahere, ille prohibuit,
all almost hose their-own wished to-draw-off he forbade
dicens: Sic affectus ad Hildigardam venire debeo. Consecutus
saying thus affected to Hildegard to-come I-ought having-pursued
autem feram Isambardo filius Warini, persecutoris patroni vestri
moreover the-beast Isambard the-son of-Warin the-persecutor of-patron your
Othmari, cum propius non fuisset ausus accedere, librata lancea
Otmar when nearer not he-had dared to-approach poised the-lance
inter armum et guttur cor eius penetravit et imperatori
between the-shoulder and the-throat the-heart of-it pierced and to-the-emperor
palpitantem consignavit. Quod cum ille quasi non advertisset,
quivering delivered which when he as-if not he-had-noticed
cadavere sociis relicto, reversus est domum; advocataque
the-carcass to-the-companions left returned has home and-summoned
regina, ostendit ocreas disruptas et dixit ei: Quid dignus
the-queen showed the-greaves torn and said to-her what worthy
est, qui de hoste haec infligente me liberavit? Illaque
is he-who from the-enemy these-things inflicting me freed and-she
respondente: Omni bono, enarravit imperator cuncta per
answering of-every good-thing related the-emperor all-things through
ordinem; et immanissimis cornibus in testimonium prolatis,
order and with-the-most-monstrous horns as testimony brought-forth
ad lacrimas et suspiria pugnosque pectoris dominatricem coegit.
to tears and sighs and-blows of-the-breast the-mistress compelled
Quae cum audisset, quod tunc odibilis et cunctis honoribus
who when she-had-heard that then hated and of-all honors
exspoliatus Isambardo imperatorem de tali adversario vindicasset,
stripped Isambard the-emperor on such an-adversary had-avenged
eius pedibus advoluta, impetravit ei omnia, quaecunque
of-him at-the-feet rolled obtained for-him all-things whatever
illi fuerant ablata; sed et ipsa eidem est munera largita.
from-him had-been taken but also she-herself to-the-same has gifts bestowed

Attulerunt autem idem Persae imperatori elephantum et
brought moreover the-same Persians to-the-emperor an-elephant and
simias, opobalsamum, nardum, unguentaque varia, pigmenta,
monkeys balsam nard and-ointments various spices
odoramenta vel medicamenta diversissima; adeo ut orientem
perfumes or medicines most-diverse so-much that the-east
evacuasse et occidentem viderentur implesse. Cumque multa
to-have-emptied and the-west they-seemed to-have-filled and-when much
apud imperatorem familiaritate uti coepissent, quadam die,
with the-emperor familiarity to-enjoy they-had-begun on-a-certain day
cum iam laetiores essent et graecingario fortiori incaluissent,
when already more-merry they-were and with-Greek-wine stronger had-grown-warm
ad Karolum, serietate sobrietateque semper armatum,
to Charles with-seriousness and-sobriety always armed
ioculariter haec prolocuti sunt: Magna quidem est, o
jestingly these-things spoke-out have great indeed is O
imperator, potentia vestra, sed multo minor rumore, quo
emperor power your but much less than-the-rumor by-which
apud orientalia regna diffamati polletis. Quo ille audito et
among the-eastern kingdoms spread-abroad you-are-strong which he heard and
profundissima indignatione dissimulata, ioculariter inquisivit
the-deepest indignation dissembled jestingly inquired
ab eis: Cur ita filii mei dicitis? vel hoc vobis unde videtur?
of them why so sons my do-you-say or this to-you whence does-it-seem
At illi, repetentes a principio, narraverunt ei cuncta, quae
but they repeating from the-beginning narrated to-him all-things which
sibi in cismarinis partibus contigerunt; dicentes: Nos
to-themselves in the-cismarine parts happened saying we
Persae vel Medi Armeniique vel Indi, Parthi et Elamitae
Persians or Medes and-Armenians or Indians Parthians and Elamites
omnesque orientales multo magis vos quam dominatorem
and-all easterners much more you than lord

nostrum Aaron timemus. De Macedonibus autem vel omnibus
our Harun fear about the-Macedonians moreover or all
Achivis quid dicamus? qui iam iamque magnitudinem vestram
the-Achaeans what shall-we-say who now and-now the-greatness your
plus se fluctibus Ioniis oppressuram pavitant. Insulani
more themselves than-the-waves Ionian about-to-crush dread the-islanders
autem omnes, per quos iter habuimus, ad obsequium
moreover all through whom journey we-had to service
vestrum ita prompti sunt et intenti, quasi in palacio vestro
your so ready are and intent as-if in palace your
nutriti fuerint et beneficiis ingentibus honorati. Istarum
brought-up they-had-been and with-benefits huge honored of-these
autem partium primores, ut nobis videtur, non satis curant
moreover parts the-chief-men as to-us it-seems not enough care
de vobis, nisi tantum in praesentia vestra. Nam cum
about you except only in presence your for when
eis, utpote peregrini, perinde suggereremus, ut aliquid
to-them as foreigners in-the-same-way we-suggested that some
nobis humanitatis in vestri amore, quoniam vos quaereremus,
to-us of-kindness in your love since you we-were-seeking
exhibere dignarentur, inadiutos et vacuos dimiserunt. Tunc
to-show they-might-deign unhelped and empty they-dismissed then
imperator omnes comites et abbates, per quos idem missi
the-emperor all counts and abbots through whom the-same envoys
profecti sunt, cunctis honoribus denudavit; episcopos autem
traveled they-have of-all honors stripped the-bishops moreover
infinita pecunia multavit; legatos vero cum ingenti cautela
with-boundless money fined the-envoys but with huge caution
et honore ad usque proprios fines deduci praecepit.
and honor to all-the-way their-own borders to-be-escorted he-commanded

The king of Africa sends Charles a lion and a bear, and Charles sends the Africans grain, wine, and oil. To the Persian emperor he sends horses, Frisian cloaks, and dogs. When the dogs seize a lion and the Franks kill it, Harun says Charles tames all things, and gives him the Holy Land, himself its steward. So envoys travel easily between Parthia and Germany.

Venerunt quoque ad eum legatarii regis Afrorum,
came also to him envoys of-the-king of-the-Africans
deferentes leonem Marmaricum ursumque Numidicum cum
bringing a-lion Marmarican and-a-bear Numidian with
ferrugine Hibera Tyrioque murice et caeteris earundem
rust-red Spanish and-Tyrian purple and the-other of-the-same
regionum insignibus. Quem liberalissimus Karolus Libicosque
regions distinctive-things whom the-most-generous Charles and-the-Libyans
omnes iugi penuria semper confectos Europe divitiis,
all by-continual want always worn-out of-Europe with-the-riches
frumento videlicet vino et oleo, non solum tunc sed et
grain namely wine and oil not only then but also
omni tempore vitae suae remunerans et larga manu
in-all the-time of-life his-own rewarding and with-generous hand
sustentans, subiectos sibi atque fideles in perpetuum
sustaining subject to-himself and faithful for ever
retentavit; et ab eis non vilia tributa suscepit.
kept and from them not cheap tributes received
Porro autem imperatori Persarum direxit indefessus augustus
further moreover to-the-emperor of-the-Persians sent the-tireless augustus
equos et mulos Hispanos; palliaque Fresonica, alba, cana,
horses and mules Spanish and-cloaks Frisian white gray
vermiculata vel saphirina, quae in illis partibus rara et
scarlet or sapphire which in those parts rare and

multum cara comperit; canes quoque agilitate et ferocia
very dear he-learned dogs also in-agility and ferocity
singulares, quales ipse prius ad capiendos vel propellendos
singular such-as he-himself before for catching or driving-off
leones et tigrides postulavit. Qui, caeteris muneribus quasi
lions and tigers had-asked who the-other gifts as-if
neglegenter inspectis, requisivit a missis, quas feras et
negligently looked-at asked of the-envoys what wild-beasts and
bestias canes illi debellare solerent. Cumque responsum
beasts dogs those to-overcome were-accustomed and-when the-answer
acciperet, quia cuncta, quibus inmissi fuissent, absque mora
he-received that all-things on-which let-loose they-had-been without delay
discerperent, Hoc inquit rei probabit eventus. Et ecce
they-tore-apart this he-says of-the-thing will-prove the-outcome and behold
crastina die factus est maximus pastorum clamor, a facie
on-the-next day made was the-greatest of-the-shepherds shout from the-face
leonis fugientium. Quod cum in aula regis fuisset auditum,
of-a-lion of-them-fleeing which when in the-hall of-the-king had-been heard
dixit ad legatos: O socii Franci, ascendite in equos vestros
he-said to the-envoys O comrades Franks mount onto horses your
et exite post me. Qui statim, quasi nihil umquam laboris
and come-out after me who at-once as-if nothing ever of-labor
aut lassitudinis passi fuissent, alacriter sunt regem prosecuti.
or of-weariness suffered they-had eagerly have the-king followed
Cum autem ad conspectum leonis, eminus licet, ventum
when moreover to the-sight of-the-lion from-afar although come
fuisset, dixit satraparum satrapa: Instigate canes vestros in
it-had-been said of-satraps the-satrap urge-on dogs your against
leonem. Qui, iussa complentes et acerrime advolantes, a
the-lion who the-commands fulfilling and most-fiercely flying-at by
Germanicis canibus Persicum leonem comprehensum Yperboreae
the-German dogs the-Persian lion seized of-Hyperborean

venae gladiis in Saxonum duratis sanguine peremerunt.
of-vein by-the-swords in of-the-Saxons hardened blood they-killed
Quo viso, nominis sui fortissimus heres Aaron, ex rebus
which seen of-name his-own the-bravest heir Harun from things
minimis fortiorem Karolum deprehendens, his verbis in eius
very-small the-stronger Charles perceiving in-these words in his
favorem prorupit: Nunc cognosco, quam sint vera, quae
favor burst-forth now I-know how are true the-things-which
audivi de fratre meo Karolo; quia scilicet assiduitate venandi
I-heard of brother my Charles that namely by-assiduity of-hunting
et infatigabili studio corpus et animam exercendi cuncta,
and by-tireless zeal the-body and the-soul of-exercising all-things
quae sub coelo sunt, consuetudinem habet edomandi. Quid
which under heaven are the-habit he-has of-taming what
igitur ei possum condignum rependere, qui ita me curavit
therefore to-him can-I worthy to-repay who so me took-care
honorare? Si terram promissam Abrahae et exhibitam Iosuae
to-honor if the-land promised to-Abraham and shown to-Joshua
dedero illi, propter longinquitatem locorum non potest eam
I-shall-give to-him on-account-of the-distance of-the-places not he-can it
defensare a barbaris; vel si iuxta magnanimitatem suam
to-defend from the-barbarians or if according-to magnanimity his-own
defendere coeperit, timeo, ne finitimae regno Francorum
to-defend he-begins I-fear lest bordering on-the-kingdom of-the-Franks
provintiae discedant ab eius imperio. Sed tamen hoc modo
provinces depart from his empire but yet in-this way
liberalitati eius gratificari temptabo. Dabo quidem illam
to-the-generosity of-him to-show-gratitude I-shall-try I-will-give indeed it
in eius potestatem, et ego advocatus eius ero super eam;
into his power and I advocate of-him I-will-be over it
ipse vero, quandocunque voluerit vel sibi oportunum
he-himself but whenever he-may-wish or to-himself suitable

visum fuerit, dirigat ad me legatos suos, et fidelissimum
seemed shall-have-been let-him-send to me envoys his-own and most-faithful
me procuratorem eiusdem provintiae redituum inveniet. Hoc
me the-steward of-the-same province of-revenues he-will-find in-this
ergo modo factum est, ut, quod pro impossibili dixit poeta:
therefore way done it-was that what as impossible said the-poet

Aut Ararim Parthus bibet aut Germania Tigrim,
either the-Arar the-Parthian shall-drink or Germany the-Tigris

propter industriam vigorosissimi Karoli et itus et reditus
on-account-of the-diligence of-the-most-vigorous Charles both the-going and return
legatorum eius et profectio et reversio missorum Aaron
of-the-envoys of-him and the-setting-out and returning of-the-envoys of-Harun
de Parthia in Germaniam sive de Germania in Parthiam
from Parthia into Germany or from Germany into Parthia
iuvenibus pueris et senioribus non solum possibilis sed et
to-young-men to-boys and to-old-men not only possible but also
facillimus videretur omnino; utrumlibet Ararim quidem velint
very-easy seemed altogether either the-Arar indeed may-wish
accipere grammatici, eum videlicet qui Rhenum vel illum
to-take the-grammarians that-one namely which into-the-Rhine or that-one
qui Rhodanum precipitat, quia hoc locorum confuderunt
which into-the-Rhône plunges because this of-places they-confused
ignari. Ad huius rei testimonium totam ciebo Germaniam;
ignorant to of-this thing testimony all I-will-summon Germany
quae temporibus gloriosissimi patris vestri Hludowici de
which in-the-times of-the-most-glorious father your Louis from
singulis huobis possessionum legalium singulos denarios
each hide of-holdings lawful each penny
reddere compulsa est, qui darentur ad redemptionem
to-pay compelled was which should-be-given for the-redemption

christianorum, terram repromissionis incolentium, hoc pro
of-the-Christians the-land of-promise inhabiting this for
antiqua dominatione atavi vestri Karoli avique vestri
the-ancient dominion of-forefather your Charles and-of-grandfather your
Hludowici ab eo miserabiliter implorantium.
Louis from him pitiably imploring

X · THE PROPHECY OF LOUIS

When Louis the German is six, his father brings him to court. Charles kisses him and sends him back; the boy, knowing his new rank, stands level with his father, saying that as his father's vassal he stood with his fellows, but as his comrade he stands beside him. Charles declares that he will be something great. Louis later becomes Saint Gall's advocate.

Et quia ita se obtulit occasio, ut de indicibili patre
and because so itself offered the-occasion that of indescribable father
vestro incideret honoranda mentio, libet commemorare
your should-fall to-be-honored mention it-pleases to-recall
praesagium, quod de illo sapientissimum constat protulisse
the-prophecy which about him the-most-wise it-is-agreed to-have-uttered
Karolum. Nam cum, natus et sex annis in domo patris
Charles for when born and for-six years in the-house of-the-father
cautissime nutritus, sexagenariis hominibus sapientior haut
most-carefully brought-up than-sixty-year-old men wiser not
inmerito videretur, genitor indulgentissimus, qui hoc vix
undeservedly he-seemed the-father most-indulgent who this scarcely
egre expectaret, ut ad conspectum avi eum
with-difficulty awaited that to the-sight of-the-grandfather him
perducere potuisset, assumens puerum a matre delicatissime
to-bring he-might-be-able taking the-boy by the-mother most-delicately

curatum coepit instruere, quam serie vel quam timorate
cared-for began to-instruct in-what order or how fearfully
ante imperatorem se agere aut, forte interrogatus, ei
before the-emperor himself to-conduct or perhaps asked to-him
respondere nec non et sibi deferre deberet. Et sic eum
to-answer nor not also to-himself to-defer he-ought and so him
ad palatium produxit. Cumque prima die vel secunda inter
to the-palace brought-forth and-when on-the-first day or the-second among
reliquos statores eum imperator curiosioribus oculis intueretur,
the-other attendants him the-emperor with-more-curious eyes regarded
dixit ad filium: Cuius est ille puerulus? Illo respondente: Quia
he-said to the-son whose is that little-boy he answering that
meus et vester, si dignamini, postulabat eum, dicens: Da
mine and yours if you-deign he-was-asking-for him saying give
illum mihi. Quod cum factum fuisset, deosculatum serenissimus
him to-me which when done had-been kissed the-most-serene
augustus pusionem remisit ad stationem pristinam. Ille, mox
augustus the-little-fellow sent-back to the-station former he soon
dignitatem suam cognoscens et cuiquam post imperatorem
dignity his-own knowing and to-anyone after the-emperor
secundus remanere despiciens, collectis animis et membris
second to-remain scorning gathered the-spirits and the-limbs
compositissime collocatis, aequato gradu stetit iuxta patrem
most-composedly placed with-equal step stood beside father
suum. Quod providentissimus aspectans Karolus vocato ad
his-own which the-most-provident observing Charles called to
se filio Hludowico praecepit, ut interrogaret cognominem
himself the-son Louis commanded that he-should-ask namesake
suum, cur ita faceret vel qua fiducia se patri
his-own why so he-did or with-what confidence himself to-the-father
adaequare praesumeret. Ille vero ratione subnixum reddidit
to-equal he-presumed he but by-reason supported gave

responsum: Quando inquiens vester eram vassallus, post vos
an-answer when saying your I-was vassal after you
ut oportuit inter commilitones meos steteram; nunc autem,
as it-behooved among fellow-soldiers my I-had-stood now moreover
vester socius et commilito, non inmerito me vobis coaequo.
your comrade and fellow-soldier not undeservedly myself to-you I-equal
Quod cum Hludowicus imperatori retulisset, ille huiusmodi
which when Louis to-the-emperor had-reported he of-this-kind
sententiam promulgavit: Si vixerit puerulus iste, aliquid magni
a-sentence published if he-lives little-boy this something great
erit. Quae verba ideo de Ambrosio mutuati sumus,
he-will-be which words for-that-reason from Ambrose borrowed we-have
quia, Karolus quae dixit, non possunt ex amussim in Latinum
because Charles what he-said not can by the-rule into Latin
converti. Nec inmerito prophetiam de sancto Ambrosio
to-be-turned nor undeservedly a-prophecy about saint Ambrose
magno accommodaverim Hludowico, qui — exceptis eis rebus
great I-would-apply to-Louis who excepted those things
et negociis, sine quibus res publica terrena non subsistit,
and affairs without which the-state public earthly not subsists
coniugio videlicet usuque armorum — per omnia simillimus
marriage namely and-the-use of-arms in all-things most-like
immo etiam quantum potentia regni tantum religionis
nay even as-much-as in-power of-kingdom so-much of-religion
studio, si dici liceat, quodammodo maior exstiterit
in-zeal if to-be-said it-be-permitted in-a-way greater stood
Ambrosio; fide scilicet catholicus, Dei cultor eximius,
than-Ambrose in-faith namely catholic of-God a-worshiper outstanding
servorum Christi socius tutor et defensor indefessus.
of-the-servants of-Christ comrade guardian and defender tireless

Quod adeo verum est, ut, cum fidelis eius abba noster
which so true is that when faithful-man his abbot our
Hartmutus, nunc autem vester inclusus, ei retulerit,
Hartmut now moreover your recluse to-him reported
quod reiculae Sancti Galli, non ex regalibus donariis sed
that the-little-goods of-Saint Gall not from royal gifts but
ex privatorum tradiciunculis collectae, nullum privilegium
from of-private-men little-donations gathered no privilege
aliorum monasteriorum vel communes populorum cunctorum
of-other monasteries or the-common of-peoples all
leges haberent et ideo neminem sui defensorem
laws had and therefore no-one of-themselves defender
vel advocatum repperire potuissent, ipse, se cunctis
or advocate to-find had-been-able he-himself himself to-all
adversariis nostris opponens, advocatum se vilitatis nostrae
adversaries our opposing advocate himself of-lowliness our
coram cunctis principibus suis profiteri non erubuerit. Quo
before all princes his-own to-profess not blushed at-which
etiam tempore epistolam ad vestram indolem direxit, ut
also time a-letter to your nobility he-sent that
per vestram auctoritatem iuramento coacticio, quaecunque
through your authority by-oath compulsory whatever
opus habuerimus, licenter quaerere deberemus. Sed heu,
need we-had freely to-seek we-ought but alas
quam stultus ego, qui propter specialem benignitatem, ab
how foolish I who on-account-of the-special kindness by
eo nobis praebitam, a generali et ineffabili eius bonitate
him to-us furnished from the-general and ineffable his goodness
et magnitudine vel magnanimitate parum consulte, privato
and greatness or great-soulness little advisedly with-private
gaudio retrahente, digressus sum.
joy drawing-back digressed I-have

Louis, king of all Germany, is stout and handsome, with radiant eyes and a manly voice, wise and quick to foresee plots. He sheds Christian blood only once and afterward will condemn no one to death. He walks barefoot in the litanies, builds chapels from city walls whose hollows yield gold, keeps no cleric who cannot read and sing, and corrects wrongs with a glance.

Erat itaque Hludowicus, rex vel imperator totius Germaniae
was and-so Louis king or emperor of-all Germany
Rhetiarumque et antiquae Franciae nec non Saxoniae Turingiae
and-of-the-Raetias and of-ancient Francia nor not of-Saxony of-Thuringia
Norici Pannoniarum atque omnium septentrionalium nationum,
of-Noricum of-the-Pannonias and of-all northern nations
statura opimus, forma decorus, oculis astrorum more
in-stature stout in-the-form handsome with-eyes of-stars in-the-manner
radiantibus, voce clara et omnino virili, sapientia
radiant with-voice clear and altogether manly in-wisdom
singularis; quam, acutissimo fretus ingenio, scripturarum
singular which on-the-sharpest relying intelligence of-the-scriptures
assiduitate cumulatiorem reddere non cessabat. Ideoque ad
by-assiduity more-heaped-up to-render not he-ceased and-therefore for
anticipandas vel superandas omnes inimicorum insidias et
anticipating or overcoming all of-the-enemies the-plots and
subiectorum litigia terminanda, fidelibusque suis universa
of-the-subjects the-lawsuits to-be-ended and-for-the-faithful his-own all
commoda providenda, incomparabili vivacitate pollebat. Cunctis
advantages to-be-provided with-incomparable liveliness he-was-strong to-all
gentilibus circumquaque versis anterioribus suis magis
heathens round-about turned than-predecessors his-own more
magisque terrificus subinde perseverabat. Et merito; quippe
and-more terrifying continually he-continued and deservedly since

qui nunquam linguam suam iudicio aut manus suas
who never tongue his-own with-judgment or hands his-own
effusione sanguinis christiani commaculare praeter unam et
with-the-shedding of-blood Christian stained except one and
ultimam quidem necessitatem. Quam prius enarrare non audeo,
last indeed necessity which before to-relate not I-dare
quam aliquem parvulum Luthowicum vel Carolastrum vobis
than some little Louis or little-Charles to-you
astantem video. Post quam tamen cedem nullo unquam modo
standing-by I-see after which yet slaughter in-no ever way
compelli potuit, ut quempiam condempnaret ad mortem.
to-be-compelled he-could that anyone he-should-condemn to death
Sed tamen hac districtione infidelitatis vel insidiarum
but yet with-this severity of-faithlessness or of-plots
insimulatos coercere solebat, ut honoribus privatos,
accused to-restrain he-was-accustomed that of-honors deprived
nulla unquam occasione vel temporis longitudine mollitus,
by-no ever occasion or of-time length softened
ad pristinum gradum conscendere pateretur. Ad orationis
to the-former rank to-ascend he-allowed to the-zeal
studium et devotionem ieiuniorum curamque servitii divini
of-prayer and the-devotion of-fasts and-the-care of-the-service divine
supra omnes homines ita erat intentus, ut exemplo
above all men so was intent that by-the-example
sancti Martini, quicquid aliud ageret, semper quasi praesenti
of-saint Martin whatever else he-did always as-if the-present
Domino supplicare videretur. Carne et cibis lautioribus
Lord to-entreat he-seemed from-flesh and from-foods more-sumptuous
diebus certis abstinuit. Tempore vero laetaniarum de palatio
on-days certain he-abstained in-the-time but of-the-litanies from the-palace
discalciatis pedibus usque ad ecclesiam pastoralem vel ad
with-bared feet all-the-way to the-church pastoral or to

Sanctum Hemmerammum, si quidem esset Reganesburg,
Saint Emmeram if indeed he-was at-Regensburg
crucem sequi solitus erat. In aliis vero locis commanentium
the-cross to-follow accustomed he-was in other but places of-those-dwelling
consuetudinem non abnuebat. Oratoria nova ad Franconovurt
the-custom not he-refused chapels new at Frankfurt
et Reganesburg admirabili opere construxit. Cumque ibi
and Regensburg with-admirable work he-built and-when there
propter magnitudinem fabricae alii lapides non sufficerent,
on-account-of the-greatness of-the-building other stones not sufficed
muros urbis destrui fecit. In quorum cavitatibus tantum
the-walls of-the-city to-be-destroyed he-caused in whose cavities so-much
auri circa antiquorum ossa repperit, ut non solum eandem
of-gold around of-the-ancients the-bones he-found that not only the-same
basilicam eodem adornaret sed et libros integros exinde
basilica with-the-same he-adorned but also books whole thence
conscriptos thecis eiusdem materiae grossitudine prope digiti
written with-cases of-the-same material with-a-thickness nearly of-a-finger
cooperiret. Nullus clericus, nisi legere doctus et canere, non
he-covered no cleric unless to-read taught and to-sing not
solum cum eo manere sed ne in conspectum eius quidem
only with him to-stay but not into the-sight of-him even
venire praesumpsit. Monachos vero voti sui praevaricatores
to-come presumed monks but of-vow their-own transgressors
ita despexit, ut observatores omni affectu dilexit. Ita omni
so he-despised as the-keepers with-all affection he-loved so with-all
iocunditate ac dulcedine plenus semper exstitit, ut, si quis ad
cheerfulness and sweetness full always he-was that if anyone to
eum tristis adveniret, ex sola visione vel quantulacunque eius
him sad came from the-mere sight or however-small his
allocutione laetificatus abscederet. Quodsi quid forte sinistrum
address gladdened he-went-away but-if anything perhaps untoward

vel ineptum in eius conspectu subito fieret vel eum aliunde
or foolish in his sight suddenly happened or him from-elsewhere
comperisse contingeret, sola oculorum animadversione
to-have-learned it-happened by-the-mere of-the-eyes glance
sic omnia correxit, ut, quod de aeterno internoque iudice
so all-things he-corrected that what about the-eternal and-inner judge
scriptum est: Rex, qui sedet in solio regni sui, intuitu
written is the-king who sits on the-throne of-kingdom his-own by-the-gaze
vultus sui dissipat omne malum, supra fas mortalibus
of-face his-own scatters all evil beyond what-is-right to-mortals
concessum in illo non ambigeretur inceptum. Haec
granted in him not it-could-be-doubted begun these-things
breviter per excessum dixerim, vita comite propitiaque
briefly by digression I-would-say life accompanying and-propitious
divinitate votum habens plurima de eo scribere.
divinity the-wish having very-many-things about him to-write

XII · MEASURED BY THE SWORD

When northern peoples raid, Charles has even the children measured against swords and those taller beheaded, and the memory later breaks a plot against his line. His hunchbacked son Pippin conspires against him and is sent to Saint Gall. Asked about a later conspiracy, Pippin, weeding his garden, answers only that he pulls up weeds, and Charles executes the plotters. Eishere skewers Wends like frogs.

Ad propositum iam redeundum est. Inter ea cum imperator
to the-purpose now to-be-returned it-is among these-things when the-emperor
Karolus propter adventantium frequentiam vel infestationem
Charles on-account-of of-the-arrivals the-frequency or the-attacks
indomitissimorum Saxonum vel latrocinia pyraticamque
of-the-most-untamed Saxons or the-robberies and-piracy

Northmannorum sive Maurorum apud Aquasgrani paulo diutius
of-the-Northmen or of-the-Moors at Aachen a-little longer
consedisset, bellum autem contra Hunos a filio eius Pippino
had-stayed the-war moreover against the-Huns by the-son of-him Pippin
gereretur, exeuntes a septentrione barbarae nationes Noricum
was-being-waged going-out from the-north barbarous nations Noricum
et orientalem Franciam magna ex parte depraedatae sunt.
and eastern Francia great from part plundered have
Quod ille comperiens, per se ipsum ita omnes humiliavit, ut
which he learning by himself self so all humbled that
etiam pueros et infantes ad spatas metiri praeciperet et,
even boys and infants by swords to-be-measured he-commanded and
quicunque eandem mensuram excederet, capite plecteretur.
whoever the-same measure exceeded with-the-head should-be-punished
De quo facto aliud multo maius et illustrius opus
from which deed another much greater and more-illustrious work
excrevit. Cum enim sanctissimus avus imperii vestri vita
grew when for the-most-holy grandfather of-empire your from-life
decederet, quidam gigantes — quales propter iracundiam
departed certain giants such-as on-account-of the-anger
Dei per filios Seth de filiabus Cain narrat scriptura
of-God by the-sons of-Seth from the-daughters of-Cain tells scripture
procreatos; spiritu superbiae inflati, eorum procul dubio
begotten by-the-spirit of-pride puffed-up of-them far from-doubt
suppares, qui dixerunt: Quae nobis pars in David aut
the-equals who said what to-us part in David or
quae hereditas in filio Isai? — eius prolem habitudinis
what inheritance in the-son of-Jesse his offspring of-condition
optime despicientes, singuli sibi principatum regni
best despising each for-himself the-rule of-the-kingdom
arripere et diadema portare conati sunt. Tunc quibusdam de
to-seize and the-diadem to-wear tried have then certain-ones of

mediocribus Dei instinctu protestantibus, quod inclitus
the-middling-men of-God at-the-prompting protesting that the-famous
imperator Karolus hostes quondam christianorum metiretur
emperor Charles the-enemies formerly of-the-Christians measured
ad spatam et idcirco, quam diu de progenie illius aliquis
by the-sword and therefore as long of the-offspring of-him anyone
spatae longitudinis inveniri posset, ille Francis immo
of-a-sword's length to-be-found could he over-the-Franks nay
toti Germaniae deberet imperare, factio illa diabolica, quasi
over-all Germany ought to-rule faction that diabolical as-if
fulminis ictu percussa, est in diversa disiecta.
of-lightning by-a-stroke struck was in different-directions scattered
Sed, extraneorum victor, Karolus a propriis est mira
but of-foreigners the-conqueror Charles by his-own was by-wonderful
quidem sed cassa fraude circumventus. Nam de Sclavis ad
indeed but vain fraud circumvented for from the-Slavs to
Reginam regressus, a filio, per concubinam progenito et
Regensburg having-returned by a-son by a-concubine begotten and
nomine gloriosissimi Pippini a matre ominaliter insignito,
with-the-name of-the-most-glorious Pippin by the-mother ominously marked
pene captus et, quantum in eo fuit, est morti dampnatus.
almost captured and as-much-as in him lay was to-death condemned
Quod hoc modo compertum est. Cum in ecclesia sancti
which in-this way discovered was when in the-church of-saint
Petri, proceribus congregatis, de morte imperatoris consiliatus
Peter the-nobles gathered about the-death of-the-emperor taken-counsel
fuisset, finito consilio, omnia tuta timens, iussit explorare,
he-had finished the-council all-things safe fearing he-ordered to-search
si quis usquam in angulis aut subter altaribus fuisset
if anyone anywhere in corners or beneath altars had-been
absconsus. Et ecce, ut timuerunt, invenerunt unum clericum
hidden and behold as they-feared they-found one cleric

subtus altare celatum; quem apprehendentes ad iusiurandum
under the-altar hidden whom seizing to an-oath
compulerunt, ne proditor molitionis eorum fieret. Qui,
they-compelled lest the-betrayer of-the-plot of-them he-should-become who
ne vitam perderet, ut dictaverunt, iurare non abnuit; sed
lest life he-should-lose as they-dictated to-swear not refused but
illis recedentibus, iuramentum illud sacrilegum parvi pendens,
they withdrawing oath that sacrilegious at-little valuing
ad palatium properavit. Cumque cum maxima difficultate
to the-palace hastened and-when with the-greatest difficulty
per septem seras et ostia tandem ad cubiculum imperatoris
through seven bolts and doors at-last to the-bedchamber of-the-emperor
penetrasset, pulsato aditu, vigilantissimum semper Karolum
he-had-penetrated knocked the-entrance the-most-watchful always Charles
ad maximam perduxit admirationem, quis eo tempore
to the-greatest he-brought wonder who at-that time
eum praesumeret inquietare. Praecepit tamen feminis, quae
him should-presume to-disturb he-commanded yet the-women who
ad obsequium reginae vel filiarum eius eum comitari
for the-service of-the-queen or of-the-daughters of-him him to-accompany
solebant, ut exirent videre, quis esset ad ianuam vel
were-accustomed that they-should-go-out to-see who was at the-door or
quid inquireret. Quae, exeuntes cognoscentesque personam
what he-sought who going-out and-recognizing a-person
vilissimam, obseratis ostiis, cum ingenti risu et chachinno
most-worthless bolted the-doors with huge laughter and cackling
se per angulos, vestibus ora repressae, conabantur
themselves through corners with-garments the-mouths stifled tried
abscondere. Sed sagacissimus imperator, quem nihil sub
to-hide but the-most-shrewd emperor whom nothing under
coelo posset effugere, diligenter a mulieribus exquisivit, quid
heaven could to-escape diligently of the-women inquired what

haberent vel quis ostium pulsaret. Responsumque accipiens,
they-had or who the-door was-knocking and-the-answer receiving
quia quidam coctio derasus insulsus et insaniens, lineam
that a-certain rogue shaven witless and raving a-shirt
tantum et femoralia indutus, se absque mora postularet
only and drawers clad himself without delay was-asking
alloqui, iussit eum intromittere. Qui statim, corruens ad
to-address he-ordered him to-let-in who at-once falling at
pedes illius, cuncta patefecit ex ordine. Nihil vero minus
the-feet of-him all-things disclosed in order nothing but less
suspicantes, ante horam diei terciam omnes illi coniuratores
suspecting before the-hour of-the-day third all those conspirators
dignissima poena vel exiliis deportati sunt aut puniti.
by-most-worthy punishment or into-exile deported were or punished
Ipse quoque nanus et gibberosus Pippinus, inmanissime
he-himself also dwarfish and hunchbacked Pippin most-monstrously
cesus et detonsus, ad cellam sancti Galli, quae cunctis
beaten and shorn to the-cell of-saint Gall which than-all
locis imperii latissimi pauperior visa est et angustior,
places of-the-empire most-broad poorer seemed has and narrower
castigandi gratia ad tempus aliquantulum destinatus est.
of-chastising for-the-sake for a-time a-while assigned was
Nec multo post quidam de primoribus Francorum in regem
nor much afterward certain-ones of the-chief-men of-the-Franks on the-king
manus mittere voluerunt. Quod cum eum minime lateret et
hands to-lay wished which when him by-no-means escaped and
tamen non libenter eos perderet, quia, si bene voluissent,
yet not gladly them he-would-destroy because if well they-had-wished
magnum christianis munimen esse potuissent, direxit legatos
a-great for-Christians bulwark to-be they-could-have he-sent envoys
suos ad eundem Pippinum; sciscitans ab eo, quid de
his-own to the-same Pippin asking of him what about

his fieri oporteret. Quem cum in orto cum senioribus
these to-be-done it-behooved whom when in a-garden with the-older
fratribus, iunioribus ad maiora opera detentis, urticas et
brothers the-younger to greater works held-back nettles and
noxia quaeque tridente extrahentem repperissent, ut usui
harmful every-thing with-a-hoe pulling-out they-had-found that for-use
proficua vivacius excrescere valerent, indicaverunt ei
profitable-things more-vigorously to-grow might-be-able they-indicated to-him
causam adventus sui. At ille, ex imis praecordiis
the-cause of-coming their-own but he from the-deepest heart
suspiria trahens, ut omnes debiles animosiores sanis esse
sighs drawing as all the-weak more-spirited than-the-healthy to-be
consueverunt, in haec verba respondit: Si Karolus consilium
are-accustomed in these words answered if Charles counsel
meum dignaretur, non ad tantas me deponeret iniurias.
my deemed-worthy not to such me he-would-put-down injuries
Ego nihil illi demando. Dicite illi, quid me agentem
I nothing to-him send-word tell him what me doing
inveneritis. At illi, timentes ne sine certo aliquo responso ad
you-have-found but they fearing lest without sure some answer to
formidabilem reverterentur imperatorem, iterum atque iterum
the-formidable they-should-return emperor again and again
requirebant ab eo, quid domino renuntiare deberent. Tunc ille
asked of him what to-the-lord to-report they-ought then he
stomachando: Nihil inquit aliud ei demando, nisi quod
fuming nothing he-says else to-him I-send-word except what
facio; inutilia recrementa extraho, ut holera necessaria liberius
I-do useless refuse I-pull-out that vegetables necessary more-freely
excrescere valeant. Igitur illi tristes abscesserunt, quasi qui
to-grow may-be-able therefore they sad departed as-if men-who
nihil rationabile reportarent. Venientes autem ad imperatorem
nothing reasonable were-bringing-back coming moreover to the-emperor

et requisiti, quid referrent, conquesti sunt, se tanto
and asked what they-reported complained have themselves with-so-great
labore et itinere ne in uno quidem sermone certiorari.
labor and journey not in one even word to-be-informed
Sagacissimo autem rege per ordinem interrogante, ubi eum
the-most-shrewd moreover king in order asking where him
vel quid agentem reppererint quidque responsi illis reddiderit,
or what doing they-had-found and-what of-answer to-them he-had-given
dixerunt: In tripetio rusticano sedentem eum invenimus et
they-said on a-stool rustic sitting him we-found and
tridente areolam holerum novellantem. Causamque itineris
with-a-hoe a-bed of-vegetables renewing and-the-cause of-journey
nostri revolventes, hoc solum ab eo responsi magnis
our unfolding this only from him of-answer with-great
flagitationibus extorquere potuimus: „Nichil“ aiente „aliud
importunings to-extort we-could nothing he-saying else
ei demando, nisi quod facio; inutilia recrementa extraho,
to-him I-send-word except what I-do useless refuse I-pull-out
ut holera necessaria liberius excrescere valeant“. His auditis,
that vegetables necessary more-freely to-grow may-be-able these heard
astu non carens et sapientia pollens augustus, confricatis
of-cunning not lacking and in-wisdom strong augustus rubbed
auribus et inflatis naribus, dixit ad eos: Rationabile responsum,
the-ears and puffed the-nostrils said to them a-reasonable answer
optimi vassalli, reportastis. Illis itaque de periculo vitae
excellent vassals you-have-brought-back they and-so about the-danger of-life
metuentibus, ipse, vim dictorum ad effectum perducens,
fearing he-himself the-force of-the-sayings to effect bringing
cunctos illos insidiatores suos de medio viventium auferens,
all those plotters his-own from the-midst of-the-living removing
fidelibus suis occupata ab infructuosis loca crescendi et
to-faithful-men his-own occupied by the-unfruitful places of-growing and

se extendendi causa concessit. Unum vero adversariorum,
themselves of-spreading for-the-sake granted one but of-the-adversaries
qui excelsissimum in Francia collem et quaecunque de eo
who the-highest in Francia hill and whatever from it
prospicere posset sibi in possessionem delegit, in eodem
to-see he-could for-himself into possession had-chosen on the-same
colle altissimae trabi affixum iussit elevari. Pippinum vero
hill on-a-very-high beam fixed he-ordered to-be-raised Pippin but
nothum suum praecepit eligere sibi, quomodo vitam degere
bastard his-own he-commanded to-choose for-himself how life to-spend
voluisset. Qui, optione concessa, optavit locum in quodam
he-wished who the-option granted chose a-place in a-certain
monasterio tunc nobilissimo, nunc autem, non incertum
monastery then most-noble now moreover not uncertain
de qua causa, destructo; quam antea non absolvam, quam
for what cause destroyed which before not I-will-unfold than
Bernhardulum vestrum spata femur accinctum conspiciam.
little-Bernard your with-a-sword on-the-thigh girded I-see
Indignatus est autem magnanimus Karolus, quia ipse ad
indignant was moreover the-great-souled Charles because he-himself against
barbaras illas nationes sit exire provocatus, cum quilibet
barbarous those nations has to-go-out been-provoked since any
ducum suorum ad hoc videretur idoneus. Quod etiam ita esse,
of-dukes his-own for this seemed fit which also so to-be
ex unius conprovincialium meorum facto probabo. Erat
from of-one of-fellow-provincials my the-deed I-will-prove there-was
quidam vir de Durgowe iuxta nomen suum „magna pars
a-certain man from the-Thurgau according-to name his-own a-great part
terribilis exercitus“, vocabulo Eishere, tantae proceritatis, ut
of-the-terrible army by-name Eishere of-such height that
de Enachim stirpe ortus credi potuisset, nisi tantum
from of-Anak the-stock sprung to-be-believed he-could-have unless so-much

temporis ac locorum interesset. Qui, quotienscunque ad
of-time and of-places lay-between who whenever to
fluvium Duram alpinis torrentibus tumefactum exundantemque
the-river Thur by-alpine torrents swollen and-overflowing
venisset nec caballum maximum in eius ne dicam fluenta sed
he-had-come nor horse the-biggest into its not to-say floods but
nec liquentia posset impellere, apprehensis habenis, fluitantem
not-even shallows could to-drive seized the-reins floating
post se traxit, inquiens: Per dominum Gallum, velis
after himself he-dragged saying by lord Gall whether-you-will
nolis me sequi debebis. Is itaque, cum in comitatu
or-not me to-follow you-will-be-bound he and-so when in the-retinue
caesaris Bemanos Wilzos et Avaros in morem prati
of-the-caesar the-Bohemians the-Wilzi and the-Avars in the-manner of-a-meadow
secaret et in avicularum modum de hastili suspenderet,
he-mowed and in of-little-birds the-manner from his-spear-shaft hung
domum victor reversus et a torpentibus interrogatus,
home victor having-returned and by the-sluggish asked
qualiter ei in regione Winidum complaceret, illos dedignatus
how to-him in the-region of-the-Wends it-was-pleasing those disdaining
hos indignatus, aiebat: Quid mihi ranunculi illi? Septem vel
these indignant he-said what to-me little-frogs those seven or
octo vel certe novem de illis, hasta mea perforatos et quid
eight or at-least nine of them on-spear my pierced and something
nescio murmurantes, huc illucque portare solebam. Frustra
I-know-not murmuring hither and-thither to-carry I-was-accustomed in-vain
adversum tales vermiculos domnus rex et nos fatigati sumus.
against such little-worms lord king and we wearied have-been

As Charles finishes the war with the Huns, the Northmen attack Gaul. His expedition against them fails, a plague killing an abbot's fifty yoke of oxen in a night. While he is away King Godfred invades the Moselle district, until his own son cuts him in two as he takes his falcon from a duck. Charles laments that he did not fight them himself.

Eodem itaque tempore cum imperator Hunorum bello
at-the-same and-so time when the-emperor of-the-Huns to-the-war
extremam manum imponeret et supra dictas gentes in
the-last hand was-putting and the-above mentioned peoples into
deditionem suscepisset, exeuntes Northmanni Gallis et
surrender had-received going-out the-Northmen to-the-Gauls and
Francis magnam inquietudinem fecerunt. Reversus autem
to-the-Franks great disquiet made having-returned moreover
invictissimus Karolus itinere terrestri, quamvis multum
the-most-unconquered Charles by-a-route by-land although very
angusto et invio, domi eos invadere molitus est. Sed vel
narrow and pathless at-home them to-attack undertook has but either
Dei providentia prohibente, ut secundum scripturam in his
of-God by-the-providence forbidding that according-to scripture in these
experiretur Israhelem, vel peccatis nostris obsistentibus, cuncta
he-might-test Israel or by-sins our standing-in-the-way all
illius temptamenta in irritum deducta sunt; in tantum, ut ad
his attempts into nothing brought were in so-much that for
incommoda totius exercitus comprobanda de unius abbatis
the-losses of-the-whole army to-be-proved of one abbot's
copiis in una nocte quinquaginta boum paria repentina peste
resources in one night fifty of-oxen pairs by-sudden plague
numerarentur extincta. Sapientissimus igitur virorum Karolus,
were-counted dead the-most-wise therefore of-men Charles

ne scripturae inoboediens contra ictum fluvii conaretur,
lest to-scripture disobedient against the-stream of-the-river he-should-strive
destitit ab incepto. Cum vero per non modicum
desisted from the-undertaking when but through not small
tempus latissimum peragraret imperium, Gotefridus rex
time the-very-broad he-was-traveling-through empire Godfred king
Northmannorum, absentia eius animatus, fines regni
of-the-Northmen by-the-absence of-him emboldened the-borders of-the-kingdom
Francorum invasit Mosellanumque pagum in sedem sibi
of-the-Franks invaded and-the-Moselle district as seat for-himself
delegit. Cum vero falconem suum de aneta vellet extrahere,
chose when but falcon his-own from a-duck he-wished to-draw-off
consecutus eum filius suus, cuius nuperrime matrem repudians
having-overtaken him the-son his-own whose most-recently the-mother repudiating
reliquit et alteram super eam duxit uxorem, per medium
he-left and another over her had-married as-wife through the-middle
ense divisit. Quo facto, sicut quondam Holoferne perempto,
with-a-sword divided which done as once Holofernes slain
nullus suorum in animis aut armis sed in solo fugae praesidio
none of-his-men in courage or arms but in sole of-flight the-protection
ausus est confidere; et ita, ne exemplo ingrati Israhelis
dared has to-trust and so lest by-the-example of-ungrateful Israel
contra Deum gloriaretur, absque sua industria liberata est
against God it-should-boast without its-own effort freed was
Francia. Invictus autem nec vincendus unquam Karolus de tali
Francia unconquered moreover nor to-be-conquered ever Charles for such
quidem iudicio Deum glorificavit; sed plurimum conquestus
indeed judgment God glorified but very-much complained
est, quod propter absentiam suam aliquis de illis evaserit:
has that on-account-of absence his-own anyone of them escaped

Heu proh dolor inquiens quia videre non merui, quomodo
alas oh grief saying that to-see not I-have-deserved how
christiana manus mea cum cynocephalis illis luserit.
Christian hand my with dog-heads those would-have-played

XIV · CHARLES WEEPS AT NARBONNE

At a coastal city of Narbonese Gaul, Charles recognizes Northmen ships that others take for merchants; they flee, hearing that Charles the Hammer is there. Charles stands at the window weeping: he does not fear those trifles, but grieves that they dare to touch his shore and foresees the evils they will do his descendants. The Monk prays that Charles the Fat may prevent it.

Contigit quoque, ad quandam maritimam Galliae Narbonensis
it-happened also to a-certain maritime of-Gaul Narbonese
urbem vagabundum Karolum inopinato venire. Ad cuius
city wandering Charles unexpectedly to-come to whose
portum, eo prandente sed ignorato, piraterium exploratores
harbor he dining but unknown a-pirate-raid the-scouts
Northmannorum fecerunt. Cumque, visis navibus alii Iudeos
of-the-Northmen made and-when seen the-ships some Jews
alii vero Africanos alii Brittannos mercatores esse dicerent,
others but Africans others British merchants to-be said
sapientissimus Karolus, ex instructione navium vel agilitate
the-most-wise Charles from the-fitting-out of-the-ships or the-agility
non mercatores sed hostes esse deprehendens, dixit ad suos:
not merchants but enemies to-be perceiving said to his-men
Non istae naves confertae mercimoniis, sed hostibus fetae
not these ships crammed with-merchandise but with-enemies teeming
sunt acerrimis. His sui auditis, alter alterum praevenire
are most-fierce these-things his-men heard one the-other to-forestall

cupientes, festine properabant ad naves. Sed frustra. Nam
desiring hastily hastened to the-ships but in-vain for
comperto Northmanni, quod ibidem esset, ut ipsi eum
learned the-Northmen that there was as they-themselves him
nuncupare solebant, Martellus Karolus, ne omnis armatura
to-call were-accustomed the-Hammer Charles lest all armor
sua in illo aut retunderetur aut in minutissimas resoluta
their-own on him either should-be-blunted or into most-minute broken
particulas disperiret, effugio satis incomparabili insequentium
particles should-perish by-a-flight quite incomparable of-the-pursuers
non solum gladios sed et oculos evitaverunt. Religiosissimus
not only the-swords but also the-eyes they-escaped the-most-religious
autem Karolus, iustus et timoratus, exurgens de mensa,
moreover Charles just and God-fearing rising from the-table
ad fenestram orientalem constitit; et inestimabilibus lacrimis
at the-window eastern stood and with-inestimable tears
diutissime perfusus, cum nullus eum compellare praesumeret,
very-long bathed since no-one him to-address presumed
tandem aliquando ipse, bellicosissimis proceribus suis de
at-last at-length he-himself to-the-most-warlike nobles his-own about
tali gestu et lacrimatione satisfaciens: Scitis inquit o
such behavior and weeping giving-satisfaction do-you-know he-says O
fideles mei, quid tantopere ploraverim? Non hoc ait timeo,
faithful my why so-much I-have-wept not this he-said I-fear
quod isti nugae et nihili mihi aliquid nocere praevaleant; sed
that these trifles and nothings to-me anything to-harm may-prevail but
nimium contristor, quod me vivente ausi sunt litus istud
too-much I-am-saddened that me living dared they-have shore that
attingere; et maximo dolore torqueor, quia praevideo,
to-touch and with-the-greatest grief I-am-tormented because I-foresee
quanta mala posteris meis et eorum sunt facturi subiectis.
how-great evils to-descendants my and of-them they-are about-to-do to-subjects

Quod ne adhuc fiat, Christi domini nostri tutela
which lest still it-happen of-Christ the-Lord our the-guardianship
prohibeat, et gladius vester, in sanguine Nordostranorum
may-forbid and sword your in the-blood of-the-Nordostrani
duratus, obsistat; adiuncto sibi mucrone Karlomanni fratris
hardened may-withstand joined to-itself the-blade of-Carloman brother
vestri, tincto quidem in eorundem cruore, sed nunc non
your stained indeed in of-the-same the-gore but now not
propter ignaviam sed propter inopiam rerum angustiamque
on-account-of sloth but on-account-of the-want of-things and-the-narrowness
terrarum fidelissimi vestri Arnoldi ita in rubiginem versus,
of-lands of-most-faithful your Arnulf so into rust turned
ut tamen iussu et voluntate potentiae vestrae haut
that yet by-the-order and will of-power your not
difficulter possit ad acumen et splendorem perduci.
with-difficulty it-may to sharpness and brightness to-be-brought
Hic enim solus ramusculus cum tenuissima Bennolini
this for alone little-branch with the-slenderest of-Bennolin
astula de foecundissima Hludowici radice sub singulari
shoot from the-most-fertile of-Louis root under the-singular
cacumine protectionis vestrae pullulascit. Interim ergo de
top of-protection your sprouts meanwhile therefore about
proatavo vestro Pippino in historiam vestri cognominis
great-great-grandfather your Pippin into the-history of-your namesake
aliquid inseratur, quod, concedente clementia divina, mox
something let-be-inserted which granting the-clemency divine soon
futurus Karolaster aut Lothowiculus vester imitetur.
the-future little-Charles or little-Louis your may-imitate

When the Lombards harass Rome, Pippin subdues them and enters the city as victor. Hearing that his nobles mock him, he sets a lion on a bull, and when none dares separate them, cuts through both necks with one stroke. At Aachen, bathing in the hot springs, he drives his sword through a demon in human form and orders the fouled water let out.

Longobardis vel caeteris hostibus Romanos infestantibus,
the-Lombards or the-other enemies the-Romans harassing
miserunt legatos suos ad eundem Pippinum, ut propter
sent envoys their-own to the-same Pippin that on-account-of
amorem sancti Petri sibi quantocius in auxilium venire
the-love of-saint Peter to-them as-quickly-as-possible into help to-come
dignaretur. Qui, absque mora subiugatis hostibus, orationis
he-might-deign who without delay subjugated the-enemies of-prayer
tantum gratia Romam victor ingreditur et a civibus
only for-the-sake Rome victor enters and by the-citizens
hac laude suscipitur: Cives apostolorum et domestici
with-this praise is-received fellow-citizens of-the-apostles and household
Dei advenerunt hodie, portantes pacem et illuminantes
of-God have-come today bringing peace and illuminating
patriam, dare pacem gentibus et liberare populum Domini.
the-homeland to-give peace to-the-nations and to-free the-people of-the-Lord
Cuius vim carminis et originem quidam ignorantes, hoc
whose force of-song and origin certain-men not-knowing this
in nataliciis apostolorum canere consueverunt. Ipse
on the-feasts of-the-apostles to-sing have-become-accustomed he-himself
vero, invidiam Romanorum, immo ut verius loquar
but the-envy of-the-Romans nay that more-truly I-may-speak
Constantinopolitanorum, declinans, mox in Franciam revertitur.
of-the-Constantinopolitans avoiding soon into Francia returns

Comperto autem, quod primates exercitus eum clanculo
learned moreover that the-chief-men of-the-army him secretly
despicientes carpere solerent, praecepit adduci taurum
despising to-carp were-accustomed he-commanded to-be-brought a-bull
magnitudine terribilem et animis indomabilem, leonemque
in-size terrible and in-spirit untamable and-a-lion
ferocissimum in illum dimitti. Qui, impetu validissimo in
most-ferocious on it to-be-let-loose which with-onset most-powerful upon
eum irruens, apprehensa cervice tauri, proiecit in terram.
it rushing seized the-neck of-the-bull threw onto the-ground
Tunc rex dixit ad circumstantes: Abstrahite leonem a
then the-king said to those-standing-around drag-away the-lion from
tauro vel occidite eum super illum. Qui, spectantes ad
the-bull or kill it over that who looking at
alterutrum congelatisque praecordiis pavefacti, vix haec
each-other and-with-frozen hearts terrified scarcely these-things
singultando musitare potuerunt: Domine, non est homo sub
sobbing to-mutter could lord not is a-man under
coelo, qui hoc audeat attemptare. Quo ille confidentior,
heaven who this would-dare to-attempt whereupon he more-confident
exurgens de throno, et extracta spata per cervicem
rising from the-throne and drawn the-sword through the-neck
leonis cervicem tauri divisit ab armis; et spata in
of-the-lion the-neck of-the-bull severed from the-shoulders and the-sword into
vaginam remissa, consedit in solio: Videtur vobis, inquiens
the-scabbard returned sat-down on the-throne does-it-seem to-you saying
utrum dominus vester esse possim? Non audistis, quid
whether lord your to-be I-can not you-have-heard what
fecerit parvus David ingenti illi Goliath vel brevissimus
did little David to-huge that Goliath or very-short
Alexander procerissimis satellitibus suis? Tunc, quasi tonitru
Alexander to-very-tall attendants his-own then as-if by-thunder

perculsi, ceciderunt in terram, dicentes: Quis nisi insaniens,
struck they-fell to the-ground saying who unless mad
dominationem vestram mortalibus imperare, detrectet?
lordship your over-mortals to-rule would-refuse
Nec solum contra bestias et homines talis exstitit, sed etiam
nor only against beasts and men such he-stood-out but also
contra spiritales nequitias inauditum certamen exercuit. Nam
against spiritual wickednesses an-unheard-of contest he-waged for
cum apud Aquasgrani, thermis nondum aedificatis, calidi
when at Aachen the-baths not-yet built hot
saluberrimique fontes ebullirent, iussit camerarium suum
and-most-healthful springs bubbled-up he-ordered chamberlain his-own
praevidere, si fontes purgati essent et ne quis ignotus ibi
to-see-to-it if the-springs cleansed were and lest anyone unknown there
dimitteretur. Quod cum factum fuisset, assumpto rex gladio,
should-be-let-in which when done had-been taken the-king a-sword
in linea et subtalaribus properavit ad balneum, cum repente
in shirt and slippers hastened to the-bath when suddenly
hostis antiquus eum quasi perempturus aggreditur. Rex
the-enemy ancient him as-if about-to-kill attacks the-king
autem, crucis signo munitus, nudato gladio, umbram in
moreover of-the-cross with-the-sign protected bared the-sword the-shade in
humana advertens effigie, invincibilem gladium ita terre
human noticing form the-invincible sword so into-the-earth
infixit, ut diutino luctamine vix eum revocaret. Quae tamen
fixed that with-long struggling scarcely it he-drew-back which yet
umbra tantae crassitudinis erat, ut cunctos illos fontes tabo
shade of-so-great thickness was that all those springs with-gore
et cruore abhominandaque pinguedine deturparet. Sed nec
and blood and-abominable fat it-defiled but not-even
his motus, insuperabilis Pippinus dixit ad cubicularium: Non
by-these moved the-insuperable Pippin said to the-chamberlain not

sit tibi cura de talibus. Fac effluere infectam illam aquam;
let-be to-you concern about such-things cause to-flow-out infected that water
ut in ea, quae pura manaverit, sine mora lavari debeam.
that in that which pure shall-have-flowed without delay to-be-washed I-should

XVI · DIGRESSIONS

The Monk had meant to tell only of Charles the Great, but has had to recall Louis the German, Louis the Pious, and Pippin the Younger, about whom the moderns are silent; Bede has written enough of the elder Pippin. Now he returns to Charles, but must first tell something of his wars before coming to his daily life, and will be as brief as he can.

Proposueram quidem, o imperator auguste, de solo proavo
I-had-proposed indeed O emperor augustus about only great-grandfather
vestro Karolo, omnia vobis scientibus quaecunque fecit, brevem
your Charles all-things you knowing whatever he-did a-brief
narratiunculam texere; sed cum ita se optulerit occasio, ut
little-narrative to-weave but since so itself has-offered the-occasion that
necessario memoria fiat gloriosissimi patris vestri Hludowici
necessarily memory be-made of-the-most-glorious father your Louis
cognomento illustris, et religiosissimi avi vestri Hludowici
by-surname illustrious and of-the-most-religious grandfather your Louis
agnomine pii, vel bellicosissimi proatavi vestri
by-additional-name pious or of-the-most-warlike great-great-grandfather your
Pippini iunioris, de quibus propter ignaviam modernorum
Pippin the-younger about whom on-account-of the-sloth of-the-moderns
grande silentium est, omnia intacta praeterire nefarium iudicavi.
great silence is all-things untouched to-pass-over wicked I-judged
Nam de maiore Pippino integrum pene librum doctissimus
for about the-elder Pippin an-entire almost book the-most-learned

Beda in ecclesiastica procudit historia. His ita per excessum
Bede in the-ecclesiastical hammered-out history these so by digression
commemoratis, ad cognominem vestrum illustrem Karolum
recalled to namesake your illustrious Charles
olorinus iam redeat natatus. Sed si bellicis rebus ab eo
swan-like now let-return the-swimming but if from-the-warlike affairs by him
gestis aliquid non subtraxerimus, nunquam ad cottidianam
done something not we-shall-have-withdrawn never to the-daily
eius conversationem revolvendam perducimur. Quapropter, quae
his manner-of-life to-be-unfolded we-are-brought wherefore what
concurrunt in praesenti, quam strictissime potuero, memorabo.
concur in the-present as most-briefly I-shall-be-able I-will-recall

XVII · THE IRON CHARLES

When Desiderius rebels at Pavia, Otker watches Charles approach from a tower, telling the king again and again that the army is not yet Charles, until a dark cloud rises and Charles appears clad all in iron. He builds a chapel in a day and takes the city. At Friuli a dying patriarch leaves his see to God's judgment, and Charles mocks his nobles' ruined silks after a hunt.

Post mortem victoriosissimi Pippini cum iterato Longobardi
after the-death of-the-most-victorious Pippin when again the-Lombards
Romam iam inquietarent, invictus Karolus, quamvis in
Rome already were-disturbing the-unconquered Charles although in
cisalpinis partibus nimium occupatus esset, iter in Italiam
cisalpine parts too-much occupied he-was the-route into Italy
haut segniter arripuit. Et incruento bello sive spontanea
not sluggishly took-up and in-bloodless war or by-spontaneous
deditione humiliatos, in servitium accepit Longobardos;
surrender humbled into servitude received the-Lombards

et firmitatis gratia, ne unquam a regno Francorum
and of-firmness for-the-sake lest ever from the-kingdom of-the-Franks
discederent vel terminis sancti Petri aliquam irrogarent
they-should-depart or on-the-borders of-saint Peter any should-inflict
iniuriam, filiam Desiderii Longobardorum principis duxit
injury the-daughter of-Desiderius of-the-Lombards prince he-married
uxorem. Qua non post multum temporis, quia esset
as-wife whom not after much of-time because she-was
clinica et ad propagandam prolem inhabilis, iudicio
bedridden and for propagating offspring unfit by-the-judgment
sanctissimorum sacerdotum relicta velut mortua, iratus pater,
of-the-most-holy priests left as-if dead the-angry father
iuramento sibi provintiales astringens ipseque in muris
by-oath to-himself the-provincials binding and-himself in the-walls
Ticinensibus se concludens, invincibili Karolo rebellare
of-Pavia himself shutting-up against-the-invincible Charles to-rebel
disposuit. Quod ille pro certo comperiens, illuc iter
arranged which he for certain learning thither the-march
acceleravit. Contigit autem ante aliquot annos, quendam de
hastened it-happened moreover before some years a-certain of
primis principibus nomine Otkerum offensam terribilissimi
the-first princes by-name Otker the-offense of-the-most-terrible
imperatoris incurrere et ob id ad eundem Desiderium
emperor to-incur and for this to the-same Desiderius
confugium facere. Audito autem iam proximo adventu
refuge to-make heard moreover now close the-arrival
metuendi Karoli, ascenderunt in turrim eminentissimam, unde
of-the-fearsome Charles they-ascended into a-tower most-lofty whence
longe lateque prospicere venientem potuissent. Apparentibus
far and-wide to-see-out-for the-coming-one they-could appearing
vero impedimentis, quae expeditiora Darii vel Iulii
but the-baggage-trains which more-mobile of-Darius or of-Julius

fuissent expeditionibus, dixit Desiderius ad Otkerum:
would-have-been than-the-expeditions said Desiderius to Otker
Estne Karolus in tanto exercitu? At ille respondit: Non
is Charles in so-great an-army but he answered not
adhuc. Videns vero exercitum popularium de latissimo
yet seeing but the-army of-the-common-people from the-very-broad
imperio congregatum, diffinite pronuntiavit ad Otkerum: Vere
empire gathered definitely he-pronounced to Otker truly
in his copiis Karolus exultat. Respondit Otkerus: Set non
in these forces Charles exults answered Otker but not
adhuc neque adhuc. Tunc aestuare coepit et dicere: Quid
yet nor yet then to-seethe he-began and to-say what
faciemus, si plures cum eo venerint? Dixit Otkerus: Videbis,
shall-we-do if more with him shall-have-come said Otker you-will-see
qualis ille veniat. De nobis autem nescio quid fiat.
what-sort he may-come about us moreover I-do-not-know what may-happen
Et ecce ista sermocinantibus apparuit scola, vacationis
and behold these-things to-the-conversing appeared the-school of-leisure
semper ignara. Quam videns Desiderius stupefactus: Iste
always ignorant which seeing Desiderius astounded this-one
est inquit Karolus. Et Otkerus: Non infit adhuc neque
is he-says Charles and Otker not he-says yet nor
adhuc. Post hanc cernuntur episcopi abbatesque et clerici
yet after this are-seen the-bishops and-abbots and the-clerics
capellani cum comitibus suis. Quibus aspectis, haec
chaplains with counts their-own whom seen these-things
vix egre iam lucis inimicus mortisque desiderius
scarcely with-difficulty already of-light an-enemy and-of-death desirous
singultando blateravit: Descendamus et abscondamur in
sobbing he-babbled let-us-go-down and be-hidden in
terra a facie furoris adversarii tam inmanis. Ad
the-earth from the-face of-the-fury of-an-adversary so monstrous to

quae retulit extimescens Otkerus, rerum et apparatus
which replied fearing Otker of-the-affairs and equipment
incomparabilis Karoli quondam expertus et in meliori
of-incomparable Charles formerly having-experienced and in better
tempore assuetissimus: Quando videris inquiens segetem
time most-accustomed when you-shall-see saying a-crop
campis inhorrescere ferream Padumque et Ticinum marinis
on-the-fields to-bristle iron and-the-Po and the-Ticino with-sea
fluctibus ferro nigrantibus muros civitatis inundantes, tunc
waves with-iron blackening the-walls of-the-city flooding then
est spes Karoli venientis. His necdum finitis, primum ad
there-is hope of-Charles coming these not-yet finished first to
occasum circio vel borea coepit apparere quasi nubes
the-west by-the-northwest or north began to-appear as-if a-cloud
tenebrosa, quae diem clarissimam horrentes convertit in
dark which the-day most-bright shuddering turned into
umbras. Sed propiante paululum imperatore, ex armorum
shadows but drawing-near a-little the-emperor from of-the-arms
splendore dies omni nocte tenebrosior oborta est inclusis.
the-gleam a-day than-every night darker arisen was for-the-shut-in
Tunc visus est ipse ferreus Karolus, ferrea galea
then seen was he-himself iron Charles with-an-iron helmet
cristatus, ferreis manicis armillatus, ferrea torace ferreum
crested in-iron sleeves braceleted with-an-iron breastplate the-iron
pectus humerosque Platonicos tutatus; hasta ferrea
breast and-shoulders Platonic having-protected with-a-spear iron
in altum subrecta sinistram implevit, nam dextra ad
into the-height raised the-left he-filled for the-right to
invictum calibem semper erat extenta; coxarum exteriora,
the-unconquered steel always was stretched of-the-thighs the-outsides
quae propter faciliorem ascensum in aliis solent lorica
which on-account-of easier mounting in others are-wont of-mail

nudari, in eo ferreis ambiebantur bratteolis. De ocreis quid
to-be-bared in him with-iron were-surrounded plates about the-greaves what
dicam? Quae et cuncto exercitui solebant ferreae semper
shall-I-say which also for-the-whole army were-accustomed iron always
esse usui. In clipeo nihil apparuit nisi ferrum. Caballus
to-be in-use on the-shield nothing appeared except iron the-horse
quoque illius animo et colore ferrum renitebat. Quem
also of-him in-spirit and color iron shone-back which
habitum cuncti praecedentes, universi ex lateribus ambientes
dress all going-before all on the-sides surrounding
omnesque sequentes et totus in commune apparatus iuxta
and-all following and the-whole in common equipment according-to
possibilitatem erat imitatus. Ferrum campos et plateas
possibility had imitated iron the-fields and squares
replebat; solis radii reverberabantur acie ferri; rigido
filled of-the-sun the-rays were-thrown-back by-the-edge of-iron to-rigid
ferro honor a rigidiori deferebatur populo. Splendidissimum
iron honor by the-more-rigid was-paid people the-most-splendid
ferrum horror expalluit cloacarum. O ferrum, heu ferrum!
iron the-horror grew-pale of-the-sewers O iron alas iron
clamor confusus insonuit civium. Ferro contremuit
the-cry confused resounded of-the-citizens before-iron trembled
firmitas murorum, et iuvenum consilium ferro deperiit
the-firmness of-the-walls and of-the-young-men the-counsel before-iron perished
seniorum. Haec igitur, quae ego balbus et edentulus,
of-the-old-men these therefore which I the-stammerer and toothless
non ut debui, circuitu tardiore diutius explicare temptavi,
not as I-ought with-circuit slower longer to-unfold have-tried
veridicus speculator Otkerus celerrimo visu contuitus,
the-truth-telling watchman Otker with-swiftest glance having-beheld
dixit ad Desiderium: Ecce habes Karolum, quem tantopere
said to Desiderius behold you-have Charles whom so-much

perquisisti; et haec dicens, pene exanimis cecidit. Sed quia
you-have-sought and these-things saying almost lifeless he-fell but because
ipso die vel propter amentiam vel propter aliquam
on-that-very day either on-account-of madness or on-account-of some
spem resistendi cives urbici eum suscipere noluissent,
hope of-resisting the-citizens of-the-city him to-receive had-been-unwilling
dixit artificiosissimus Karolus ad suos: Faciamus hodie aliquid
said the-most-ingenious Charles to his-men let-us-make today something
memoriale, ne diem istum otiosi transegisse vituperemur.
memorial lest day this idle to-have-spent we-be-reproached
Acceleremus efficere unum oratoriolum, in quo, si nobis
let-us-hasten to-make one little-chapel in which if to-us
cicius apertum non fuerit, divinis servitiis insistere
more-quickly opened not it-shall-have-been to-divine services to-attend
debeamus. Et hac emissa voce, alius alio discurrentes,
we-should and with-this uttered word one another-way running-about
calcem et lapides, alii vero ligna vel pigmenta congregantes
lime and stones others but wood or paints gathering
artificibus semper eum comitantibus attulerunt. Qui a
to-the-craftsmen always him accompanying brought who from
quarta diei hora ante duodecimam talem basilicam muris
the-fourth of-the-day hour before the-twelfth such a-basilica with-walls
et tectis, laquearibus et picturis, auxiliante tyronum manu
and roofs ceilings and paintings helping of-the-recruits the-hand
militumque construxerunt, ut nulli adhuc eam cernenti nisi
and-of-the-soldiers built that to-no-one still it beholding except
per annum integrum fieri potuisse credatur. Postera
in a-year whole to-be-made to-have-been-able it-is-believed on-the-next
vero die quanta facilitate — quibusdam civium sibi
but day with-how-great ease some of-the-citizens to-him
aperire volentibus, quibusdam licet frustra rebellare vel, ut
to-open wishing others although in-vain to-rebel or as

verius dicam, se includere volentibus — absque cruoris
more-truly I-may-say themselves to-shut-in wishing without of-blood
effusione sola tantum industria civitatem superaverit ceperit
shedding by-sole only diligence the-city be-overcame took
possederit, illis scribendum relinquo, qui non aliquo amore
possessed to-those to-be-written I-leave who not from-some love
sed questus tantum gratia vestram celsitudinem comitantur.
but of-gain only for-the-sake your highness accompany
Exin ad ulteriora progressus, venit religiosissimus Karolus
thence to the-farther-parts having-advanced came the-most-religious Charles
ad urbem Furiolanam, quam, qui sibi scioli videntur,
to the-city Friulian which those-who to-themselves wise seem
Forum Iuliensem nuncupant. Contigit autem, ut eodem
Forum Iulii call it-happened moreover that at-the-same
tempore episcopus civitatis illius aut, ut modernorum loquar
time the-bishop city of-that or as of-the-moderns I-may-speak
consuetudine, patriarcha occasui vitae propinquaret. Ad
in-the-custom patriarch to-the-setting of-life was-drawing-near to
quem cum religiosissimus Karolus visitandi gratia properaret,
whom when the-most-religious Charles of-visiting for-the-sake hastened
ut successorem suum ex nomine designare deberet, ille
that successor his-own by name to-designate he-should he
religiose admodum, ex imis praecordiis suspiria trahens:
religiously very from the-deepest heart sighs drawing
Domine inquit episcopatum istum, diu sine aliqua utilitate
lord he-says bishopric this long without any usefulness
vel profectu spiritali retentum, iudicio divino et vestrae
or profit spiritual held to-the-judgment divine and to-your
dispositioni relinquo; ne ad cumulum peccatorum, quem
disposition I-leave lest to the-heap of-sins which
vivens exaggeravi, etiam mortuus aliquid superinicere apud
living I-have-piled-up even dead something to-throw-on before

inevitabilem et incorrumpendum iudicem deprehendar. Quod
the-inescapable and incorruptible judge I-be-found which
sapientissimus Karolus ita accepit, ut eum antiquis patribus
the-most-wise Charles so received that him to-the-ancient fathers
non inmerito coaequandum iudicaverit.
not undeservedly to-be-equaled he-judged
Cum autem in eadem regione aliquantisper demoratus fuisset
when moreover in the-same region for-a-while stayed he-had
exercitatissimus exercitatissimorum Francorum Karolus, donec
the-most-practiced of-the-most-practiced Franks Charles until
episcopo decedente dignum ei successorem substitueret,
the-bishop dying a-worthy to-him successor he-should-substitute
quadam festiva die post missarum celebrationem dixit ad
on-a-certain festive day after of-the-masses the-celebration he-said to
suos: Ne otio torpentes ad ignaviam perducamur, eamus
his-men lest in-idleness growing-sluggish to sloth we-be-brought let-us-go
venatum, donec aliquid capiamus; et singuli in eodem habitu
hunting until something we-catch and each in the-same dress
pergamus, quo nunc induti sumus. Erat autem ymbrifera
let-us-go in-which now clothed we-are was moreover a-rainy
dies et frigida. Et ipse quidem Karolus habebat pellicium
day and cold and he-himself indeed Charles had a-skin-coat
berbicinum non multo amplioris precii, quam erat roccus
of-sheepskin not much of-greater value than was frock
ille sancti Martini, quo pectus ambitus nudis brachiis
that of-saint Martin in-which the-breast girt with-bare arms
Deo sacrificium obtulisse astipulatione divina comprobatur.
to-God the-sacrifice to-have-offered by-confirmation divine is-proved
Caeteri vero, utpote feriatis diebus — et qui modo de
the-others but as on-feast days and who just-now from
Papia venissent, ad quam nuper Venetici de transmarinis
Pavia had-come to which lately the-Venetians from overseas

partibus omnes orientalium divitias advectassent — Phenicum
parts all of-the-easterners the-riches had-brought of-Phoenician
pellibus avium, serico circumdatis, et pavonum collis cum
with-skins of-birds with-silk bordered and of-peacocks with-necks with
tergo et clunis mox florescere incipientibus, Tyria purpura
back and haunches soon to-blossom beginning with-Tyrian purple
vel diacedrina littea decoratis, alii de lodicibus quidam de
or citron-colored borders adorned others in coverlets some in
gliribus circumamicti procedebant; saltusque peragrantes,
dormouse-fur wrapped went-forth and-the-woods traversing
ramis arborum spinisque et tribulis lacerati vel imbribus
by-the-branches of-the-trees and-by-thorns and briars torn or by-rains
infusi, tum etiam sanguine ferarum pelliumque volutabro
soaked then also by-the-blood of-wild-beasts and-of-skins by-the-wallowing
foedati, remeabant. Tunc astutissimus Karolus dixit: Nullus
befouled returned then the-most-cunning Charles said no-one
nostrum pellicium suum extrahat, donec cubitum eamus; ut
of-us skin-coat his-own let-take-off until to-bed we-go so-that
in nobis ipsis melius siccari possint. Quo iusso, singuli,
on us ourselves better to-be-dried they-may-be-able which ordered each
corpora magis quam indumenta curantes, usque quaque
the-bodies more than the-garments caring all-the-way everywhere
focos inquirere et calefieri studebant. Ac mox reversi
fires to-seek and to-be-warmed were-eager and soon having-returned
et in ministerio eius usque ad profundam noctem
and in service his all-the-way to the-deep night
persistentes, ad mansiones remittebantur. Cumque tenuissimas
persisting to the-lodgings they-were-sent-back and-when the-most-delicate
illas pelliculas vel tenuiores brandeas extrahere coepissent,
those little-skins or the-thinner silks to-take-off they-had-begun
rugarum et contractionum rupturas, quasi virgarum in
of-the-wrinkles and of-the-shrinkings the-cracks as-if of-twigs in

aridítate fractárum, procul audíri fecérunt; gementes et
dryness broken far-off to-be-heard they-caused groaning and
suspirántes conquerentesque, tantum se pecúniae sub una
sighing and-complaining so-much themselves of-money in one
die perdidísse. Praeceptum vero ab imperatore susceperant,
day to-have-lost the-command but from the-emperor they-had-received
ut in eísdem pellíbus crástina die se illi praesentárent.
that in the-same skins on-the-next day themselves to-him they-should-present
Quod cum factum fuísset, et omnes non induviis
which when done had-been and all not with-garments
resplénderent sed potíus pannis et decolóri foeditáte
shone but rather with-rags and with-discolored foulness
horrérent, dixit industria plenus Karolus ad cubicularium
bristled said of-diligence full Charles to chamberlain
suum: Tere illud pellícium nostrum inter manus, et affer in
his-own rub that skin-coat our between the-hands and bring into
conspectum nostrum. Quo integérrimo et candidíssimo allato,
sight our which most-whole and most-white brought
assúmens illud inter manus et cunctis astántibus osténdens,
taking it between the-hands and to-all standing-by showing
haec pronuntiávit: O stolidíssimi mortálium! Quod pellícium
these-things pronounced O most-stupid of-mortals which skin-coat
modo preciósius et utílius est, istudne meum uno solído
now more-precious and more-useful is this-one mine for-one shilling
comparátum an illa vestra non solum líbris sed et
bought or those of-yours not only for-pounds but even
multis coempta talentis? Tunc, vultíbus in terram declinátis,
for-many bought talents then with-faces to the-ground cast-down
terribilíssimam eius animadversiónem sustinere nequíbant.
the-most-terrible his reproof to-endure they-could-not

Quod exemplum religiosissimus pater vester non semel sed
which example the-most-religious father your not once but
per totam vitam suam ita imitatus est, ut nullus, qui eius
through the-whole life his-own so imitated has that no-one who of-his
agnitione et doctrina dignus videbatur, aliquid in exercitu
acquaintance and teaching worthy seemed anything in the-army
contra hostem nisi tantum arma miliciae et lanea vestimenta
against the-enemy except only the-arms of-service and woolen garments
cum lineis portare praesumeret. Quodsi quisquam inferiorum,
with linens to-carry presumed but-if anyone of-the-lower-men
disciplinae illius ignarus, aliquid de serico auro vel argento circa
of-the-discipline of-him ignorant something of silk gold or silver about
se habens eum forte incurrisset, his verbis increpatus
himself having him by-chance had-run-into with-these words rebuked
et melioratus immo sapientior effectus abscessit: O te bis
and improved nay wiser made he-went-away O you twice
aureum eccum! o te argenteum! o te totum coccineum! Miser
golden behold O you silver O you all scarlet wretch
et infelix, non tibi sufficit, ut tu solus vel sorte belli
and unhappy not to-you it-suffices that you alone even by-chance of-war
intereas; quin etiam et res, quibus anima tua redimi
should-perish nay also and the-things by-which soul your to-be-redeemed
valeret, in manus hostium tradas, ut de eis simulacra
could into the-hands of-the-enemies you-hand-over that from them the-images
gentium adornentur. Quantum vero a primeva aetate
of-the-heathens may-be-adorned how-much but from earliest age
usque ad septuagesimum annum ferro gauderet invictissimus
all-the-way to the-seventieth year in-iron rejoiced the-most-unconquered
Hludowicus, quantum ante Northmannorum legatos spectaculum
Louis how-much before of-the-Northmen the-envoys a-display
de ferro faceret, melius hoc vobis scientibus replicabo.
of iron he-made better this to-you knowing I-will-unfold

When the Northmen's kings send gold, silver, and swords in submission, Louis the German has the money thrown on the floor and trampled, and tests the swords. One breaks in his hands; an envoy offers his own, and Louis bends it from tip to hilt like a withy and lets it spring back. The envoys wish their own princes held gold as cheap and iron as precious.

Cum reges Northmannorum singuli pro devotione sua
when the-kings of-the-Northmen each for devotion his-own
aurum vel argentum et pro sempiterna subiectione vel
gold or silver and for perpetual subjection or
deditione gladios suos ipsi dirigerent, praecepit rex: ut
surrender swords their-own to-him sent commanded the-king that
pecunia quidem in pavimentum proiceretur et a nullo nisi
the-money indeed onto the-pavement should-be-thrown and by no-one except
indignanter aspiceretur, sed potius ab omnibus velut lutum
indignantly be-looked-at but rather by all like mud
conculcaretur. Gladios vero, in sublimi solio residens, sibi
be-trampled the-swords but on lofty throne sitting to-himself
attemptandos iussit afferri. Porro legati, metuentes ne
to-be-tried he-ordered to-be-brought further the-envoys fearing lest
quid sinistrae suspicionis contra eos posset oriri, eo modo,
any of-sinister suspicion against them might to-arise in-that way
quo solent ministri dominis suis cultellos de summis
in-which are-wont servants to-lords their-own knives by the-very
oris praebere, ita spatas imperatori cum sui periculo
points to-offer so the-swords to-the-emperor with of-themselves danger
porrigebant. Quarum ille cum unam de capulo acceptam et
held-out of-which he when one by the-hilt taken and
ab extremitate ultima ad summum curvare niteretur, inter
from the-tip last to the-top to-bend strove between

fortiores ferro manus disrupta est. Tunc unus de missis
stronger than-iron the-hands broken it-was then one of the-envoys
suam de vagina protrahens ministrantiumque more
his-own from the-scabbard drawing and-of-servants in-the-manner
ad ipsius obsequelam protendens: Domine inquit ut credo,
for his service holding-out lord he-says as I-believe
et flexibilis et rigida invenietur ista spata ad votum
both flexible and rigid will-be-found this sword to the-wish
victoriosissimae dexterae vestrae. Qua caesar accepta — et
of-most-victorious right-hand your which the-caesar received and
vere caesar iuxta vaticinium Isaiae prophetae: Adtendite ad
truly caesar according-to the-prophecy of-Isaiah the-prophet look to
petram, unde excisi estis, de tota Germaniae populositate
the-rock whence hewn you-are from the-whole of-Germany populousness
singularis divinitatis opificio in antiquos hominum artus
of-singular of-divinity by-the-workmanship into the-ancient of-men limbs
et animos exurgens — ab ora ultima capulotenus in modum
and spirit rising from the-tip last as-far-as-the-hilt in the-manner
viminis contraxit et sensim ad statum pristinum redire
of-a-withy drew-together and gently to the-state former to-return
permisit. Tunc legati semet aspectantes et ad alterutrum
allowed then the-envoys each-other looking-at and at each-other
obstupescentes: O utinam inquiunt principibus nostris tam
astonished O would-that they-say to-princes our as
vile videretur aurum et argentum, et ferrum tam preciosum.
cheap might-seem gold and silver and iron as precious

The Northmen honor Louis the Pious, and their envoys accept baptism; more come every Easter for the white robes and Frankish clothes rather than for Christ. Once fifty come, and shirts must be cut up and stitched together. An old Northman says he has been washed here twenty times, and this sack befits swineherds; but for shame he would leave the emperor his cloak and his Christ.

Et quia de Northmannis mentio incidit, quanti fidem
and because of the-Northmen mention has-fallen how-much faith
habeant et baptismum, de rebus avi vestri temporibus
they-hold and baptism from the-things of-grandfather your in-the-times
gestis paucis evolvam. Ut post mortem bellicosissimi David
done in-few I-will-unfold as after the-death of-the-most-warlike David
multo tempore finitimae gentes, manu fortissima subiugatae,
for-much time the-neighboring peoples by-hand most-strong subjugated
eius filio Salomoni pacifico tributa dependerunt, ita
of-him to-the-son Solomon the-peaceful tributes paid so
propter timorem et tributa, augustissimo imperatori Karolo
on-account-of the-fear and the-tributes to-the-most-august emperor Charles
persoluta, filium eius Hludowicum gens immanissima
paid the-son of-him Louis the-people most-monstrous
Northmannorum simili veneratione solebat honorare.
of-the-Northmen with-like veneration was-accustomed to-honor
Quorum legatos religiosissimus imperator tandem aliquando
whose envoys the-most-religious emperor at-last at-length
miseratus, interrogatos si christianam religionem suscipere
having-pitied asked if the-Christian religion to-take-up
vellent, et responso accepto, quia semper et ubique atque in
they-wished and the-answer received that always and everywhere and in
omnibus essent oboedire parati, iussit eos in eius nomine
all-things they-were to-obey ready he-ordered them in his name

baptizari, de quo doctissimus ait Augustinus: Si non esset
to-be-baptized of whom the-most-learned says Augustine if not there-were
trinitas, non dixisset veritas: „Ite docete omnes gentes,
a-trinity not would-have-said the-Truth go teach all nations
baptizantes eos in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus
baptizing them in the-name of-the-Father and of-the-Son and of-the-Spirit
sancti“. Qui, a primoribus palacii quasi in adoptionem
holy who by the-chief-men of-the-palace as-if into adoption
filiorum suscepti, de camera quidem caesaris candidatum,
of-sons taken-up from the-chamber indeed of-the-caesar a-white-robe
a patrinis vero suis habitum Francorum in vestibus
from godfathers but their-own the-dress of-the-Franks in garments
preciosis et armis caeterisque ornatibus acceperunt. Quod cum
precious and arms and-the-other adornments received which when
diutius actitaretur, et non propter Christum sed propter
longer it-was-done and not on-account-of Christ but on-account-of
commoda terrena ab anno in annum multo plures iam non
advantages earthly from year to year much more now not
ut legati sed ut devotissimi vasalli ad obsequium imperatoris
as envoys but as most-devoted vassals to the-service of-the-emperor
in sabbato sancto paschae festinarent occurrere, contigit, ut
on Saturday holy of-Easter hastened to-come it-happened that
quodam tempore usque ad quinquaginta venissent. Quos
at-a-certain time all-the-way to fifty had-come whom
imperator interrogatos, si baptizari votum haberent, et
the-emperor asked if to-be-baptized a-wish they-had and
confessos iussit aqua sacrata sine mora perfundi.
having-confessed he-ordered with-water consecrated without delay to-be-drenched
Cumque tot lineae vestes non essent in promptu, iussit
and-when so-many linen garments not were at hand he-ordered
incidi camisilia et in modum sepium consui vel in
to-be-cut-up shirts and in the-manner of-hedges to-be-sewn or in

modum vitium pastinari. Quarum cum una cuidam seniorum
the-manner of-vines to-be-staked of-which when one to-a-certain of-the-elders
illorum repentino fuisset imposita, et ille eam curiosioribus
of-them suddenly had-been put-on and he it with-more-curious
oculis ex tempore contemplatus fuisset, iamque indignatione
eyes from the-moment contemplated had and-now with-indignation
non modica mente concepta, dixit ad imperatorem: Iam
not moderate in-mind conceived he-said to the-emperor already
vicies hic lotus sum et optimis candidissimisque
twenty-times here washed I-have-been and with-the-best and-whitest
vestibus indutus; et ecce talis saccus non milites sed subulcos
garments clothed and behold such a-sack not soldiers but swineherds
addecet. Et nisi nuditatem erubescerem, meis privatus nec
befits and unless at-nakedness I-blushed of-mine deprived nor
a te datis contectus, amictum tuum cum Christo tuo tibi
by you given covered cloak your with Christ your to-you
relinquerem. Tanti pendunt hostes Christi, quod ait apostolus
I-would-leave so-much they-value enemies of-Christ what says the-apostle
Christi: Omnes, qui in Christo baptizati estis, Christum
of-Christ all who into Christ baptized you-are Christ
induistis, et illud: Quicunque baptizati sumus in Christo
you-have-put-on and that whoever baptized we-are into Christ
Iesu, in morte ipsius baptizati sumus, et quod maxime contra
Jesus into the-death of-him baptized we-are and what chiefly against
contemptores fidei violatoresque sacramentorum vigilat:
the-despisers of-the-faith and-violators of-the-sacraments watches
Rursum crucifigentes sibi filium Dei et ostentatui
again crucifying for-themselves the-son of-God and to-display
habentes. Quod utinam apud gentiles tantum et non etiam
holding which would-that among the-heathens only and not also
inter eos, qui Christi nomine censentur, sepius inveniretur!
among those who of-Christ by-the-name are-reckoned more-often should-be-found

Louis the Pious, free from wars, devotes himself to prayer, alms, and justice, and is so skilled in judgment that when Anselm, a jurist trusted by all, tries to deceive him, Louis replies with a kindly face that he would dare say Anselm does not walk a straight path. From that day Anselm is held of no account.

Adhuc referendum est de bonitate Hludowici prioris, et sic
still to-be-related it-is about the-goodness of-Louis the-former and so
ad Karolum remeandum. Quietissimus imperator Hludowicus,
to Charles to-return the-most-peaceful emperor Louis
a cunctis hostium incursionibus immunis, religiosis tantum
from all of-the-enemies attacks free at-religious only
operibus, orationibus scilicet elemosinis causisque audiendis
works prayers namely alms and-causes to-be-heard
et iustissime determinandis, insudabat. In quo negotio
and most-justly to-be-determined labored in which business
tantum et ingenio et usu exercitatus erat, ut, cum
so-much both in-intelligence and in-practice trained he-was that when
ei quidam, in similitudine Achitofel pro angelo habitus a
him a-certain-one in the-likeness of-Abithophel for an-angel held by
cunctis, illudere temptavisset, huiusmodi responsum comi
all to-mock had-tried of-this-kind an-answer with-kindly
vultu blandissimaque voce sed mente aliquantulum commota
face and-most-gentle voice but in-mind somewhat moved
rependeret: O sapientissime Anshelme, si fas sineret, dicere
he-repaid O most-wise Anselm if right allowed to-say
auderem, quia tramite non recto incedis. Ex qua die idem
I-would-dare that by-path not straight you-walk from which day the-same
iuridicus ab universis est pro nihilo deputatus.
jurist by all was for nothing reckoned

Louis the Pious entrusts the justice of the poor to a crippled but spirited man among them. On the eve of Easter he gives gifts to everyone in the palace, while the poor sing his praises, and a jester says only Atto has clothed more that day. Louis gives his clothes away every Saturday; robbers attack a glassmaker who has received them, and the text breaks off.

Elemosinis vero ita intentus erat misericordissimus Hludowicus,
to-alms but so intent was the-most-merciful Louis
ut eas non solum in conspectu suo sed et per se
that them not only in sight his-own but also through himself
ipsum fieri maluisset. Insuper, et ubi ipse absens
self to-be-done he-preferred moreover also where he-himself absent
fuisset, ita pauperum causas moderari decrevit, ut uni ex eis,
had-been so of-the-poor the-cases to-regulate he-decided that to-one of them
qui ex omni parte debilis sed animosior ceteris videbatur,
who in every part crippled but more-spirited than-the-others seemed
ipsorum commissa, furtorum redditiones, iniuriarum vel
of-them offenses of-thefts the-restitutions of-injuries or
lesionum taliones, in maioribus etiam commissis membrorum
of-hurts the-retaliations in greater even offenses of-limbs
abscisiones aut truncationes capitum nec non et suspensiones
the-cuttings-off or the-loppings of-heads nor not also the-hangings
corporum per eum fieri praeciperet. Qui, constitutis
of-bodies through him to-be-done he-commanded who established
ducibus tribunis et centurionibus eorumque vicariis, rem
dukes tribunes and centurions and-their deputies the-task
sibi delegatam haut segniter implevit. Ipse autem
to-himself delegated not sluggishly fulfilled he-himself moreover
clementissimus augustus, in cunctis illis dominum Christum
the-most-merciful augustus in all those the-Lord Christ

veneratus, eis alimenta, et quibus tegerentur, impendere
having-revered to-them food and with-what they-might-be-clothed to-bestow
nunquam destitit; et praecipue in illa die, qua Christus,
never ceased and especially on that day on-which Christ
mortali tunica exutus, incorruptibilem resumere parabat. In
the-mortal tunic stripped-off the-incorruptible to-resume was-preparing on
qua etiam cunctis in palatio ministrantibus et in curia regia
which also to-all in the-palace ministering and in the-court royal
servientibus iuxta singulorum personas donativa largitus est;
serving according-to of-each the-persons gifts bestowed he-has
ita ut nobilioribus quibuscunque aut balteos aut fascilones
so that to-the-nobler whatever either belts or arm-bands
preciosissimaque vestimenta, a latissimo imperio perlata,
and-most-precious garments from the-very-broad empire brought
distribui iuberet; inferioribus vero saga Fresonica omnimodi
to-be-distributed he-ordered to-the-lower but cloaks Frisian of-every-kind
coloris darentur; porro custodibus equorum pistoribusque
color should-be-given further to-the-keepers of-horses and-to-the-bakers
et coquis indumenta linea cum laneis semispatiisque, prout
and cooks garments linen with woolen and-half-swords as
opus habebant, proicerentur. Cumque — iam nullo indigente
need they-had should-be-thrown and-when now none needing
secundum actus et dicta apostolica — esset in omnibus
according-to the-acts and words apostolic there-was in all
gratia magna, quando et pauperes pannosi, iocundissime
grace great when also the-poor ragged most-pleasantly
dealbati, Kirieleyson Hludowico beato per latissimam curtem
made-white Kyrie-eleison to-Louis blessed through the-very-broad court
et curticulas Aquarumgrani, quas Latini usitatius porticuum
and little-courts of-Aachen which the-Latins more-usually of-porticoes
nomine vocant, usque ad coelos voces efferrent, et qui
by-the-name call all-the-way to the-heavens voices raised and those-who

poterant de militibus, pedes imperatoris amplectentibus, aliis
could of the-soldiers the-feet of-the-emperor embracing others
vero eminus adorantibus, iam caesare ad ecclesiam procedente,
but from-afar adoring now the-caesar to the-church proceeding
quidam de scurris ioculariter inquit: O te, beate Hludowice,
a-certain-one of the-buffoons jestingly he-says O you blessed Louis
qui tot homines una die vestire potuisti! Per Christum,
who so-many men in-one day to-clothe have-been-able by Christ
nullus in Europa plures hodie vestivit quam tu praeter
no-one in Europe more today has-clothed than you except
Attonem. Cumque imperator ab eo quaereret, quomodo
Atto and-when the-emperor of him asked how
ille plures vestire potuisset, mimus, quasi gaudens se
he more to-clothe had-been-able the-mime as-if rejoicing himself
imperatorem in admirationem vertisse, cum chachinno intulit:
the-emperor into wonder to-have-turned with cackling put-in
Hodie inquiens ille nova indumenta largitus est plurima. Quod
today saying he new garments bestowed has very-many which
imperator blande pro ludo et ineptiis, ut erat vultu dulcissimi
the-emperor gently as joke and foolery as he-was in-face of-most-sweet
gestus, percipiens, humili devotione ecclesiam intravit, in
bearing taking with-humble devotion the-church entered in
qua ita timorate se gessit, quasi ipsum dominum Iesum
which so fearfully himself he-conducted as-if the-very Lord Jesus
Christum prae oculis corporalibus habere videretur.
Christ before eyes bodily to-have he-seemed
Qui etiam omni tempore, non pro aliqua necessitate sed
who also at-every time not for some necessity but
pro largiendi occasione, singulis sabbatis balneari et cuncta,
for of-bestowing the-occasion on-each Saturday to-bathe and all-things
quae deposuerat, praeter gladium et balteum apparitoribus
which he-had-taken-off except the-sword and belt to-attendants

suis dare consueverat. Quae eius liberalitas usque ad
his-own to-give was-accustomed which his generosity all-the-way to
infimos etiam pervenit; adeo ut Stracholfo vitreario, servo
the-lowest even reached so that to-Strachol the-glassmaker servant
Sancti Galli, totam vestituram suam tunc sibi servienti
of-Saint Gall the-whole clothing his-own then to-himself serving
praeciperet dari. Quod cum erronei militum vassalli
he-commanded to-be-given which when wandering of-soldiers vassals
cognovissent, ei iuxta viam insidias ponentes, spoliare
learned for-him beside the-road ambushes laying to-rob
moliti sunt. Quibus cum idem diceret: Quid facitis,
attempted have to-whom when the-same said what are-you-doing
vitreario caesaris vim inferentes? responderunt: Officium
to-the-glassmaker of-the-caesar violence bringing they-answered the-office
quidem tuum habere te permittimus ***
indeed your to-have you we-allow (lacuna)
